

# StorageTek Host Software Component (HSC) MVS Implementation

---

Operator's Guide



June 2010  
Revision DA

Submit comments about this document by clicking the Feedback [+] link at: <http://docs.sun.com>

Host Software Component (HSC) Operator's Guide

Copyright ©1987, 2010, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related software documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle USA, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications which may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. UNIX is a registered trademark licensed through X/Open Company, Ltd.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.



Please  
Recycle



## Document Effectivity

---

EC Number	Date	Doc Kit Number	Type	Effectivity
132519	March, 2007	---	Revision A	This document applies to the Host Software Component for MVS (MVS/HSC), Version 6.2.
---	April, 2008	---	Revision B	
---	September, 2008	---	Revision C	
---	May, 2009	---	Revision D	
---	June, 2010	---	Revision DA	



# Contents

---

<b>What's New With This Release?</b> .....	<b>xv</b>
<b>Preface</b> .....	<b>xxv</b>
Related Documentation .....	xxvi
Documentation, Support, and Training .....	xxvii
Oracle Welcomes Your Comments .....	xxvii
<b>Chapter 1. General Information</b> .....	<b>1</b>
Introduction .....	1
System Overview .....	2
Control Path .....	2
Data Path .....	3
System Components .....	4
HSC .....	4
SMC .....	4
Library Management Unit .....	4
SL8500 Redundant Electronics (RE) .....	6
Library Storage Module .....	9
HSC-to-ACS Operating Modes .....	12
Connected Mode .....	12
Disconnected Mode .....	12
LSM Operating Modes .....	14
Automatic Mode .....	14
Manual Mode .....	14
<b>Chapter 2. Commands, Control Statements, and Utilities</b> .....	<b>15</b>
Overview .....	15
Virtual Storage Manager (VSM) Support .....	15
Overview of Command Syntax .....	16
Operator Command Syntax Rules .....	16
Syntax Flow Diagrams .....	18
Specifying Commands .....	18
Variables .....	18
Delimiters .....	18
Flow Lines .....	19
Single Required Choice .....	20
Single Optional Choice .....	20

Defaults .....	20
Repeat Symbol .....	21
Syntax Continuation (Fragments) .....	21
How to Read Syntax Flow Diagrams .....	21
Library Identification .....	23
How to Specify a CAPid .....	24
Ranges and Lists .....	27
HSC Commands and Control Statements .....	32
HSC Commands .....	32
Control Statements .....	33
HSC Service Levels .....	33
Allocation (ALLOC) Command and Control Statement .....	37
CAP Preference (CAPPref) Command and Control Statement .....	42
CDS Enable/Disable Command .....	48
CLEAN Command .....	52
Communications Path (COMMPath) Command and Control Statement .....	54
DISMOUNT Command .....	61
DISPLAY Command .....	63
DRAIN CAP Command .....	142
EJECT Command .....	146
ENTER Command .....	162
JOURNAL Command .....	167
MNTD (Mount/Dismount Options) Command and Control Statement .....	169
MODIFY Command .....	177
MONITOR Command .....	185
MOUNT Command .....	187
MOVE Command .....	194
OPTION Command and Control Statement .....	202
RECOVER Host Command .....	209
RELease CAP Command .....	211
SCRAtch Command .....	213
SEnTER Command .....	214
SRVlev (Service Level) Command .....	217
Stop Monitoring (STOPMN) Command .....	219
SWITCH Command .....	221
TRACE Command .....	224
TRACELKP Command .....	230
UNSCRatch Command .....	232
User Exit (UEXIT) Command and Control Statement .....	233
VARY Station Command .....	236
VIEW Command .....	239
WARN Command .....	248
Library Utilities Overview .....	258
Activities Report Utility .....	258
Audit Utility .....	258
Backup Utility .....	258

Database Decompile Utility .....	258
Directory Rebuild Utility .....	258
Eject Cartridge Utility .....	259
Initialize Cartridge Utility .....	259
Journal Offload Utility .....	259
Mergecds Utility .....	259
Move Utility .....	259
Performance Log Reblocker Utility .....	259
Reconfig Utility .....	259
Restore Utility .....	259
Scratch Conversion Utilities .....	260
Scratch Redistribution Utility .....	260
Scratch Update Utilities .....	260
Set Utility .....	260
Unselect Utility .....	260
Volume Report Utility .....	261
<b>Chapter 3. Operating an Automated Cartridge System .....</b>	<b>263</b>
Overview .....	263
LSM Automatic Mode .....	264
CAP Display Panels .....	264
CAP Modes .....	264
Entering Cartridges Into an LSM .....	265
Ejecting Cartridges From the LSM .....	265
Entering a Cartridge During an Eject Routine .....	266
Visually Inspecting an LSM Component .....	266
LSM Manual Mode .....	267
Determining That the LSM is Not in Automatic Mode .....	271
Placing the LSM in Manual Mode .....	272
Setting Manual Mode Attributes .....	273
Resetting the Transport Display .....	275
Locating a Cartridge in the LSM .....	276
How to Handle Manual Mount Requests .....	277
Manually Mounting a Cartridge .....	278
How to Handle Manual Dismount Requests .....	279
Operating in Manual Mode With HSC at Base Service Level .....	280
LSM Mixed (Automatic and Manual) Mode .....	281
Mounting a Cartridge from a Manual LSM to an Automatic LSM .....	281
Mounting a Cartridge from an Automatic LSM to a Manual LSM .....	282
Mounting a Cartridge from One Automatic LSM to Another .....	282
Returning the LSM to Automatic Mode .....	284
Making the Transports Ready .....	284
Exiting the LSM .....	284
Placing the LSM in Automatic Mode .....	284
How to Handle Outstanding Requests for Manual Mounts .....	284
Manual Mounts Requiring Automated Dismounts .....	285

Entering Cartridges That Were Logically Ejected During Manual Mode .....	285
LMU Operation .....	286
Displaying LMU Status .....	286
Operating an LMU - Dual LMU Configuration .....	287
SL8500 LC Operation .....	290
Displaying ACS Status .....	290
Operating an LC - Redundant LC Configuration .....	291
CAP Manual Recovery .....	295
<b>Chapter 4. Managing Library Resources .....</b>	<b>297</b>
Overview .....	297
Mount Processing With Library And Nonlibrary Resources .....	298
Mount Request for a Library Cartridge on a Nonlibrary Transport .....	298
Mount Request for Nonlibrary Cartridge on Library Transport .....	299
Reducing Enters and Ejects With Unit Affinity Separation .....	300
Using The Deferred Mount Option .....	301
Controlling Pass-Thru Operations After Dismount .....	302
Moving Cartridges Within The Library .....	303
Moving Cartridges Manually .....	303
Automating Cartridge Movement .....	303
Monitoring Move Requests From The Programmatic Interface .....	305
LSM Scratch Preferencing .....	306
How LSMs are Preferenced .....	306
Scratch Preferencing Operational Considerations .....	306
Unexpected Results From LSM Scratch Preferencing .....	307
Recommended Reading on Related Topics .....	307
Examples of LSM Scratch Preferencing .....	308
Problem Determination and Reporting .....	310
Working With Scratch Volumes And Subpooling .....	311
<b>Chapter 5. Problem Resolution and Recovery Procedures .....</b>	<b>313</b>
Overview .....	313
Problem Solving Strategy .....	314
Recovering Errant Cartridges .....	315
Using the View Command to Locate an Errant Cartridge .....	315
Entering Duplicate And Unreadable VOLSERS .....	317
Entering Duplicate Volumes .....	317
Entering Cartridges With Missing or Unreadable Labels .....	317
How To Clear Recovery Status On A CAP .....	318
Freeing An Allocated CAP .....	319
Recovering a CAP With a Missing Magazine .....	320
Missing Magazines in an Enhanced CAP .....	320
Missing Magazines in a WolfCreek CAP .....	320
Restoring Host-To-Host Communications Services .....	321
Special Conditions .....	322
Resolving Possible Lost Mount Requests .....	322

Resolving Lost Mount Requests Due To LMU Errors .....	323
Internal Label Does Not Match External Label .....	323
Multiple Mounts for the Same Volume .....	323
Unlabeled Scratch Cartridge .....	323
Resolving Lost Responses .....	324
Dual LMU Recovery .....	325
When Both LMUs Respond as Master .....	325
When Both LMUs Respond as Standby .....	325
<b>Chapter 6. Maintaining an Automated Cartridge System .....</b>	<b>327</b>
Overview .....	327
Transport Tape Path Cleaning .....	328
Cleaning a Tape Path - Automatic Mode .....	328
Cleaning a Tape Path - Manual Mode .....	329
Cleaning Cartridges .....	329
<b>Appendix A. Commands and Control Statements Syntax Reference .....</b>	<b>331</b>
Operator Commands .....	331
Allocation ALLOC) command and control statement .....	332
CAP Preference (CAPPref) command and control statement .....	332
CDs Enable/Disable command .....	332
CLean command .....	333
Communications Path (COMMPath) command and control statement .....	333
DISMount command .....	333
Display command .....	334
DRAin CAP command .....	339
EJect command .....	339
ENter command .....	340
Journal command .....	340
MODify command .....	340
MONITOR command .....	340
Mount command .....	341
Mount/Dismount Options (MNTD) command and control statement .....	341
MOVE command .....	342
OPTion command and control statement .....	342
RECover Host command .....	343
RELease CAP command .....	343
SENter command .....	343
SRVlev (Service Level) command .....	343
Stop Monitoring (STOPMN) command .....	343
SWitch command .....	344
TRace command .....	344
TRACELKP command .....	344
User Exit (UEXIT) command and control statement .....	345
Vary Station command .....	345
VieW command .....	346

Warn command .....	347
<b>Glossary</b> .....	<b>349</b>
<b>Index</b> .....	<b>365</b>

# Figures

---

Figure 1. Library Control and Data Paths ..... 3

Figure 2. Dual LC Configuration ..... 7

Figure 3. HSC Communication Methods Between Multiple Hosts ..... 59

Figure 4. Manual Mode Flow Chart - Entering Manual Mode ..... 268

Figure 5. Manual Mode Flow Chart - Manual Dismount After Automatic Mount ..... 269

Figure 6. Manual Mode Flow Chart - Manual Mount/Dismount ..... 270

Figure 7. Two Automatic LSMs Separated by an Offline LSM ..... 283



## Tables

---

Table 1.	Library Identifiers .....	30
Table 2.	HSC Command Execution at Base and Full Service Levels .....	35
Table 3.	MEDia Display IDs .....	63
Table 4.	RECtech Display IDs .....	64
Table 5.	Library ID/LSM ID Association .....	223



## What's New With This Release?

---

HSC 6.2 includes the following enhancements and modifications:

Enhancement/Modification	Publication(s)/ Primary Locations
<b>Revision DA:</b>	
<p>For SL8500 libraries, the Redundant Electronics (RE) feature minimizes control path downtime caused by an active Library Controller (LC) failure. The RE configuration provides a standby LC that acts as a back up to the active LC.</p>	<p><b><i>System Programmer's Guide</i></b>            Chapter 3, HSC Control Statements and HSC Start Procedure</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LMUPATH control statement</li> </ul> <p>Appendix A, HSC Support for the SL8500 Library:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TCP/IP Communications - Important Considerations</li> <li>• Multiple TCP/IP Redundant Electronics (RE)</li> <li>•</li> </ul> <p><b><i>Operator's Guide</i></b>            Chapter 1, General Information</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SL8500 Redundant Electronics (RE)</li> </ul> <p>Chapter 2, Commands, Control Statements, and Utilities</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Display Acs</li> <li>• SWitch</li> </ul> <p>Chapter 3, Operating an Automated Cartridge System</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SL8500 Redundant Electronics Environment</li> <li>• Redundant LC Operational Overview and Operation</li> </ul>

Enhancement/Modification	Publication(s)/ Primary Locations
Redundant Electronics feature (continued)	<p><i>Messages and Codes Guide</i> New messages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SLS0692I</li> <li>• SLS0693I</li> <li>• SLS1666E</li> <li>• SLS1667I</li> </ul> <p>Changed messages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SLS0699I</li> <li>• SLS1000I</li> <li>• SLS1003I</li> <li>• SLS1004I</li> <li>• SLS1007I</li> </ul>
<p>The Media Warranty Life feature shows the percentage of media life that has been used for a volume. The following transports are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• T9x40, excluding T9840B</li> <li>• T10000A</li> <li>• T10000B</li> </ul>	<p><i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 4, Utility Functions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Volume Report Utility: MWL, MWLNA, and MWLGE parameters</li> </ul> <p>Chapter 6, Monitor Cartridges Nearing End of Life</p> <p><i>Messages and Codes Guide</i> New message:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SLS2149I</li> </ul> <p>Changed message:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SLS0601I</li> </ul>
<p>The PING parameter on the LMUPATH control statement allows you to set the number of minutes in between requests sent from the HSC to the LMU. These requests are to keep the connection active, which prevents a firewall from closing the connection due to inactivitySystem Programmer's Guide</p>	<p><i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 3, HSC Control Statements and HSC Start Procedure</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LMUPATH control statement</li> </ul>

Enhancement/Modification	Publication(s)/ Primary Locations
<b>Revision D:</b>	
Support for the SL3000 library Access Expansion Module (AEM).	<p><b>System Programmer's Guide</b> Chapter 4, AUDIt, EJECT Cartridge, INITIALize Cartridge, and MOVE utilities</p> <p>Appendix C, Adding/Removing Expansion Modules - SL3000 Library,</p> <p>Appendix D, CAPid Formats</p> <p><b>Operator's Guide</b> Chapter 1, SL3000 Library description</p> <p>Chapter 2, CAPid Formats, CAPPref, DRain, EJECT, ENTER, MODIFY, MOVE, RELEASE CAP, SENTER</p>
The Display DRives command adds the IDentity parameter, which displays the World Wide Name transport identifier and the transport serial number.	<p><b>Operator's Guide</b> Chapter 2, Display DRives</p>

Enhancement/Modification	Publication(s)/ Primary Locations
<b>Revision C:</b>	
Support for T10000B drive encryption recording techniques and model types.	<p><b>System Programmer's Guide</b> Chapter 2, T10000 Drive Encryption</p> <p>Chapter 3, VOLATTR control statement</p> <p>Chapter 4, EJECT Cartridge and Scratch Redistribution utilities</p> <p>Appendix G, MOUNT, QDRLIST, QSCRATCH, and SELSCR requests</p> <p><b>Operator's Guide</b> Chapter 2, Display DRives, Display SCRatch, Display THReshld, EJECT, Warn commands</p>

Enhancement/Modification	Publication(s)/ Primary Locations
<b>Revision B:</b>	
Support for the SL3000 library (HSC 6.1 and later).	<p><b>Configuration Guide</b> Chapter 2, Calculating DASD Space</p> <p>Chapter 4, SLILSM, SLIDRIVS macros</p> <p>Chapter 5, Storage Cell Capacity for StreamLine SL3000 Libraries</p> <p>Appendix B, Library Configurations</p> <p><b>Operator's Guide</b> Chapter 2, CAPPref, DRAIn, EJECT, ENter, MODify, MOVE, RELease CAP, View commands</p> <p><b>System Programmer's Guide</b> Chapter 2, Mixing Media Types and Recording Techniques</p> <p>Chapter 4, AUDIt , EJECT Cartridge, Initialize Cartridge utilities</p> <p>Appendix B, HSC Support for the SL3000 Library</p>

Enhancement/Modification	Publication(s)/ Primary Locations
SL8500 library LSM partitioning (HSC 6.1 and later).	<p><i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 3, LMUPATH control statement</p> <p>Chapter 4, SET FREEZE utility</p> <p>Appendix A, HSC Support for the SL8500 Library</p> <p><i>Operator's Guide</i> Chapter 2, Display ACS, Display LSM, and Display Exceptions</p> <p><i>Messages and Codes Guide</i> New messages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SLS0073I</li> <li>• SLS0695I</li> <li>• SLS4232I</li> <li>• SLS4412I</li> <li>• SLS4413I</li> <li>• SLS4643I</li> </ul> <p>Changed messages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SLS0653I</li> <li>• SLS0663I</li> <li>• SLS1000I</li> <li>• SLS2008I</li> <li>• SLS4401I</li> <li>• SLS4407I</li> <li>• SLS4610I</li> </ul>
Considerations for SL8500 library TCP/IP communications (HSC 6.1 and later).	<p><i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Appendix A, HSC Support for the SL8500 Library</p>
Dual IP connections to an SL8500 library (HSC 6.1 and later).	<p><i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Appendix A, HSC Support for the SL8500 Library</p>
Multiple connections to an SL8500 library (HSC 6.1 and later).	<p><i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Appendix A, HSC Support for the SL8500 Library</p>

Enhancement/Modification	Publication(s)/ Primary Locations
<p>Support for T9840D drives (HSC 6.1 and later).</p>	<p><i>Configuration Guide</i> Chapter 2, Unit Addresses</p> <p>Chapter 4, SLIDRIVS macro</p> <p>Chapter 11, External Media Requirements</p> <p><i>Operator's Guide</i> Chapter 2, Display Drives, Display SCRatch, Display Mount, THReshld, EJECT, Warn</p> <p><i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 3, TAPEREQ, UNITATTR, VOLATTR</p> <p>Chaper 4, EJECT, SCRatch Redistribution</p> <p>Appendix H, MOUNT, QDRLIST, QSCRATCH, SELSCR</p>
<p>Support for LTO generation 4 drives (HSC 6.1 and later). <b>Note: LTO transports are not supported in an MVS environment.</b> These transports are recognized by the HSC but are accessible only to open systems clients using LibraryStation.</p>	<p><i>Configuration Guide</i> Chapter 2, Unit Addresses</p> <p>Chapter 4, SLIDRIVS macro</p> <p>Chapter 11, External Media Requirements</p> <p><i>Operator's Guide</i> Chapter 2, Display Drives, Display SCRatch, Display Mount, THReshld, EJECT, Warn</p> <p><i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 3, TAPEREQ, UNITATTR, VOLATTR</p> <p>Chaper 4, EJECT, SCRatch Redistribution</p> <p>Appendix H, MOUNT, QDRLIST, QSCRATCH, SELSCR</p>
<p>The Point-in-Time (SLUPCOPY) utility provides a faster, less disruptive method to create a backup of the HSC CDS (HSC 6.1 and later).</p>	<p><i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 4, Point-in-Time Copy (SLUPCOPY) Utility</p>

<b>Enhancement/Modification</b>	<b>Publication(s)/ Primary Locations</b>
The SLILIBRY macro adds the FUTRACS parameter to allow new ACSs to be added to the library complex (HSC 6.1 and later).	<i>Configuration Guide</i> Chapter 4, SLILIBRY macro
The SLILSM macro adds the TYPE=3000 and DOOR=3000 parameters for the SL3000 library (HSC 6.1 and later).	<i>Configuration Guide</i> Chapter 4, SLILSM macro
The OPTion command DUPOFL parameter allows the duplicate VOLSER process to continue when the VOLSER being entered exists in an ACS that is disconnected or in an LSM that is offline (HSC 6.1 and later).	<i>Operator's Guide</i> Chapter 4, OPTion command
The LMUPATH control statement PARTID parameter defines a partition ID for an SL3000 or SL8500 library (HSC 6.1 and later).	<i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 3, LMUPATH control statement
The EJECT Cartridge utility SEQ parameter specifies whether or not CAP eject processing fills the CAP cells in the same order specified by the <b>VOLser</b> parameter (HSC 6.1 and later).	<i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 4, EJECT Cartridge utility
The LIST diagnostic command has been expanded with more control blocks and enhanced storage dump capability (HSC 6.1 and later).	<i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 5, LIST command
The CDS swap process has been enhanced to dynamically correct unit address information .	<i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Appendix C, Swapping a CDS

Enhancement/Modification	Publication(s)/ Primary Locations
<b>Revision A:</b>	
SLUADMIN output options, date field formats, and alphabetic data field formats have been expanded to include structured XML and comma-separated values (CSV).	<b>System Programmer's Guide</b> Chapter 4, "SLUADMIN Output" and "Parameters Controlling Report Headings"
Support for the Unified User Interface (UI) and CSV.	<b>NCS/VTCS XML User's Guide</b>
Support for T10000 drive encryption recording techniques and model types.	<b>System Programmer's Guide</b> Chapter 2, T10000 Drive Encryption  Chapter 3, VOLATTR control statement  Chapter 4, EJECT Cartridge and Scratch Redistribution utilities  Appendix G, MOUNT, QDRLIST, QSCRATCH, and SELSCR requests  <b>Operator's Guide</b> Chapter 2, Display DRives, Display SCRatch, Display THReshld, EJECT, Warn commands
The "Serializing CDSs" topic discusses resource serialization using either the IBM Global Resource Serialization (GRS) facility or the Unicenter CA-MIM/MII third-party software. This replaces the "Global Resource Sharing (GRS) and Multi-Image Integrity Manager (MII)" section.	<b>System Programmer's Guide</b> Chapter 7, Software Interaction
The starting column for the control statement information area has been changed from column 2 to column 1.	Control Statement Syntax Conventions, found in the following documents:  <b>System Programmer's Guide</b> Appendix C  <b>Operator's Guide</b> Appendix C  <b>Reference Summary</b>
The BACKup utility DD parameter allows a backup to be run on a selected CDS.	<b>System Programmer's Guide</b> Chapter 4, BACKup utility
The EJECT utility WAITCAP parameter specifies whether a list of ejecting volumes waits for available CAP if one is not available.	<b>System Programmer's Guide</b> Chapter 4, EJECT utility

<b>Enhancement/Modification</b>	<b>Publication(s)/ Primary Locations</b>
The Scratch Conversion utility SLUDRCA1, SLUDRTL, and SLUDRRMM load modules are distributed in the SMC SMCLINK library during SMP/E installation. Previously, the HSC SLULINK library was used.	<i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 4, Scratch Conversion utility
The Volume Report utility NOVOL parameter displays summary and/or subpool totals without producing volume detail.	<i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 4, Volume Report utility
The Display SCRatch command ALL parameter specifies that all scratch subpool totals, including 0 scratch count values, will be displayed.	<i>Operator's Guide</i> Chapter 4, Display command
The SCRatch and UNSCRatch operator commands have been added to allow you to scratch or unscratch up to 100 volumes.	<i>Operator's Guide</i> Chapter 2, SCRatch and UNSCRatch commands
Support for circumventing the IBM length restriction of 255 characters for a macro parameter.	<i>Configuration Guide</i> Chapter 4, SLIACS macro, LSM2, LSM3, and LSM4 parameters  <i>System Programmer's Guide</i> Chapter 4, Reconfiguration utility

# Preface

---

This guide describes how to operate Oracle's StorageTek Host Software Component (HSC) Automated Cartridge System (ACS), how to maintain the system, and how to recognize and resolve problems.

The *Operator's Guide* is intended primarily for data center operators responsible for operating and maintaining the Automated Cartridge System. System programmers and computer system administrators may also find information contained in this guide useful.

## Related Documentation

The following list describes the publications that provide additional information about the HSC.

The online documentation is available at:

<http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/prod/stortek.hsc#hic>

<b>Function</b>	<b>Title</b>
<b>HSC Publications</b>	
Tasks for planning and configuring the HSC	<i>Configuration Guide</i>
System operation, maintenance, and problem resolution	<i>Operator's Guide</i>
Detailed HSC and library information, control statements, and utilities	<i>System Programmer's Guide</i>
Messages and codes issued by the HSC	<i>Messages and Codes Guide</i>
Frequently used syntax information	<i>Reference Summary</i>
<b>Related Publications</b>	
Installation tasks for the HSC	<i>NCS Installation Guide</i>
Detailed descriptions of HSC user exits	<i>NCS User Exit Guide</i>
Interface between the HSC and the operating system that influences tape allocation	<i>Storage Management Component (SMC) Configuration and Administration Guide</i>
Generate XML output for VTCS and NCS commands and utilities	<i>NCS XML Guide</i>

## Documentation, Support, and Training

Function	URL
Documentation	
• Customer:	<a href="http://docs.sun.com">http://docs.sun.com</a>
• Employee:	<a href="http://docs.sfbay.sun.com/">http://docs.sfbay.sun.com/</a>
• Partner:	<a href="https://spe.sun.com/spx/control/Login">https://spe.sun.com/spx/control/Login</a>
Downloads	
• Customer	<a href="http://www.sun.com/download/index.jsp">http://www.sun.com/download/index.jsp</a>
• Employee	<a href="https://dlrequest-zn-dlapps1.sfbay.sun.com/usr/login">https://dlrequest-zn-dlapps1.sfbay.sun.com/usr/login</a>
Support	<a href="http://www.sun.com/support/">http://www.sun.com/support/</a>
Training	<a href="http://www.oracle.com/global/us/education/sun_select_country.html">http://www.oracle.com/global/us/education/sun_select_country.html</a>
Online Account	<a href="https://reg.sun.com/register">https://reg.sun.com/register</a>

## Oracle Welcomes Your Comments

Oracle is interested in improving its documentation and welcomes your comments and suggestions. Submit your comments by clicking the Feedback[+] link at:

<http://docs.sun.com>

Please include the title and part number of your document with your feedback:

*Operator's Guide*, 312642301



# Chapter 1. General Information

---

## Introduction

This chapter provides a general description of the Automated Cartridge System (ACS) components and features, introduces the terminology that is used throughout this manual, and presents a high-level explanation of how the ACS interacts with the operating system.

The following topics are discussed:

- system overview
- system components
- HSC-to-ACS operating modes
- LSM operating modes.

## System Overview

Oracle's StorageTek Automated Cartridge System (called the library) is a fully automated storage and retrieval system for tape cartridges. The library must be attached to at least one CPU (host), and optionally allows attachment to a maximum of 16 host systems. All library configuration and volume information is contained in a control data set which is shared by all hosts.

### Control Path

#### HSC

The library is controlled by a Host Software Component (HSC) that resides in the host but is transparent to the operating system. A separate HSC must reside on each attached host.

The HSC receives requests from the programmatic interface and translates them into commands which are carried by the control path to the LSM.

The control path consists of the following components:

- Host Software Component
- 3174, 3274, or compatible controller
- Library Management Unit (LMU)
- Library Control Unit (LCU)
- Library Storage Module (LSM).

#### SMC

The Storage Management Component (SMC) resides on the MVS host along with the HSC and communicates with the HSC to:

- influence tape allocation to make sure the correct tape drives are selected and
- intercept mount/dismount and swap messages and translate them to perform tape hardware functions.

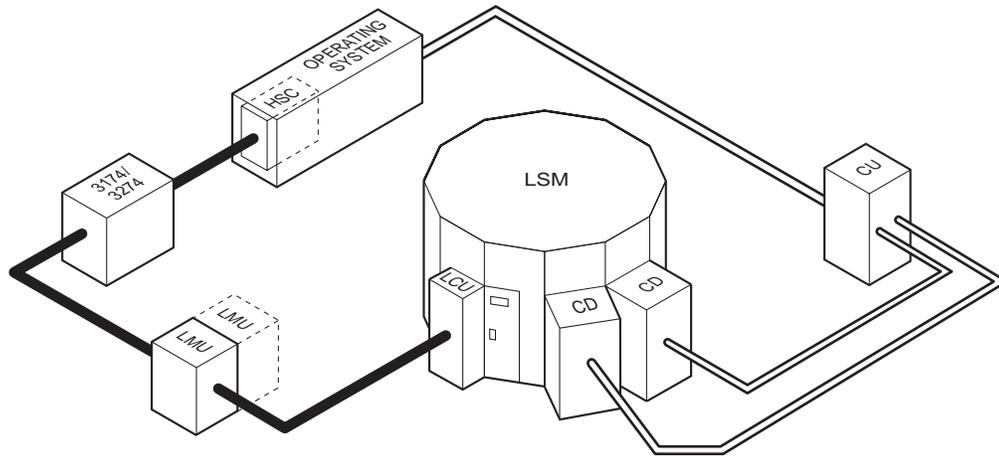
In response to a mount message, the robot in the LSM retrieves the required cartridge from a storage cell, CAP, or pass-thru port (PTP), and inserts it into an allocated tape transport. For a dismount, the robot extracts the cartridge from the transport and returns it to a storage cell, CAP, or PTP in the LSM.

Refer to the *NCS Installation Guide* and the *SMC Configuration and Administration Guide* for more information.

## Data Path

The cartridge drives attached to the LSM are part of the cartridge subsystem. The cartridge subsystem is connected directly to the host forming a data path completely separated from the control path. This separation means that the data path is still available if a failure occurs in the control path.

Figure 1 on page 3 illustrates the way an ACS with a single 4410 LSM is divided in terms of function. Other ACS configurations are treated in this same manner.



### NOTES:

LSM = LIBRARY STORAGE MODULE  
LCU = LIBRARY CONTROL UNIT  
LMU = LIBRARY MANGEMENT UNIT  
CD = CARTRIDGE DRIVE  
CU = CONTROL UNIT  
HSC = HOST SOFTWARE COMPONENT  
3274 = TERMINAL CONTROL UNIT (CUSTOMER SUPPLIED)

### LEGEND:

— LIBRARY CONTROL PATH  
(AUTOMATED MOUNTS/DISMOUNTS)  
— DATA PATH (READ/WRITE)

C27400

**Figure 1. Library Control and Data Paths**

## System Components

### HSC

The HSC is the overall manager of the library, the interface between the SMC or user requests and each ACS. The HSC translates mount/dismount requests from SMC into move requests and routes them to the LMU. The HSC provides information about volumes in the CDS to allow the SMC to influence allocation.

### SMC

The SMC is the interface between the MVS™ operating system and the HSC. The SMC uses subsystem interfaces and JES3 hooks to:

- influence tape allocation to select a compatible tape device
- intercept MVS mount and dismount messages for library devices.

The SMC also provides the ability to communicate with the user's tape management system to generate updates to the HSC tape scratch status.

### Library Management Unit

The LMU is the interface between the HSC and the LCU. An LMU emulates a 3278 model 2 terminal and connects to a 3174, 3274, or compatible control unit. The LMU and attached LCUs are connected with redundant local area networks (LAN 0 and LAN 1).

A single LMU manages from 1 to 24 LSMs. It is capable of receiving mount and dismount requests from as many as sixteen hosts. When a mount request is received, the LMU commands the robot in the appropriate LSM to do the following:

1. Move to the location of the cartridge
2. Verify that the cartridge is correct by reading its external Tri-Optic™ label
3. Retrieve the cartridge from the cell location
4. Move it to the proper location
5. Place the cartridge into the specified destination (transport, pass-thru port [PTP] cell, or CAP cell).

The LSM returns an ending status for each volume move request, which the LMU sends to the host.

## Dual LMU

A dual LMU option is available to minimize control path downtime by allowing an automatic LMU switch in case of an LMU failure. In this configuration a second LMU is cabled to the local area network, connecting it to the LSM(s). The HSC directs all work to one LMU, called the master LMU, while the second LMU, called the standby LMU, remains powered on as a backup. Designation of master and standby LMU is dynamic and changes according to environmental conditions.

In a dual LMU configuration:

- both LMUs should be connected to all hosts,
- both LMUs can be powered on at all times, and
- both LMUs must be connected to both LAN 0 and LAN 1.

In the event of a failure in the master LMU, an automatic switch occurs and the standby LMU becomes the master LMU. The HSC is informed and notifies the operator of the switch. Outstanding requests are re-driven and all future LMU requests are sent to the new master LMU. Once the failed LMU is repaired and powered on, it becomes the standby LMU.

An operator SWitch command is provided for those occasions when it becomes necessary, or desirable, to dynamically switch to a standby LMU. Except for executing this command, no manual operator intervention is required. The operator issues the SWitch command, and the standby LMU takes over as the master LMU after instructing the old master LMU to initiate IPL. If the old master LMU re-IPLs successfully, it comes up as the standby LMU.



**Note:** Warnings and precautions apply to operating in a dual LMU environment. See “Dual LMU Operational Overview” on page 287 to become familiar with the requirements.

Station addresses must be specified for both the master and standby LMUs when the HSC is installed.

## SL8500 Redundant Electronics (RE)

A Redundant Electronics (RE) option is available to minimize control path downtime caused by a Library Controller (LC) failure by automating a Library Controller switch. In this configuration a second Library Controller is cabled to the local area network, connecting it to the LSM(s). HSC directs all work to one Library Controller, called the active LC, while the second LC, called the standby, remains powered on as a ready backup. Designation of active and standby LC is dynamic and their roles change according to environmental conditions.

In this guide, refer to:

- “Display Acs” on page 66
- “SWITCH Command” on page 221
- “SL8500 Redundant Electronics Environment” on page 271
- “SL8500 LC Operation” on page 290

and in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide*, see:

- Chapter 3, HSC Control Statements and HSC Start Procedure, LMUPATH control statement
- Appendix A, HSC Support for the SL8500 Library, “TCP/IP Communications - Important Considerations” and “Multiple TCP/IP Redundant Electronics (RE)”

### Dual Library Controller Configuration

For this implementation, a dual LC configuration is one pair of LCs installed and network connected to one library in a string. **This is the only valid configuration.** Figure 2 shows an example of this configuration.

LMUPATH ACS(00) +  
LMUADDR(129.80.71.81,129.80.61.81)

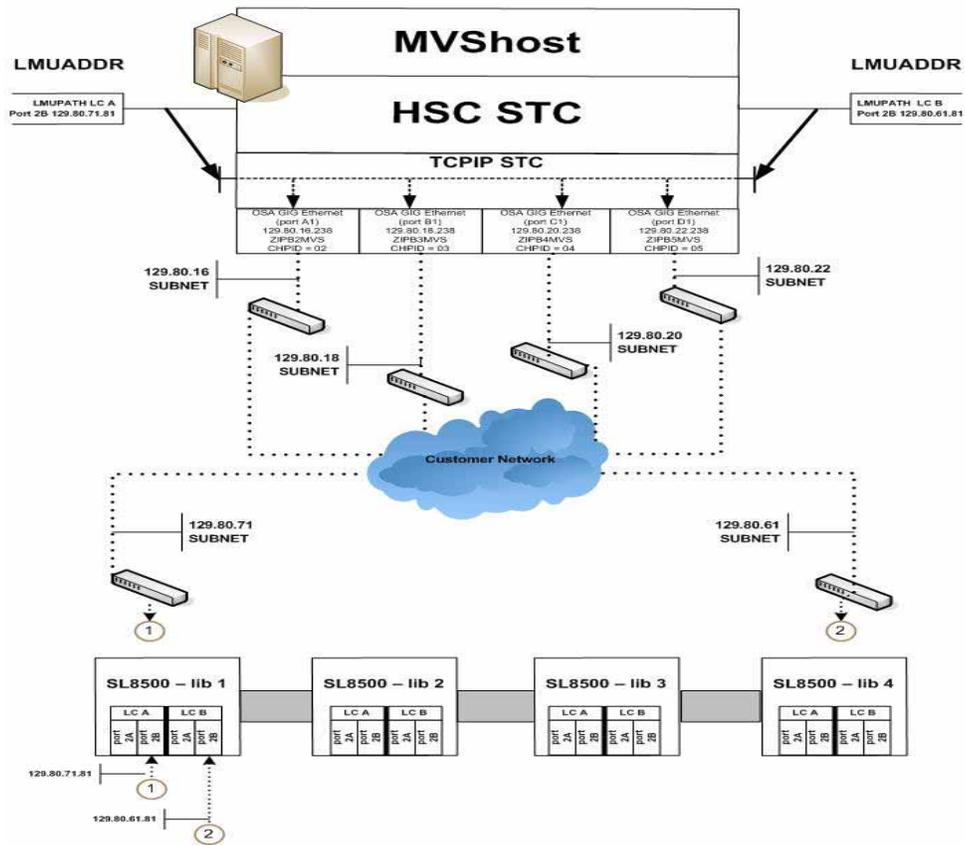


Figure 2. Dual LC Configuration

The following rules apply to a dual LC configuration. Both LCs

- should be connected to all hosts,
- can be powered on at all times, and
- must be connected to both LAN 0 and LAN 1.

In the event of a failure from the active LC, an automated switch will occur and the standby assumes the active LC role. The HSC is informed and notifies the operator of the switch. Most outstanding requests are re-driven and all future library requests are sent to the newly activated LC. Once the failed LC is repaired and powered on, it assumes the standby role.

The SWitch command (see “SWITCH Command” on page 221) is provided for those occasions when it becomes desirable to dynamically activate a standby LC. The operator issues the Switch command, and the standby LC assumes the active LC role after instructing the former active LC to initiate a reboot. If the former active LC reboots successfully, it assumes the standby LC role.



**Note:** Warnings and precautions apply to operating in a dual LC environment. See “Redundant LC Operational Overview” on page 291 and become familiar with these requirements.

Network connections must be specified for both the active and standby LCs when the HSC is installed.

## Library Storage Module

The LSM is a structure that provides storage for tape cartridges. A number of models interface with the HSC, and each of these models display their own characteristics:

- 4410 (Standard)
- 9310 (PowderHorn)
- 9360 (WolfCreek)
- 9740 (TimberWolf)
- SL3000 (StreamLine library)
- SL8500 (StreamLine).

For specific information about SL3000 and SL8500 addressing and operations, refer to Appendix B, “Library Configurations” in the *HSC Configuration Guide*.

### Storage Capacity

In general, the storage capacity of a single LSM ranges from approximately 300 up to 6000 cartridges depending on the type of LSM, the number of cartridge drives (CDs) attached, and the number of pass-thru ports defined.

Refer to the *HSC Configuration Guide* for information about LSM storage capacity. See the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator’s guide for panel definitions for each model.

### Configurations

From zero to four cartridge drive panels can be attached to the exterior of an LSM. Each drive panel can contain from one to 20 transports. Openings in the walls of the LSM allow the robot to insert cartridges into the transports.

For LSMs other than SL3000s and SL8500s, up to 24 LSMs can be interconnected and cartridges can be passed from one LSM to another through a pass-thru port (PTP) in the walls of adjacent LSMs.

### SL3000 Library

The SL3000 library is comprised of a single LSM for each ACS, with no passthru ports (PTPs) to other libraries. The minimum library configuration is a Base Drive Module (BDM) with one CAP and up to 24 Drives (in multiples of 8).

Optionally, one Drive Expansion module (DEM) can be added to the left of the BDM, with one CAP and up to 32 additional drives (in multiples of 8). One to four Cartridge Expansion Modules (CEMs) can be added left and right of the BDM, with an optional CAP installed in each CEM. In all cases where the optional CAP and Drives are not installed, the panel will contain cartridge cells.

On each end of the SL3000 is the Access Expansion Module (AEM), which contains no cell slots. This module offers a bulk CAP option that allows up to 234 cartridges (18 13-cell magazines) to be entered or ejected.

Dual Robot SL3000 libraries will have a Parking Expansion module (PEM) on each end of the library. A PEM takes the next available CEM location or replaces an existing CEM on a fully configured SL3000 Library.

## **SL8500 Library**

The SL8500 library contains four rails on which four handbots travel. Optionally, you can upgrade to eight handbots, two per rail, for redundancy. The HSC considers each SL8500 rail as a separate LSM.

Refer to Appendix B, “Library Configurations,” in the *HSC Configuration Guide* for more SL3000 and SL8500 configuration information.

## **Cartridge Movement**

With the exception of the SL3000 and SL8500 libraries, if a cartridge is in one LSM and the assigned transport is attached to another LSM, the robot retrieving the cartridge from its home cell places it into a PTP. The robot in the adjacent LSM retrieves the cartridge from the PTP and mounts it on the assigned transport, or places it into another PTP to continue passing the cartridge to the destination LSM.

The SL3000 is a single LSM containing no internal or external PTPs to link multiple SL3000 libraries together. Refer to Appendix B, “Library Configurations,” in the *HSC Configuration Guide* for more information.

The SL8500 contains three internal PTPs (elevators) that move cartridges between LSMs (rails). External PTPs can be used to link multiple SL8500s. Refer to Appendix B, “Library Configurations,” in the *HSC Configuration Guide* for more information.

Each LSM has an access door in the outer wall that allows human access to the interior. The access door contains a cartridge access port (CAP) that allows cartridges to be entered and ejected without interrupting automated operations in the LSM.

An attached Library Control Unit (LCU) manages each LSM. When it receives a request from the LMU, the LCU commands the LSM robot to move to the storage cell, CAP, PTP, or transport where the cartridge is located, and perform the proper operation (mount, dismount, or move to/from a cell location, CAP, or PTP).

## **Mount Process**

When an LSM robot mounts a cartridge, it performs the following actions:

1. The servo system moves the robot’s fingers to the center of the cell location.
2. In LSMs other than SL3000s and SL8500s, a solid-state camera vision system in the LSM fine-positions the robot’s fingers. The SL3000 and SL8500 libraries do not contain a vision system.
3. The camera validates the external Tri-Optic label on the cartridge.
4. The robot retrieves the cartridge from the cell.
5. The robot moves to the specified transport and mounts the cartridge.

## Dismount Process

When a dismount is requested, the robot removes the cartridge from the transport and does one of the following:

- returns the cartridge to the source cell if pass-thru operations were not required to mount the volume
- places the cartridge in an available cell in the robot's LSM if pass-thru operations were required to mount the volume. (Normally, pass-thru operations are not performed to place a cartridge in a storage cell after it has been dismounted, as long as an available cell exists in the LSM.)
- if specifically directed to return the cartridge to its original home cell location (using the MNTD Float OFF command), the robot places the cartridge into a PTP cell to begin passing it back to the original LSM.



**Note:** Refer to “Controlling Pass-Thru Operations After Dismount” on page 302 for instructions on using the MNTD Float OFF command.

## HSC-to-ACS Operating Modes

The terms “disconnected mode” and “connected mode” refer to the relationship between the HSC and an ACS. An ACS may be connected to one host while being disconnected from another. Moreover, a single host may be attached to several ACSs, some of which are connected to the HSC, and some of which are disconnected from it.

In a functional dual LMU configuration, the ACS can be in a condition referred to as “standby mode.”

### Connected Mode

An HSC is connected to an ACS when both of the following conditions are true:

- The HSC is executing on that particular host.
- The host and the ACS are communicating with a minimum of one station online to the ACS (a station is the connection between the host and the Library Management Unit).

While the HSC is connected to the ACS, messages from the host are intercepted by the HSC and routed to the ACS which automates the mounts and dismounts.

### Disconnected Mode

An HSC is disconnected from an ACS when both of the following conditions are true:

- The HSC is executing on that particular host.
- The host and the ACS are not communicating (no stations are online to the ACS from that particular host).

In disconnected mode, no automated tape activity can occur for this host using this ACS.

In a multiple-host environment, however, since the ACS is still capable of automated operations, you can semi-automate mounts and dismounts by issuing HSC commands from a connected host’s console. As mount/dismount messages are displayed on the disconnected host’s console, you can issue HSC Mount and DISMount commands from the connected host’s console to direct the LSM robots to perform the mounts and dismounts (as long as the cartridges are not selected by the disconnected host).

## Standby Mode

An HSC is connected to an ACS in standby mode when the following conditions are true:

- The dual LMU feature has been installed.
- No stations are online to the master LMU.
- At least one station is online to the standby LMU.

In standby mode, the HSC intercepts mount and dismount messages and accepts operator cartridge movement commands. The HSC cannot send requests to the master LMU, however, since no stations are online. The operator can resolve this situation by issuing the HSC SWitch command causing the standby LMU to become the master LMU. When the standby LMU has assumed master LMU functionality, the HSC sends all pending (or saved) LMU requests to the new master LMU.

## LSM Operating Modes

An LSM operating mode is the way in which an LSM and all the HSCs attached to it interact. The two operating modes are automatic and manual. Automatic mode is the normal operating mode of an LSM. An LSM is either in automatic mode to all hosts or in manual mode to all hosts.

### Automatic Mode

An LSM operating in automatic mode does not require operator intervention for mounting, dismounting, swapping, or pass-thru cartridge movement. When the LSM is in automatic mode, the operator can use console commands or HSC batch utility processing to enter or eject cartridges through the CAP.

### Manual Mode

An LSM operating in manual mode cannot perform any automated operations. The operator must intervene and perform all mounts and dismounts manually.



**Caution: StorageTek strongly recommends that you do not place SL3000 and SL8500 libraries in manual mode.** To use manual mode, all LSMs in the SL3000 and SL8500 must be offline, and that means all CAPs and drives are unavailable for automated operations. Additionally, SL3000 and SL8500 LSMs have been designed for high cartridge density, so there is limited room for manually mounting and dismounting cartridges.

Refer to the “Precautions” topic in the *SL3000 or SL8500 Modular Library System User’s Guide* for safety requirements and physical restrictions if you decide that you must enter the library.

# Chapter 2. Commands, Control Statements, and Utilities

---

## Overview

HSC operator commands and library utilities allow an operator to allocate, display the status of, and manage library resources.

This chapter discusses operator commands in detail and gives a brief overview of library utilities. The following topics are discussed:

- overview of command syntax
- HSC commands and control statements
- SCP commands
- GCS command
- CMS commands
- library utilities overview.

The HSC subsystem must be operational before most of these commands and utilities can be executed.



### Notes:

- For a detailed description of library utilities, refer to the *HSC System Programmer's Guide*.
- HSC messages and codes are described in detail in the *HSC Messages and Codes Manual*.

## Virtual Storage Manager (VSM) Support

VSM support has been added for certain HSC operator commands. See the VTCS documentation for more information.

## Overview of Command Syntax

This section contains operator command rules and conventions used in this chapter to describe command syntax.

### Operator Command Syntax Rules

An HSC operator command consists of a command prefix character (optional), a command name, and zero or more positional parameters and keyword parameters. Rules governing these commands are listed below.

- The optional command prefix character identifies which subsystem processes the command. The systems programmer defines this prefix character (for example, “.”, “#,” “@”) during the LIBGEN process.
  - If a prefix character is used, the command must appear immediately following (concatenated to) the prefix character.
  - A null character can be specified as the command prefix character. When the command prefix is a null character, you must use the MVS MODIFY command to state commands to the HSC. The following formats for the MVS MODIFY command may be used:

```
MODIFY subsystem-name,hsc-command
```

or

```
F subsystem-name,hsc-command
```

where:

#### *subsystem-name*

is the entry in the subsystem name table for the HSC. This one- to four-character HSC subsystem name is specified by a systems programmer by adding an element to the IEFSSN:xx entry in the SYS1.PARMLIB (e.g., SLS0).

#### *hsc-command*

is any valid HSC command and zero or more parameters.

Examples of how a specific HSC command can be issued are:

```
MODIFY SLS0,MOUNT 123456 B04
```

or

```
F SLS0,MOUNT 123456 B04
```



**Note:** The examples shown in this chapter do not show the use of either a command prefix character or the MVS MODIFY command. Use of a prefix character is illustrated in the examples found in other chapters in this manual.

- Keyword parameters that require or allow a user-supplied value can be specified in either of following formats:

- Enclosing the user-supplied value(s) in parentheses and concatenating it to the keyword. For example,

```
HOSTID(host-id)
```

- Concatenating the user-supplied value(s) to the keyword with an equal sign. For example,

```
HOSTID=host-id
```



**Notes:**

- Both keyword syntax formats are illustrated in this manual.
- Unless otherwise specified, a list of user-supplied values must be enclosed in parentheses. Refer to “Ranges and Lists” on page 27 for more information about specifying lists.
- Except as noted, parameters can be separated by a comma or a blank. Consecutive blanks following either of these delimiters are ignored.
- Commands and parameters can be entered in any combination of uppercase and lowercase letters.
- Command replies are always sent to the issuing console and, in some cases such as mounts and dismounts, are routed to other consoles such as the tape library console and tape pool console.

## Syntax Flow Diagrams

Syntax is illustrated using flow diagrams. These can include the following elements:

- syntax — the diagram itself.
- items — individual elements inside the diagram. Items can be keywords, variables, delimiters, operators, fragment references, and separators.
- groups — a collection of items or other groups.

The following sections describe syntax flow diagram features and include some generic examples.

### Specifying Commands

Commands are composed of command names, keyword parameters, and positional parameters. Command names initiate command execution, keyword parameters are operands that contain keywords and their related values, and positional parameters are operands that are identified by their position in the command string rather than by keywords.

- Keyword parameters can be specified in any order. The HSC accepts (tolerates) multiple occurrences of a keyword. The value assigned to a keyword reflects the last occurrence of a keyword within a command.
- Positional parameters must be entered in the order shown in the syntax diagram.
- Uppercase letters indicate the minimum abbreviation for the command name, keyword, or positional parameter.

### Variables

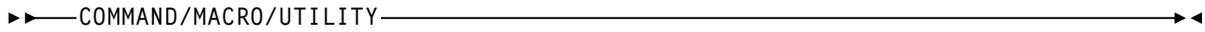
Variables are italicized.

### Delimiters

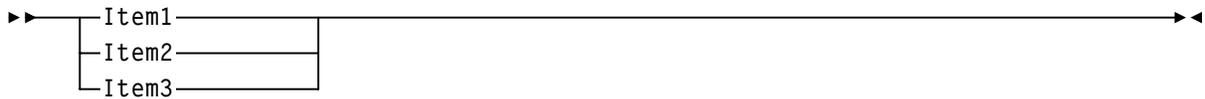
If a comma(,), a semicolon(;), or other delimiter is shown with an element of the syntax diagram, it must be entered as part of the statement or command.

## Flow Lines

Syntax diagrams consist of horizontal and vertical lines and the text of a command, control statement, macro, or utility.

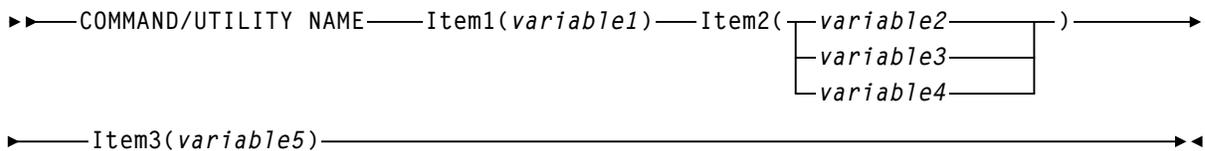


or



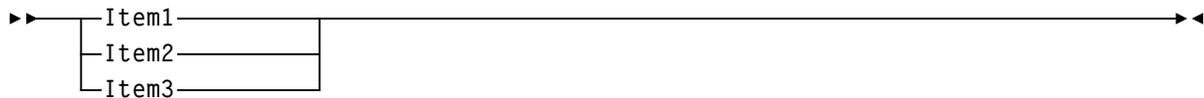
Diagrams are read left to right and top to bottom. Arrows indicate flow and direction.

- a statement begins with ▶▶
- a statement ends with ▶◀
- diagrams continuing to the next line begin with ▶
- fragments begin and end with |



## Single Required Choice

Branch lines, without repeat arrows, indicate that a **single** choice must be made. If one of the items from which a choice is being made is on the base line of the diagram, a single choice is required.



## Single Optional Choice

If the first item is on the line below the base line, a single choice of items in the stack is optional.



## Defaults

Default values and parameters appear above the syntax diagram line. In the following example, if a value is not specified with the command, Default Value is used by the HSC.

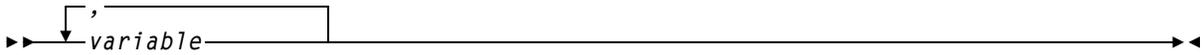


Some keyword parameters provide a choice of values in a stack. When the stack contains a default value, the keyword and the value choices are placed below the baseline to indicate that they are optional, and the default value appears above the keyword line. In the following example, if the keyword is not specified with the command, Keyword(Default Value) is used by the HSC.



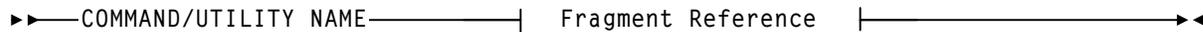
## Repeat Symbol

A repeat symbol indicates that more than one choice can be made or that a single choice can be made more than once. The repeat symbol shown in this example indicates that a comma is required as the repeat separator.

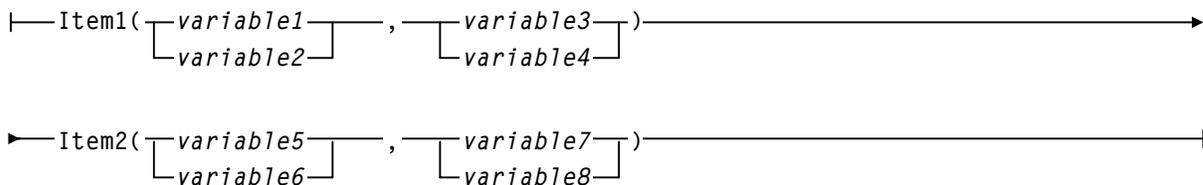


## Syntax Continuation (Fragments)

Fragment references direct you to parts (fragments) of the syntax that contain more detail than can be shown in the main syntax diagram.



### Fragment:



## How to Read Syntax Flow Diagrams

To read command syntax, start at the double arrowheads (||) on the left and move to the right adding syntax elements as you go.

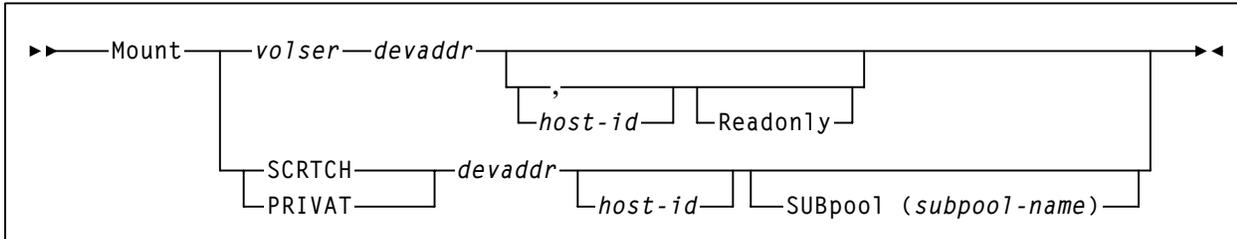
- At line intersections, choose a path to take.
- Continue following the chosen path to the right (do not backtrack).
- Any element you cannot bypass is required.
- Any element shown above the line is a default.
- Any element shown below the line that you can bypass is an option.
- The diagram ends at the two arrowheads facing each other ( ▶◀ ).

The syntax for some commands is too large to fit on one line. These diagrams are split, which is indicated by ending the unfinished line and beginning the next line with a single arrowhead ( ▶ ).

## Syntax Flow Diagram Example

Consider the syntax flow diagram for the Mount command.

### Syntax Flow Diagram Example (Mount Command)



To read the syntax flow diagram for the Mount command:

- Start at ►► and follow the line to the right to the word Mount. Mount cannot be bypassed so it is required: it can be abbreviated to “M.”
- Continuing to the right there is a split, indicating a choice. You **must** choose either *volser*, SCRTCH, or PRIVAT.
- Continuing along either path, the required variable *devaddr* cannot be bypassed and is required. Substitute a device address for *devaddr*.
- Continuing along either path again, the following optional choice is presented:
  - Bypass the choice and go straight to ►◀ ; no other coding is necessary.
  - Include any of the following parameter combinations:
    - *host-id* and nothing else, or
    - *host-id* and either Readonly or Subpool(*subpool-name*), or
    - a comma and Readonly, or
    - Subpool(*subpool-name*).

The following are all valid ways to issue a Mount command for a specific VOLSER:

```
MOUNT volser devaddr
MOUNT volser devaddr host-id
MOUNT volser devaddr host-id READONLY
MOUNT volser devaddr,,READONLY
```

## Library Identification

Each ACS, LSM, and CAP is assigned a unique identification number during LIBGEN. Use this number in HSC commands and utilities when identifying a specific ACSid, LSMid, or CAPid.

- ACSid (*acs-id*) is a hexadecimal value from 00 through FF that identifies the LMU.

An *acs-id* is the result of defining the SLIALIST macro during a LIBGEN. See the *HSC Configuration Guide* for information about the SLIALIST macro. The first ACS listed in this macro acquires a hexadecimal identifier of 00, the second ACS listed acquires a hexadecimal identifier of 01, and so forth until all ACSs are identified.

- An LSM number (*ll*) is a hexadecimal value from 00 through 17. It differentiates an LSM from every other LSM connected to the same LMU.

An LSM number is the result of defining the SLIACS macro LSM, LSM2, LSM3, and LSM4 parameters. See the *HSC Configuration Guide* for information about the SLIACS macro. The first LSM listed for an ACS acquires a hexadecimal number of 00, the second LSM listed for an ACS acquires a hexadecimal number of 01, and so forth.

- An LSMid (*lsm-id*) is made up of the ACSid and the LSM number separated by a colon (:). It differentiates an LSM from every other LSM in a library.
- A CAP number is a hexadecimal value from 00 to 02 for all existing libraries, except for SL3000 libraries. The CAP number for an SL3000 is a hexadecimal value from 00 to 0B. The CAP number identifies a specific CAP in an LSM that has more than one CAP.
- A CAPid (*cap-id*) is a hexadecimal value made up of the LSMid and the CAP number separated by a colon. Refer to “How to Specify a CAPid” on page 24 for additional information, including a description of CAPid formats.

Some HSC commands and utilities require, or optionally allow, the user to specify a host identifier or a VOLSER.

- The *host-id* for a given host is the identifier specified in the HOSTID parameter of the SLILIBRY macro in the LIBGEN. The HOSTID parameter is the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3. Valid characters for a HOSTID are A-Z, 0-9, # (crosshatch), \$, and @.
- A VOLSER (*volser*) identifies a volume serial number consisting of one to six characters. Valid characters are A-Z, 0-9, #, \$, ¥ (yen character), and optional trailing blanks. Leading blanks are not allowed.

## How to Specify a CAPid

A CAPid specifies a particular CAP in the library. Each CAP is identified by the LSMid of the LSM that the CAP is attached to and a CAP number to distinguish it from other CAPs in that LSM.

CAP configurations differ based on the LSM type. The following configurations are available:

### **LSM (Model 4410) and PowderHorn LSM (Model 9310)**

This LSM is configured with either the standard 21-cell CAP or an enhanced CAP. An enhanced CAP contains two 40-cell magazine-style CAPs and a one-cell priority CAP (PCAP). The 40-cell CAPs function independently.

### **WolfCreek LSM (Models 9360-050, 9360-075, and 9360-100)**

This LSM is configured with a WolfCreek CAP which contains a 20-cell magazine-style CAP and a PCAP. An optional 30-cell, magazine-style CAP, called a WolfCreek optional CAP, may be added to the WolfCreek CAP.

### **TimberWolf LSM (Model 9740)**

This LSM is configured with either a 14-cell permanent rack or a 10-cell removable magazine.

### **StreamLine Library (Model SL3000)**

The library is configured with 2, 13-cell removable magazines in each CAP and can contain up to 12 CAPs (00-0B).

### **StreamLine Library (Model SL8500)**

This library is configured with 3, 13-cell removable magazines. An optional 39-cell CAP can be added.

## CAPid Formats

Two formats can be used to specify a CAPid:

- *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00 through FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00 through 17). This format is referred to as the *lsm-id*.
- *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid and *CC* is the CAP number. This format is referred to as the *cap-id*.



**Caution:** Do not use a colon as the MVS command delimiter because the system will process the colon in the new CAPid format as the end of the command. All information following the colon in an HSC command will not be processed.

The appropriate format to use is determined by the CAP hardware and the command being specified.

- The *AA:LL* format can be specified to allow the HSC to select a CAP based on CAP preference.

- The *AA:LL:CC* format can be specified for any CAP hardware in any command that accepts a CAPid. This is the preferred format. Valid CAP numbers are:

**00** indicates one of the following:

- a 21-cell 4410 or 9310 standard CAP
- the right-hand 40-cell 4410 or 9310 enhanced CAP
- the 20-cell 9360 WolfCreek CAP
- a 14-cell or 10-cell removable magazine 9740 TimberWolf CAP
- a left-side SL3000 AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines
- the left-hand 39-cell SL8500 library CAP.



**Note:** The LSM portion of the SL8500 CAP must be the LSM number of the LSM on track 1 of the structure.

**01** indicates one of the following:

- the left-hand 40-cell 4410 or 9310 enhanced CAP
- the 30-cell 9360 WolfCreek optional CAP
- an optional SL3000 CEM CAP consisting of 2 - 13 cell removable magazines
- the right-hand optional 39-cell SL8500 library CAP.

**02** indicates one of the following:

- the PCAP in either a 4410 or 9310 enhanced CAP or a 9360 WolfCreek CAP
- an optional SL3000 CEM CAP consisting of 2 - 13 cell removable magazines.

**03, 04, 05** indicates the following:

- an optional SL3000 CEM/DEM CAPs each consisting of 2 - 13 cell removable magazines.

**06** indicates the following:

- the only required SL3000 BDM CAP consisting of 2 - 13 cell removable magazines.

**07, 08, 09, 0A** indicates the following:

- optional SL3000 CEM CAPs each consisting of 2 - 13 cell removable magazines.

**0B** indicates the following:

- a right-side SL3000 AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines



**Notes:** If SL3000 library CAPs are not present, HSC reports them as “not installed.” This keeps CAP addresses from changing as new CAPs are added.

- Refer to the individual command explanations for additional information on specifying CAPids.
- SL3000 and SL8500 libraries do not contain a PCAP.

## Ranges and Lists

HSC commands and utilities often allow the user to specify ranges and lists of elements.

1. An inclusive range is indicated by a pair of elements of the same length and data type, joined by a dash. The first element **must** be strictly less than the second element.
  - A hexadecimal range consists of a pair of hexadecimal numbers (for example, 0A2-0AD, or 000-0FC).
  - A decimal range consists of a pair of decimal numbers (for example, 1-9, or 010-094). Leading zeros are not required.
  - A numeric VOLSER range (*vol-range*) consists of a pair of VOLSER elements containing a decimal numeric portion of 1 to 6 digits (for example, ABC012-ABC025, or X123CB-X277CB). The decimal portion is referred to as an incremental range. The following additional restrictions apply:
    - The character positions of the incremental portion of both range elements must match.
    - The non-incremental characters of the first element must be identical to those of the second element.
    - You cannot increment two portions of a range element. If 111AAA is the first element, you cannot specify 112AAB for the second element.
    - If a VOLSER range contains more than one decimal portion, any portion is valid as the incremental range. For example:

**A00B00**      the largest range that can be specified is A00B00 through A99B99.

**A0B0CC**      the largest range that can be specified is A0B0CC through A9B9CC.

**000XXX**      the largest range that can be specified is 000XXX through 999XXX.



**Note:** A VOLSER range for most operator commands is limited to 100 entries. If a larger range is entered, only the first 100 VOLSERS in the range are acted on. If HSC utilities are used, the entire range is processed.

- An alphabetic VOLSER range (*vol-range*) consists of a pair of VOLSER elements containing an incremental portion of 1 to 6 characters (for example, 000AAA-000ZZZ, or 9AAA55-9ZZZ55). This portion is referred to as an incremental range. The following additional restrictions apply:
  - The character positions of the incremental portion of both range elements must match.
  - The non-incremental characters of the first element must be identical to those of the second element.

- You cannot increment two portions of a range element. If 111AAA is the first element, you cannot specify 112AAB for the second element.
- The alphabetic portion of the VOLSER range is defined as being from character A to Z. To increment multi-character sequences, each character increments to Z. For instance, ACZ is part of the AAA-AMM range. Examples are:

<b><u>A00A0-A99A0</u></b>	increments VOLSERS A00A0 through A09A0, then A10A0 through A99A0.
<b><u>9AA9A-9ZZ9A</u></b>	increments VOLSERS 9AA9A through 9AZ9A, then 9BA9A through 9ZZ9A.
<b><u>111AAA-111ZZZ</u></b>	increments VOLSERS 111AAA through 111AAZ, then 111ABA through 111ZZZ.
<b><u>999AM8- 999CM8</u></b>	increments VOLSERS 999AM8 through 999AZ8, then 999BA8 through 999CM8
<b><u>A3BZZ9- A3CDE9</u></b>	increments VOLSERS A3BZZ9 through A3CAA9, then A3CAB9 through A3CDE9
<b><u>AAAAAA- AAACCC</u></b>	increments VOLSERS AAAAAA through AAAAAZ, then AAAABA through AAACCC
<b><u>CCCNNN- DDDNNN</u></b>	increments VOLSERS CCCNNN through CCCNNZ, then CCCNOA through DDDNNN*

\* **Caution:** This is a very large range.

The number of volumes in an alphabetic VOLSER range depends on the number of elements in the incrementing portion of the VOLSER range. For an A to Z range in each character position, the number of volumes can be calculated by 26 to the power of the number of positions that are being incremented.

<b>A-Z</b>	$26^1$	26
<b>AA-ZZ</b>	$26^2$	676
<b>AAA-ZZZ</b>	$26^3$	17,576
<b>AAAA-ZZZZ</b>	$26^4$	456,976
<b>AAAAA-ZZZZZ</b>	$26^5$	11,881,376
<b>AAAAAA-ZZZZZZ</b>	$26^6$	308,915,776



**Note:** For most operator commands, a VOLSER range is limited to 100 entries. If a large range is entered, only the first 100 VOLSERS are acted upon. If HSC utilities are used, the entire range is processed.

2. A list consists of one or more elements. If more than one element is specified, the elements **must** be separated by a comma or a blank, and the entire list enclosed in parentheses.
  - For some HSC operator commands, an element may consist of a single item or a range. Refer to the individual command explanations for valid list entries.
  - In general, HSC utilities **do not allow** ranges to be specified in a list. The exception to this is a VOLSER list (*vol-list*), which does allow ranges to be specified.

For VOLATTR control statements, you can use wildcard characters (% , ? , or \*) to identify a list of VOLSERS.

Table 1 on page 30 gives an overview of the symbols used to designate portions of a library in commands.

**Table 1. Library Identifiers**

Library Identifier	Command Syntax	Input Format	Description
ACS Identifier (ACSid)	<i>acs-id</i>	AA	Hexadecimal value (00-FF); identifies the selected LMU.
ACSid Range	<i>acs-range</i>	AA <sup>1</sup> -AA <sup>2</sup>	Two ACSids joined by a dash, where aa <sup>1</sup> < aa <sup>2</sup> .
ACSid List	<i>acs-list</i>	(AA <sup>1</sup> ,AA <sup>2</sup> - AA <sup>3</sup> , AA <sup>4</sup> ,...,AA <sup>n</sup> )	List of ACSids and/or ACSid ranges in any combination, enclosed in parentheses.
LSM Number	<i>ll</i>	LL	Hexadecimal value (00-17); differentiates an LSM from other LSMs in an ACS.
LSM Identifier (LSMid)	<i>lsm-id</i>	AA:LL	Differentiates an LSM from other LSMs in a library.
LSMid Range	<i>lsm-range</i>	AA:LL <sup>1</sup> -AA:LL <sup>2</sup>	Two LSMids joined by a dash, where AA:LL <sup>1</sup> < AA:LL <sup>2</sup> .
LSMid List	<i>lsm-list</i>	(AA:LL <sup>1</sup> ,AA:LL <sup>2</sup> - AA:LL <sup>3</sup> , AA:LL <sup>4</sup> ,...,AA:LL <sup>n</sup> )	List of LSMids and/or LSMid ranges in any combination, enclosed in parentheses.
CAP Identifier (CAPid)	<i>cap-id or lsm-id</i>	AA:LL:CC or AA:LL	Identifies a specific CAP, where AA:LL is the LSMid and CC is the CAP number. Valid CAP numbers are 00 through 0B. <b>Note:</b> An <i>lsm-id</i> can be used to allow the HSC to select a CAP in a particular LSM based on CAP preference.
CAPid Range	<i>cap-range</i>	AA:LL <sup>1</sup> -AA:LL <sup>2</sup> or AA:LL:CC <sup>1</sup> -AA:LL:CC <sup>2</sup>	Two CAPids joined by a dash, where AA:LL <sup>1</sup> < AA:LL <sup>2</sup> , or CC <sup>1</sup> < CC <sup>2</sup> .
CAPid List	<i>cap-list</i>	(AA:LL:CC <sup>1</sup> , AA:LL:CC <sup>2</sup> -AA:LL:CC <sup>3</sup> , AA:LL:CC <sup>4</sup> ,...,AA:LL:C <sup>n</sup> )	List of CAPids and/or CAPid ranges in any combination, enclosed in parentheses. The abbreviated CAPid format may be used for some HSC commands.
VOLSER	<i>volser</i>	VVVVVV	Single volume serial number.
VOLSER range	<i>vol-range</i>	VVVXXX-VVVYYY or VVVVVX-VVVVVY or XVVVVV-YVVVVV or ....	Two volume serial numbers joined by a dash. The incremental portions must be in the same character positions.

**Table 1. Library Identifiers**

<b>Library Identifier</b>	<b>Command Syntax</b>	<b>Input Format</b>	<b>Description</b>
VOLSER list	<i>vol-list</i>	(VVVAAA, VVVBBB, VVCCVV-VVDDVV, ..., XXXVVV-YYYVVV, VZZZVV, ...)	List of one or more VOLSERS and/or VOLSER ranges in any combination, enclosed in parentheses.

## HSC Commands and Control Statements

HSC operator commands and control statements provide status information about the library, and allow an operator to control volume movement within the library and change the status of library resources.

### HSC Commands

Command syntax and parameter explanations are provided for each of the following HSC operator commands:

- ALLOC
- CLean
- Display
- ENter
- MODify (F)
- MOVE
- RELEase
- SRVlev
- TRace
- UNSCRatch
- Warn
- CAPPref
- COMMPath
- DRAin
- Journal
- MONITOR (MN)
- OPTion
- SCRArch
- STOPMN (PM)
- TRACELKP
- Vary
- CDs
- DISMount
- EJECT
- MNTD
- Mount
- RECover
- SENter
- SWitch
- UEXIT
- VIew

### UI Command Support

The Unified User Interface (UI) supports several output formats for a number of operator commands. Formats include plain text, structured XML, and comma separated values (CSV). Refer to the *NCS/VTCS XML Guide* for supported commands, XML tag names and structure for all UI requests.

## Control Statements

Certain HSC commands can also be used as PARMLIB control statements which are executed at HSC initialization. PARMLIB control statements enable you to tailor HSC startup options to the requirements of your data center. Unless otherwise specified, the options defined in a control statement can be dynamically changed during normal operations by issuing the corresponding HSC operator command.

Refer to the *HSC System Programmer's Guide* for more information about PARMLIB control statements.

## HSC Service Levels

The HSC subsystem can operate at either of two service levels:

- base service level
- full service level.

Normally the HSC initializes to the full service level when started. The HSC can be started at the base service level, however, and then brought to the full service level at any time by issuing the SRVlev FULL command. Refer to “SRVlev (Service Level) Command” on page 217 for details on command syntax and parameters.

## Base Service Level Functions

The base service level is the nucleus of the HSC subsystem. It provides the functions necessary to execute as an extension of the operating system, and satisfies the requirements defined by the operating environment in place at the time of execution.

All operator commands can be issued with the HSC executing at the base service level. Commands that involve library hardware, however, cannot perform their function completely.

## Mount Requests Intercepted During Base Service Level Operations

Mount messages intercepted by the SMC while the HSC is operating at the base service level are not sent to the HSC, but are left pending until the HSC reaches the full service level.

When the SMC recognizes that the HSC has reached the full service level, the mounts are redriven. These mount messages that occur with SMC intervention, and that are subsequently redriven when the HSC reaches the full service level, have their subpool specification honored.

## Pending Mount Request During Base Service Level Operations

Mount requests for transports attached to the ACS are left pending whenever the HSC is operating at the base service level. When the HSC is brought up to the full service level, all outstanding mount requests are processed and the mounts performed.

## Full Service Level Functions

The full service level of operation for the HSC provides all of the functions available and necessary to invoke and sustain complete library operations. These functions include:

- mount/dismount processing
- CAP processing
- cartridge and cell inventory management
- LMU access
- library resource recovery
- support for all library utilities
- support for all HSC commands
- support for programmatic interface.

Table 2 identifies the HSC commands that can execute at both the base and full service levels, and those that can execute only at the full service level.

**Table 2. HSC Command Execution at Base and Full Service Levels**

Command	Service Level Execution	
	Base	Full
ALLOC	YES	YES
CAPPref	NO	YES
CDs	YES	YES
CLean	NO	YES
COMMPath	YES	YES
DISMount	NO	YES
Display	YES	YES
DRAin	NO	YES
EJect	NO	YES
ENter	NO	YES
Journal	YES	YES
MNTD	NO	YES
MODify (F)	NO	YES
MONITOR (MN)	YES	YES
Mount	NO	YES
MOVE	NO	YES
OPTion	YES	YES
RECover	NO	YES
RELease	NO	YES
SCRAtch	YES	YES
SENter	NO	YES
SRVlew	YES	YES
STOPMN (PM)	YES	YES
SWitch	NO	YES
TRace	YES	YES
TRACELKP	YES	YES
UEXIT	YES	YES

**Table 2. HSC Command Execution at Base and Full Service Levels (Continued)**

Command	Service Level Execution	
	Base	Full
UNSCRatch	YES	YES
Vary	NO	YES
VIew	NO	YES
Warn	NO	YES

## Allocation (ALLOC) Command and Control Statement

The ALLOC command and control statement is used to set or change HSC allocation options. This allows you to customize device allocation to your environment, reduce the need for operator intervention, and improve the overall performance of the library.



**Note:** Allocation functions are performed by the Storage Management Component (SMC). Except as noted below, parameters set by this command are honored by the SMC. Refer to the *SMC Configuration and Administration Guide* for information about SMC functionality.

The following allocation options can be set or changed using this command:

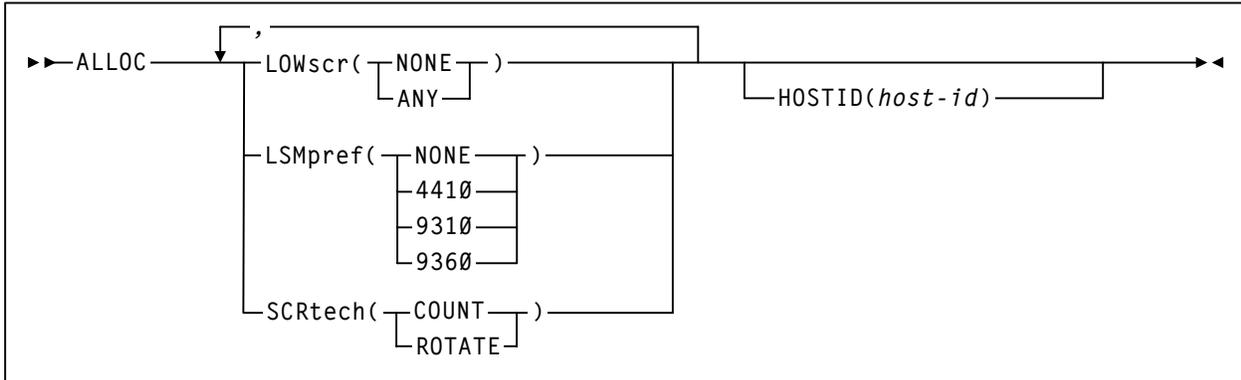
- scratch preferencing technique to designate LSMs with low or zero scratch counts as least-preferenced
- scratch preferencing technique for libraries with mixed LSM types
- scratch preferencing technique for libraries with multiple LSMs

The ALLOC command must be issued before a job is submitted to have an effect on device allocation. The specified options remain in effect for a designated host until they are changed again by another ALLOC command, or until the HSC is shutdown and restarted. Specify the ALLOC command in PARMLIB to make sure the allocation options remain in effect when the HSC is restarted.



**Note:** Use the HSC Display ALLOC command to list the HSC allocation options that are currently in effect. Refer to “Display ALLOC” on page 70 for details on command syntax and parameters.

## Syntax



### Command Name

#### ALLOC

initiates the ALLOC command. One or more keyword parameters must be specified with each command.

### Parameters

#### LOWscr

indicates whether or not LSMs with low or zero scratch counts are to be least-preferenced.



**Caution:** Using different settings of LOWscr from host to host is not recommended. **If a difference exists, unusually fast depletion of scratch volumes from certain LSMs may result, leading to increased pass-thru activity, reduced robotics utilization, and reduced library throughput.**

HSC User Exit 02 can be used to override the LOWscr parameter on a case by case basis; however, it cannot be used to override the LOWscr and LSMpref parameters simultaneously.

#### NONE

specifies that least-preferencing is not in effect. If the current scratch count for an LSM is below the scratch threshold level defined, or if no scratch threshold exists and the current scratch count is zero, the LSM continues to be preferenced according to the LSMpref and SCRtech values in effect. NONE is the initial value for the HSC.

## ANY

specifies that any LSM can be least-preferenced if either of the following conditions is met:

- A scratch threshold level is defined for the LSM and its scratch count is below this threshold.
- No scratch threshold exists for the LSM and its scratch count is zero.

A least-preferenced LSM does not participate in the rotation algorithm and may be any LSM type, including the type specified in the LSMpref parameter. Online and unallocated transports in least-preferenced LSMs are still eligible to satisfy allocation requests.



**Note:** If least-preferencing is desired for an LSM with a low but nonzero scratch count, the Warn command must be used to set a scratch threshold for the LSM. (Refer to “WARN Command” on page 248 for details on syntax and parameters.) It is not necessary to set a scratch threshold of zero. Scratch thresholds for ACSs are not relevant and have no effect on least-preferencing LSMs.

## LSMpref

indicates if a particular type of LSM is preferenced over all other LSM types to satisfy scratch requests. Only one type of LSM can be preferenced at a time.



**Note:** 9740, SL3000, and SL8500 LSMs do not participate in LSM preferencing.



**Caution:** Using different settings of LSMpref from host to host is not recommended. **If a difference exists, unusually fast depletion of scratch volumes from certain LSMs may result, leading to increased pass-thru activity, reduced robotics utilization, and reduced library throughput.**

When a particular type of LSM is preferenced over all other LSM types, two logical groupings of LSMs are created: one composed of all LSMs of the preferenced type, and one composed of all other LSMs of non-preferenced types. LSMs within the non-preferenced group are treated as though they are the same type.

HSC User Exits 02 and 04 can be used to override the LSMpref parameter on a case by case basis.

## NONE

indicates that all LSMs are logically grouped together and treated as though they are the same type. No preferencing by LSM type is performed. NONE is the initial value for the HSC.

## 4410

indicates that the 4410 LSMs are to be preferred over all non-4410 LSMs.

## 9310

indicates that the 9310 LSMs are to be preferred over all non-9310 LSMs.

## 9360

indicates that the 9360 LSMs are to be preferred over all non-9360 LSMs.

## SCRtech

indicates how LSMs are individually preferenced to satisfy scratch requests.



**Caution:** Using different settings of SCRtech from host to host is not recommended. **If a difference exists, unusually fast depletion of scratch volumes from certain LSMs may result, leading to increased pass-thru activity, reduced robotics utilization, and reduced library throughput.**

## COUNT

specifies that LSMs are individually preferenced in descending scratch count order. COUNT is the initial value for the HSC.

## ROTATE

specifies that LSMs are individually preferenced using a rotation algorithm. Each successive scratch request is preferenced to the next LSM. Once all LSMs have been preferenced, the rotation starts over. The starting sequence of LSMs is in descending scratch count order.

## HOSTID

identifies the host associated with the allocation options being specified in the command. If this parameter is not specified, the changes affect the host from which the command is issued.

### *host-id*

is the host ID (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

## Usage Considerations

User exits can be invoked to override the ALLOC settings for Defer, LOWscr and LSMpref. Refer to the *NCS User Exit Guide* for information.

## Example

The following example illustrates the use of the ALLOC command and control statement.

### Specifying Multiple Allocation Options:

```
ALLOC LOWSCR(ANY),LSMPREF(9310),SCRTECH(ROTATE)
```

Whenever the number of scratch cartridges in an LSM drops below the defined scratch threshold, LOWSCR(ANY) directs the HSC to least-preference that LSM.

LSMPREF(9310) directs the HSC to place all 9310 LSMs into one group and all other LSMs (both 4410 and 9360) into another group. The HSC prefers all scratch requests to the group of 9310 LSMs. In an environment that has a large number of scratch mounts, the 9310 LSMs are faster than the 4410 LSMs and can hold more scratch cartridges than the 9360 LSMs.

SCRTECH(ROTATE) directs the HSC to rotate the scratch requests among the 9310 LSMs in descending scratch count order. That is, the first scratch request is directed to the 9310 LSM with the most scratch cartridges, the second request is directed to the 9310 LSM with the second highest number of scratch cartridges, and so forth. When a scratch request has been directed to each of the 9310 LSMs, the rotation starts over.

The rotation algorithm applies separately to each group of preferred and non-preferred LSMs. If all transports in all 9310 LSMs are offline or already allocated, the scratch request workload is distributed across all non-9310 LSMs in the library complex.



**Note:** Refer to “LSM Scratch Preferencing” on page 306 for more information and examples.

## CAP Preference (CAPPref) Command and Control Statement

The CAPPref command and control statement is used for the following:

- assign a preference value to one or more designated Cartridge Access Ports (CAPs) in the ACS.
- place a CAP into automatic or manual mode.

Each LSM may contain one or more CAPs which allow you to enter and eject cartridges without interrupting automated operations. Several HSC commands and utilities require the use of a CAP and give you the option to either specify the CAP you want to use or allow the HSC to automatically select which CAP to use. When you allow the HSC to make the selection, a CAP is chosen based on availability and CAP preference value. Assigning CAP preference values establishes an ordered list of CAPs from which the HSC selects an available CAP with the highest nonzero preference value.

A CAP's preference value is zero until it is changed by a CAPPref command. Zero preference CAPs are never automatically selected by the HSC; however, they can be explicitly requested by the user

CAPPref can be issued as an operator command or specified in PARMLIB. Refer to "PARMLIB Control Statements" in the *HSC System Programmer's Guide* for information about PARMLIB.

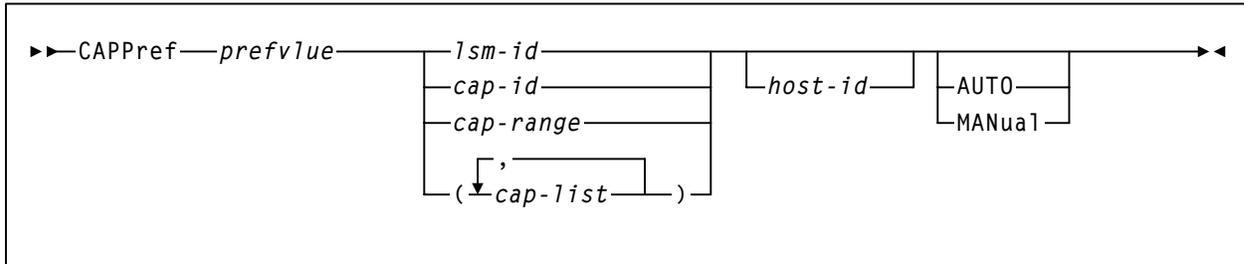
- A CAP preference value is only in effect on the host that executes the command.
- CAP mode (automatic or manual) is in effect on all hosts system-wide for each CAP; it cannot be set discretely for each host.

### CAPPref Considerations

CAP preference values are retained in the control data set from one HSC start to another.

- If the CAPPref command is contained in PARMLIB, **do not** code the AUTO or MANual setting. If these settings are used and the CAP is already in the selected mode, the command is rejected without changing the preference value.
- If the CAPPref command is contained in PARMLIB when the HSC is brought up, and the command can be executed by the host being started:
  - Each CAP is assigned the preference value that is specified in PARMLIB.
  - Each CAP is placed in the mode that is specified in PARMLIB. This affects all hosts in the system.
- If the CAPPref command is not contained in PARMLIB when the HSC is brought up, or the command cannot be executed by the host being started:
  - Each CAP is assigned the preference value that was last recorded for it in the control data set.
  - Each CAP is placed into the state that was last recorded for it in the control data set.

## Syntax



## Command Name

### CAPPref

initiates the CAP preference command or control statement.

## Parameters

### *prefvlue*

specifies a preference value which is assigned to all listed CAPs. Preference values are decimal in the range from 0-9.

A CAP with a preference value of 9 has the highest priority and is always selected first when it is available. If two or more available CAPs in an ACS have the highest preference value, the one with the lowest CAPid is selected.



### Notes:

- The preference value for a PCAP must be zero. A PCAP is only used when explicitly requested by the user; the HSC does not automatically select a PCAP.
- To use the CAPPref command to place a PCAP into AUTO or MANua1 mode, specify a *prefvlue* of 0.
- For an SL3000 AEM CAP, the allowable preference values are 0 and 1. If a value above 1 is specified, an SLS2622I message is displayed.

### *lsm-id*

identifies an LSM. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).



**Note:** If you enter this parameter when there is more than one CAP in the specified LSM, an error message is generated.

***cap-id* or *cap-range* or *cap-list***

identifies one or more CAPs. The format of a cap-id is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is one of the following:

**00**

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, standard 21-cell CAP or the right-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For 9740 LSMs, fixed rack 14-cell or 10-cell removable magazine CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a left-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, the CAP consists of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

**01**

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, left-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, this is an optional CAP consisting of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

**02**

- priority CAP (PCAP) for a 4410 or 9310 LSM enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, this is an optional CAP consisting of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

**03, 04, 05**

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM/DEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

**06**

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is the only required BDM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

**07, 08, 09, 0A**

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are an optional CEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

**0B**

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a right-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines



### Notes:

- If SL3000 library CAPs are not present, the HSC reports them as “not installed.” This keeps CAP addresses from changing as new CAPs are added.
- Refer to “How to Specify a CAPid” on page 24 for a complete explanation of CAPid formats
- SL3000 and SL8500 libraries do not contain a PCAP.

A *cap-range* identifies an inclusive range of multi-cell CAPs; PCAPs are excluded from the range. The beginning and ending values in a range must be valid CAPids and neither CAPid can specify a PCAP. The rules for specifying ranges apply (see “Ranges and Lists” on page 27).

PCAPs must be explicitly specified in the CAPPref command.

#### Example 1:

```
00:00:00-00:03:00
```

In this example, all CAPs in LSMs 00:00, 00:01, 00:02, and 00:03, except PCAPs, are included in this range.

#### Example 2:

```
00:00:00-00:03:01
```

In this example, CAPid 00:00:00 is either a standard CAP or a magazine-style CAP. CAPid 00:03:01 is a magazine-style CAP. All CAPs in LSMs 00:01 and 00:02, except PCAPs, are included in this range.

Each *cap-list* element can be either a single CAPid or a CAPid range. The elements in a list must be separated by a comma or a blank, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

#### *host-id*

specifies that the CAPPref command is to be performed only if the *host-id* parameter matches the identifier of the issuing host (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

- If CAPPref is issued from PARMLIB and a *host-id* is specified, the command is executed only by the host with the matching ID.
- If CAPPref is issued from PARMLIB and a host ID is not specified, the command is executed by each host that accesses PARMLIB.

Refer to “PARMLIB Control Statements” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for an explanation of PARMLIB.

## AUTO

indicates that the specified CAPs are to be placed in automatic mode (referred to as *auto-mode*). Auto-mode CAPs remain unlocked when not in use. AUTO is the initial setting for a PCAP.

When a CAP is in auto-mode, you can initiate an enter operation without issuing an ENter command. You do this by opening the CAP door, placing one or more cartridges inside, and closing the CAP. The CAP is locked while the enter is being processed; then it is unlocked again.

Auto-mode CAPs can be used for eject processing by either:

- specifying the CAPid on an Eject command or EJECT utility, or
- assigning a preference value and allowing the HSC to automatically select the CAP.

A CAP in auto-mode is locked whenever it is selected for an eject operation, to prevent an enter operation on this CAP until the eject completes.



**Note:** HSC termination will be slower with CAPs in auto-mode; especially in a multiple-host environment.

## MANual

indicates that the specified CAP is to be locked when not in use. MANual is the initial setting for all multi-cartridge CAPs.



### Notes:

- AUTO/MANual settings are sent host-to-host using LMU broadcast and the status is preserved in the control data set. For this reason, StorageTek recommends that you not make frequent changes to the CAP mode.
- A *prefvlue* of 0 must be specified when using the CAPPref command to set a PCAP to AUTO or MANual mode.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the CAPPref command and control statement.

### **Assign Preference Value 9 to CAPid 00:03:00 for Host HSC1:**

```
CAPPREF 9,00:03:00,HSC1
```

To assign CAPids 00:02:01, 00:03:00, and 00:05:00 through 00:08:00 a preference value of 7 for host HSC0, the following example applies.

### **Assign Preference Value 7 to Listed CAPids for Host HSC0:**

```
CAPP 7,(00:02:01,00:03:00,00:05:00-00:08:00),HSC0
```



**Note:** In the example above, all PCAPs are excluded.

To assign CAPid 002:00 a preference value of 9 for host HSC0 and place it in automatic mode, the following example applies.

### **Assign CAPid 00:02:00 Preference Value 9 & Place in Auto-Mode:**

```
CAPP 9,00:02:00,HSC0,AUTO
```

To place CAPid 000:02 (PCAP) into manual mode, the following example applies.

### **Place CAPid 00:00:02 into Manual Mode:**

```
CAPP 0,00:00:02,MANUAL
```

## CDS Enable/Disable Command

The CDs command is used to enable, disable, and expand HSC control data sets on an active HSC (or, in a multiple-host environment, on all active hosts) without requiring you to bring down or substantially disrupt normal tape processes. The command allows users to:

- add and subtract CDS resources
- rename, relocate, and expand CDSs.

The primary, secondary, and standby CDS copies can be enabled, disabled, and expanded using the CDs command.

Normal tape processes that require access to the control data set are suspended only for the amount of time it takes to allocate, unallocate, and expand each CDS. All active hosts are notified of the action taken, and each host must acknowledge the change before work resumes.

All CDSs known to the subsystem are expanded at the same time with a single invocation of the CDS EXpand command, however, all newly resized CDSs must be enabled before the command is entered. The status of the CDSs can be determined using the Display CDS command. Refer to “Display CDS” on page 75 for details on the command syntax and parameters.

**The CDS EXpand parameter can only be used to expand the CDS for use with future VSM resources. See the VTCS documentation for further information. To expand the CDS in preparation for future HSC resources only, the MERGEcds procedure must be used instead. Refer to the *HSC System Programmer's Guide*.**



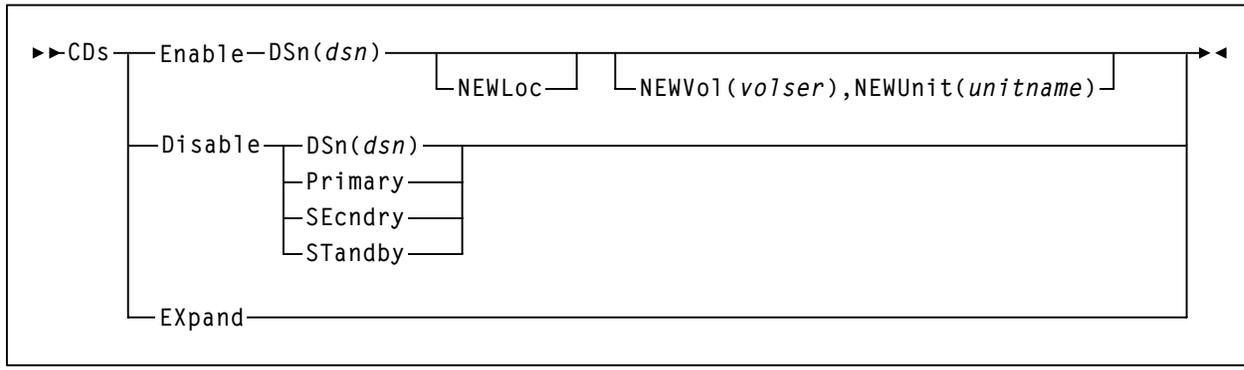
**Warning:** StorageTek recommends backing up all CDS copies prior to issuing the CDS EXpand command. Failures during the expand operation usually cause the CDS to be unusable. It is important to back up the CDS before invoking the CDS EXpand command to make sure that the latest copy of the CDS is available in case of a failure during the expand operation.



### Notes:

- StorageTek recommends that you do not issue CDs Enable and/or Disable commands simultaneously from multiple hosts. Doing so can cause the HSC to issue error messages. If this occurs, refer to the *HSC Messages and Codes Manual* to determine if user action is required.
- The status of all copies of the control data set can be determined using the Display CDS command. Refer to “Display CDS” on page 75 for details on command syntax and parameters.

## Syntax



### Command Name

**CDS**  
initiates the CDS command.

### Parameters

#### Enable

Allocates and activates any preexisting, renamed, or new CDS specified by the **DSN** parameter. The CDS Enable command can allocate and activate a CDS residing in a new location, either with a preexisting or a new data set name, when the **NEWLoc** parameter is specified. MVS catalog services are used to resolve the volume and unit definitions, if the **NEWVol** or **NEWUnit** parameters are not specified.

The specified control data set must be named in the CDSDEF control statement in PARMLIB.

#### DSn

specifies the control data set name to allocate for all hosts.

#### *dsn*

is the data set name.

#### NEWLoc

optionally, indicates that a relocation activity has occurred for the CDS named by the **DSN** parameter. MVS uses the catalog facility to determine the volume location of the relocated CDS.

**NEWVol**

optionally, specifies the volume for a relocated CDS copy. In MVS, if the new CDS copy is not cataloged, this parameter is required. If **NEWVol** is specified, but **NEWUnit** is not, **NEWUnit** defaults to SYSALLDA.

**NEWVol** is required if the user is executing the command in the HSC VM environment.

***volser***

indicates the volume.

**NEWUnit**

optionally, specifies the unit name for a relocated CDS copy. This parameter defaults to SYSALLDA if it is omitted and **NEWVol** is specified.

**NEWUnit** is required if the user is executing the command in the HSC VM environment.

***unitname***

indicates the unit name.

**EXpand**

expands all enabled CDSs to the maximum number of 4096 blocks that can fit in the physical space allocated for the CDS. The maximum number of 4096 blocks is determined by the smallest CDS copy.

**Disable**

unallocates (makes inactive) the specified CDS. The CDS Disable command **does not** disable the last active copy of the control data set.

**DSn**

specifies the control data set name to unallocate for all hosts.

***dsn***

is the data set name.

**Primary**

indicates that the current primary control data set is to be disabled.

**SEcndry**

indicates that the current secondary control data set is to be disabled.

**STandby**

indicates that the current standby control data set is to be disabled.

## Examples

The following examples demonstrate the use of the CDS command.

### ***Enable the Control Data Set ACS.DBASECPY for All Hosts:***

```
CDS ENABLE DSN(ACS.DBASECPY)
```

### ***Disable the Secondary Control Data Set for All Hosts:***

```
CDS DISABLE SECNDRY
```

### ***Enable Cataloged CDS ACS.DBASECPY in a New Location:***

```
CDS ENABLE DSN(ACS.DBASECPY) NEWL
```

### ***Enable Uncataloged CDS ACS.DBASECPY in a New Location:***

```
CDS ENABLE DSN(ACS.DBASECPY) NEWVOL(ACS001),NEWUNIT(A001)
```

### ***Initiate Expansion of Enabled CDSs:***

```
CDS EXPAND
```

## CLEAN Command

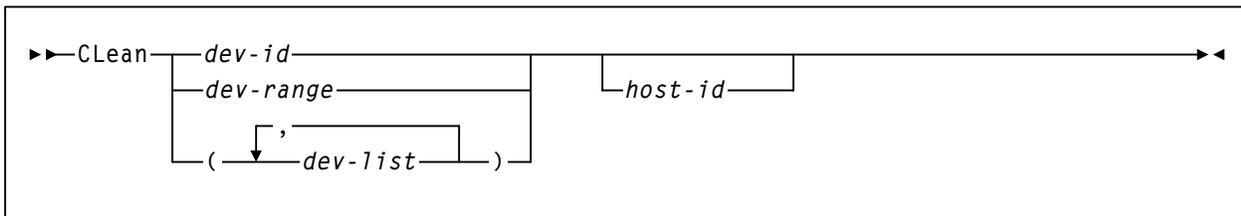
The CLEAN command schedules a cleaning cartridge to be mounted on a library-controlled transport. The specified transport is flagged by the control data set and a cleaning cartridge is mounted prior to the next volume mount.



### Notes:

- The automated cleaning function must be enabled before you issue the CLEAN command. Refer to “MNTD (Mount/Dismount Options) Command and Control Statement” on page 169 for details on using the MNTD AUToclN(ON) command to enable automated cleaning.
- Use the Display MNTD command to determine whether automated cleaning is enabled or disabled. Refer to “Display MNTD” on page 104 for details on command syntax and parameters.

### Syntax



### Command Name

#### CLEAN

initiates the CLEAN command.

### Parameters

#### *dev-id* or *dev-range* or *dev-list*

specifies a list of one or more device addresses for which cleaning is to be scheduled. Each *dev-list* element can be either a single device address or a range. The elements in a list must be separated by a comma or a blank, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

#### *host-id*

indicates that cleaning is to be performed for the device address of the specified host (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the CLean command.

### ***Schedule a Cleaning Cartridge Mount for Transport Address 564:***

```
CLEAN 564
```

### ***Schedule Cleaning Cartridge Mounts for Transports 560-567:***

```
CL 560-567
```

### ***Schedule Cleaning for Transports 560,563,567 for Host HSC1:***

```
CL (560,563,567) HSC1
```

## Communications Path (COMMPath) Command and Control Statement

The COMMPath command and control statement is used in a multiple-host environment to perform the following functions:

- set up a tiered communication service between HSC hosts which can be modified at any time without bringing down the HSC
- define the hierarchy of methods available to each host for communicating with other hosts
- establish the current method of communications for a host (or switch from one method to another).

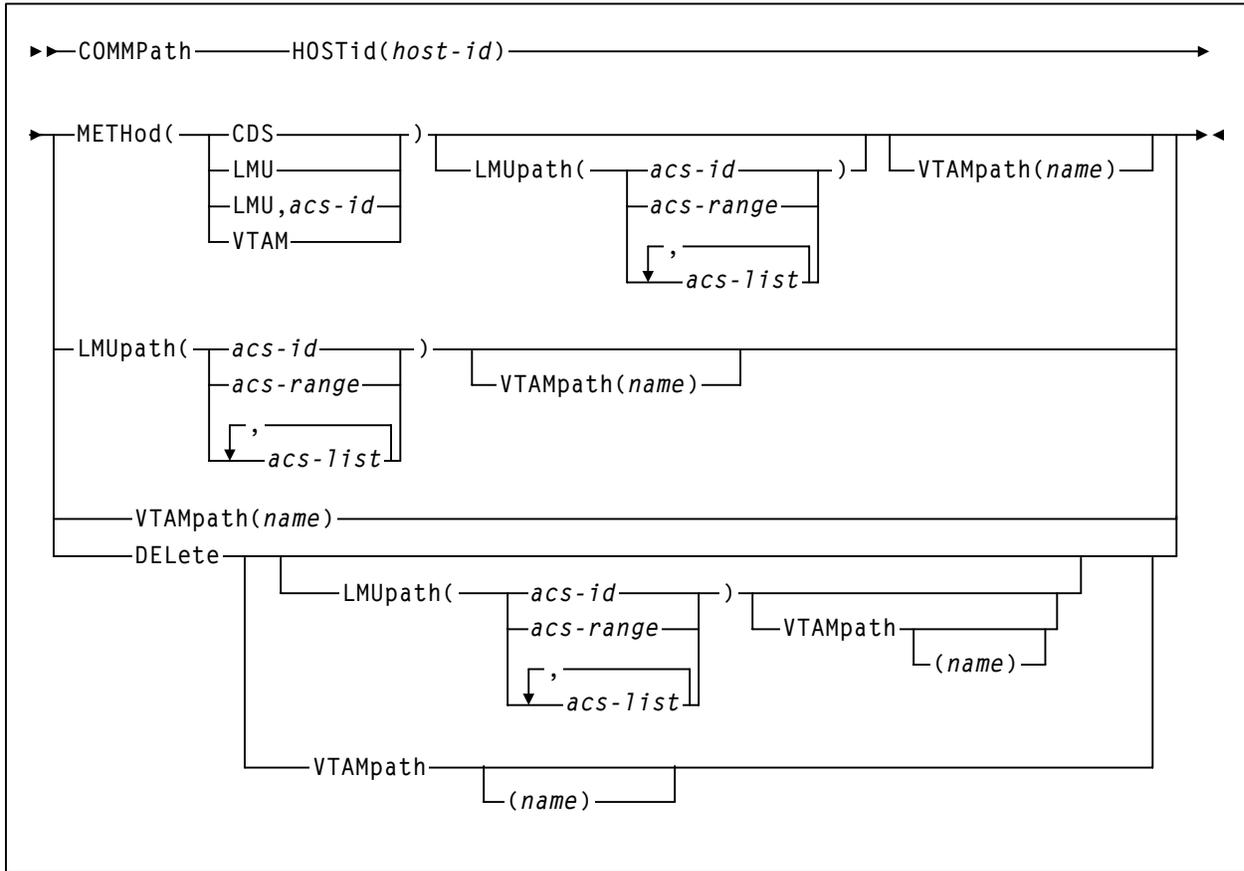
It is recommended that host-to-host communications be defined in PARMLIB at startup. The COMMPath command is best used to switch communications paths or to delete paths.



### Notes:

- **StorageTek recommends using VTAM host-to-host communications if possible, since a VTAM network does not place a performance burden on HSC components.** Refer to “Set High-performance Host-to-Host Communications” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for more information.
- On each host, the COMMPath command must be executed once to define communications for the issuing host and once for each attached host. That is, for a three-host system, the command must be executed three times on each host.
- After the HSC initiates an automatic downward switch, an upward switch can only be accomplished by executing the COMMPath command.
- Use the Display COMMPath command to display the current settings for HSC host-to-host communications. Refer to “Display COMMPath” on page 79 for details on command syntax and parameters.

## Syntax



### Command Name

#### COMMPATH

initiates the COMMPATH command or control statement.

### Parameters

#### HOSTid

specifies the host for which the command sets or modifies the parameters.

#### *host-id*

is the host identifier (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

#### METHOD

specifies the current method of communications to be used for the specified host. This parameter allows switching to a higher, lower, or equivalent (for LMUpath only) level method of communications.

#### CDS

indicates that communication is to be through the control data set.



**Note:** CDS is the initial setting for HSC host-to-host communications.

## LMU

indicates that communication is to be through an LMU.



### Notes:

- If LMU is specified, the LMUpath parameter must have been specified in a previous command, or it must be included in the same command.
- If the LMU method is specified in PARMLIB, the switch from CDS to LMU is delayed until the HSC initializes to the full service level.
- If the HSC service level drops to base, LMU communications are switched to CDS. When the full service level is restored, an upward switch to the LMU method can only be accomplished by issuing the COMMPATH command.

### *acs-id*

specifies the LMUpath definition that is to be the active (or current) LMUpath. If you do not supply an *acs-id*, the first LMUpath specified in the list of LMUpath definitions is made active.

## VTAM

specifies that communication is to be through a VTAM network.



### Notes:

- If VTAM is specified, the VTAMpath parameter must have been specified in a previous command, or it must be included in the same command.
- A downward switch from the VTAM method is performed when the VTAM APPLID of the HSC is varied inactive, or VTAM is shut down.

## LMUpath

specifies one or more LMUpaths that can be used for host-to-host communications. An LMU is eligible to be used for host-to-host communications if it is connected to other HSCs sharing a library.

If more than one eligible LMU is specified, the HSC begins searching for an available communications path beginning with the first *acs-id* in the list. The search continues until a path can be established or the end of the list is reached.

The LMUpath definitions are cumulative; that is, the definitions specified in a command are appended to the current list of definitions. You can insert an LMUpath into the current list by specifying the LMUpath that you wish to insert, followed by the LMUpaths that are to come after it. If a COMMPATH command specifies an LMUpath that is already defined in the list, the path is removed from its current position and appended to the end of the list as specified in the command.

For example, the current definition is (02,03,04). You can insert LMUpath 01 after 02 by specifying LMU(01,03,04). Now the current list appears as (02,01,03,04).

Also, if the current definition is (02,01,03,04) and the command specifies LMU(01,02), the list becomes (03,04,01,02).



**Note:** For a temporary outage of an LMU, it is not necessary but may be desirable to delete the LMUpath definition for that LMU. When the LMU is available again, define it to the communications service again by adding it to the current definitions.

***acs-id* or *acs-range* or *acs-list***

identifies one or more specific LMUs. Each *acs-list* element can be either a single ACSid or an ACSid range. The elements in a list must be separated by a comma or a blank, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

**VTAMpath**

defines the VTAM name to be associated with an HSC host. The VTAM name is used in the process of establishing a VTAM connection with other HSCs. It is the VTAM APPLID defined by the VTAM APPL statement.

This parameter can also be used to change or delete a previously defined name, but only when the current method for this host is not VTAM.

***name***

is the VTAM name.

**DELeTe**

specifies to delete the definitions specified by the LMUpath parameter and/or the VTAMpath parameter.

If LMU is not the current method, all LMUpath definitions can be deleted by specifying DELeTe LMUpath (without supplying an *acs-id*). If the current method is LMU, the active LMUpath cannot be deleted.

If the current method is VTAM, the VTAMpath definition cannot be deleted.

**Examples**

The following examples illustrate the use of the COMMPATH command and control statement.

***Define VTAM Method and VTAMpath:***

The following example defines VTAM as the communications method for host HSC1 and defines the path (VTAM APHSC1) to use.

```
COMMPATH HOSTID(HSC1),METHOD(VTAM),VTAMPATH(APHSC1)
```

### **Define LMU Method and LMUpath List:**

The following example defines LMU as the communications method for host HSC2 and specifies an ordered list of eligible LMUs.

```
COMP HOSTID(HSC2),METHOD(LMU),LMUPATH(01,00,02-04)
```

The LMUpath parameter defines the search order for automatic switching of LMUpaths if an error occurs. First try the LMU connected to ACS 01. Then try 00. If necessary, try 02, 03, and 04 respectively.

### **Define VTAM Method and VTAMpath, and Specify LMUpaths:**

The following example defines VTAM as the communications method for host HSC2, specifies the path (VTAM APHSC2) to use, and supplies an ordered list of eligible LMU paths.

```
COMP HOSTID(HSC2),METHOD(VTAM),VTAMPATH(APHSC2),LMU(01,00,02-04)
```

### **Switch to LMU Communications Using LMU 00**

Issue the following command on host HSC1 to switch host HSC1 from CDS communications to LMU communications and specify which LMU to use.

```
COMP HOST(HSC1),METHOD(LMU,00)
```

### **Delete All Defined LMUpaths for HSC2**

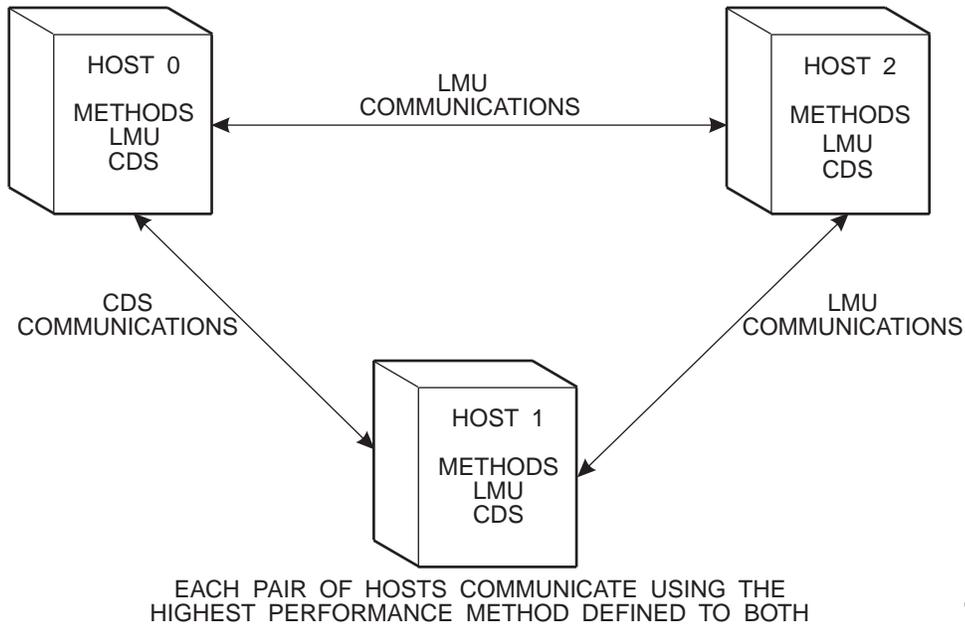
Issue the following command to delete all LMUpath definitions for host HSC2.

```
COMP HOST(HSC2),DEL,LMUPATH
```

Figure 3 illustrates a tiered communications service in a three host configuration.



**Note:** In the examples below, hosts HSC0 and HSC1 have no defined communications paths in common; therefore, they communicate using the CDS.



**Figure 3. HSC Communication Methods Between Multiple Hosts**

### Using PARMLIB to Define Host-to-Host Communications

This example shows how the communications service in Figure 3 would be defined in PARMLIB.

```
COMPPath HOSTID(HSC0) METHOD(VTAM),VTAMPATH(APHSC0)
COMPPath HOSTID(HSC1) METHOD(LMU),LMUPATH(00)
COMPPath HOSTID(HSC2) METHOD(VTAM),LMUPATH(00),VTAMPATH(APHSC2)
```



**Note:** Each host reads PARMLIB and executes all three commands during startup. If the HOSTid in the command is the executing host, the METHod parameter is acted on; otherwise, it is ignored.

## **Using Operator Commands to Define Host-to-Host Communications**

This example describes how the communications service in Figure 3 would be defined using operator commands.

**Issue the following commands from host HSC0:**

```
COMMPATH HOSTID(HSC0) METHOD(VTAM),VTAMPATH(APHSC0)
COMMPATH HOSTID(HSC1) LMUPATH(00)
COMMPATH HOSTID(HSC2) LMUPATH(00),VTAMPATH(APHSC2)
```

**Issue the following commands from host HSC1:**

```
COMMPATH HOSTID(HSC1) METHOD(LMU),LMUPATH(00)
COMMPATH HOSTID(HSC0) VTAMPATH(APHSC0)
COMMPATH HOSTID(HSC2) LMUPATH(00),VTAMPATH(APHSC2)
```

**Issue the following commands from host HSC2:**

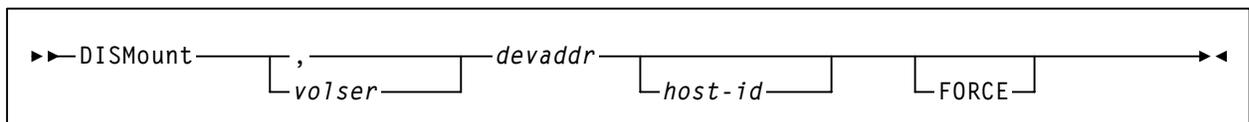
```
COMMPATH HOSTID(HSC2) METHOD(VTAM),LMUPATH(00),VTAMPATH(APHSC2)
COMMPATH HOSTID(HSC0) VTAMPATH(APHSC0)
COMMPATH HOSTID(HSC1) LMUPATH(00)
```

## DISMOUNT Command

The DISMount command directs the LSM robot to dismount a cartridge. Although the volume may be rewound and unloaded by the operating system, it may not be dismounted from the library transport. This command is provided in case some hosts are not communicating (disconnected) with a specific ACS (see “Disconnected Mode” on page 12 for an explanation of disconnected mode).

Hosts that are still communicating (connected mode) may be able to semi-automate tape handling for hosts that cannot communicate with a specific ACS. When the HSC does not dismount a volume, you must make sure that the volume is unloaded before you issue the DISMount command.

### Syntax



### Command Name

#### **DISMount**

initiates the DISMount command.

### Parameters

#### *volser*

specifies which volume to dismount. The *volser* operand is optional. If it is not specified, the robot dismounts whatever volume is mounted on the device.

If *volser* is not specified, a comma must be entered immediately before the device address to indicate the missing operand. For example:

```
DISMOUNT ,B00
```

#### *devaddr*

specifies the device address of the transport from which the volume is to be dismounted.

#### *host-id*

indicates that the DISMount command is to be performed for the device address of the specified host (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the DISMount command.

***Dismount VOLSER 110017 From Transport Address 18F for This Host:***

```
DISMOUNT 110017 18F
```

***Dismount VOLSER 111222 From Transport Address B04 for Host HSC2:***

```
DISM 111222 B04 HSC2
```

## DISPLAY Command

The Display command is used to obtain status information about various components of the library. A console message presents a formatted, multiple-line display of status information for the specified component. If the Display command is issued with no parameters, the current software level and service level are displayed.

Some Display parameters are supported by the UUI interface, which provides plain text, structured XML, and comma separated values (CSV) output formats. See the *NCS/VTCS XML Guide* for a list of Display parameters.



**Note:** Display command parameters are described individually in the sections that follow.

### Display Identifiers

The DRives, SCRatch, and THReshld parameters can display media types and recording techniques. When multiple MEDia or RECtech values are displayed, and cannot fit within the field provided for them, they are abbreviated as shown in Table 3 on page 63 and Table 4 on page 64.

**Table 3. MEDia Display IDs**

Media Type:	Display ID:
Standard	1
ECART	E
DD3A	A
DD3B	B
DD3C	C
DD3D	D
STK1R	R
STK1U	U
ZCART	Z
NONE	*
STK2P	P
STK2W	W
T10000T1	IT
T10000TS	ST
T10000CT	TC

**Table 4. RECtech Display IDs**

<b>Recording Technique:</b>	<b>Display ID:</b>
18track	1
36Atrack	2
36Btrack	3
36track	4
LONGItud	5
DD3	6
STK1RA	F
STK1RA34	G
STK1RA35	H
STK1R35	7
STK1R34	8
STK1RB	E
STK1RB34	C
STK1RB35	D
STK1RAB	16
STK1RAB4	14
STK1RAB5	15
STK1RC	10
STK1RC34	11
STK1RC35	12
36Ctrack	9
STK1R	R
IGNORE	*
STK2P	P
STK2P34	A
STK2P35	B
STK2PA	13
STK2PA34	O
STK2PA35	Q

**Table 4. RECtech Display IDs**

<b>Recording Technique:</b>	<b>Display ID:</b>
STK2PB	L
STK2PB34	M
STK2PB35	N

In a display of media types, for example, multiple values may be shown as

1+A+B

which indicates that Standard, DD3A, and DD3B recording techniques are being represented.

If multiple MEDIA or RECtech values are specified, only the last value is used. In the following example, only MEDIA(DD3) is processed.

```
DISPLAY THRESHLD MEDIA(STD) MEDIA(ECART) MEDIA(DD3)
```

### Display Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display command default and provides sample output.

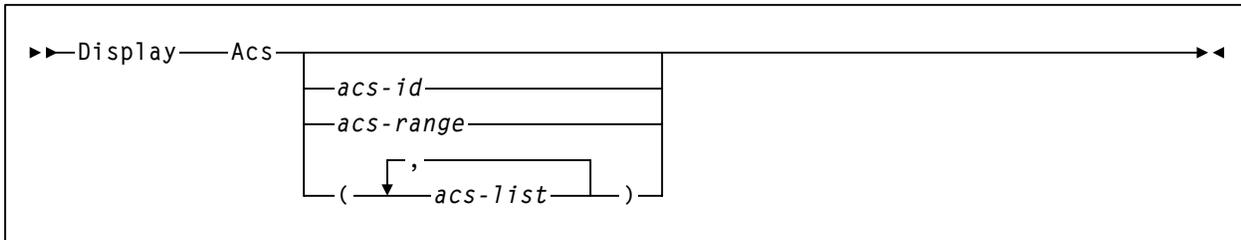
```
DISPLAY  
  
Sample Output  
  
... HSC SERVICE LEVEL FULL ACTIVE  
... DATA BASE STATUS: xxx
```



**Note:** In the previous sample, xxx is the unique message sequence number assigned to multiple-line messages. This number appears in the left column of all subsequent lines of the message.

## Display Acs

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### Acs

displays the status of one or more ACSs. ACS status includes:

- partition ID
- online/offline status of all stations
- connected/disconnected/unallocated status of all ACSs
- number of outstanding responses owed to the HSC by the LMU
- number of temporary outage queue elements
- the number of free storage cells and scratch volumes available in the ACS
- HSC/LMU compatibility level
- redundant electronics connections (summary of all Library Controllers).



**Note:** The number of free storage cells is not accurate until the LSM(s) is varied online. Refer to “VARY Station Command” on page 236 for syntax information.

#### *acs-id* or *acs-range* or *acs-list*

identifies one or more ACSs for which the system is to display status. Each *acs-list* element can be either a single ACSid or an ACSid range. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

If you do not supply an *acs-id*, the status of all defined ACSs in the library is displayed.

## Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display Acs command and provides sample output.

### *Display the Status of ACS 00*

```
Display ACS 00

Sample Output

... ACS 00 STATUS: CONNECTED xxx
Partition ID=000
Compatibility levels: HSC=23, LMU=23
Redundant Electronics Configured
Scratch Volumes available..... 0
Free Cells available..... 2583
RE Library Summary:
LIB LC Mode Status IP Addr/Host Name
1 A standby 10.80.46.170
1 B active Online 10.80.46.171
2 A active not assigned
2 B standby not assigned
3 A active not assigned
3 B standby not assigned
4 A active not assigned
4 B standby not assigned
```

## Display ALI

### Syntax

```
▶—Display—ALI—▶
```

### Parameters

#### ALI

displays the status of the control data set and a status summary of each ACS.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display ALI command and provides sample output.

## Display ALI

D AL

### Sample Output

```
... HSC SERVICE LEVEL FULL ACTIVE
... DATA BASE STATUS: xxx
DATASET CONFIGURED CURRENT
PRIMARY ..... ONLINE ONLINE
SECONDARY ..... ONLINE ONLINE
STANDBY ..... OFFLINE OFFLINE
JOURNAL..... ONLINE ONLINE
... ACS 00 STATUS: CONNECTED xxx
COMPATIBILITY LEVELS: HSC=10, LMU=05
DUAL LMU IS CONFIGURED
MASTER IS A; STANDBY IS READY
STATION 00CC ONLINE
STATION 00CD OFFLINE
STATION 05E8 STANDBY
STATION 05E9 OFFLINE
SCRATCH VOLUMES AVAILABLE.....      52
FREE CELLS AVAILABLE.....           317
... LSM 00:00 STATUS: xxx
ONLINE      - READY                  - AUTOMATIC
... LSM 00:01 STATUS: xxx
ONLINE      - READY                  - AUTOMATIC
... ACS 01 STATUS: CONNECTED xxx
COMPATIBILITY LEVELS: HSC=10, LMU=05
DUAL LMU NOT CONFIGURED
STATION 00D0 ONLINE
STATION 00D1 OFFLINE
SCRATCH VOLUMES AVAILABLE.....      167
FREE CELLS AVAILABLE.....           756
... LSM 01:01 STATUS: xxx
ONLINE      - READY                  - AUTOMATIC
```

## Display ALLOC

### Syntax

```
►—Display—ALLOC—►
```

### Parameters

#### ALLOC

displays the current setting of all HSC allocation options set by the ALLOC command.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display ALLOC command and provides sample output.

#### *Display the Current Allocation Options*

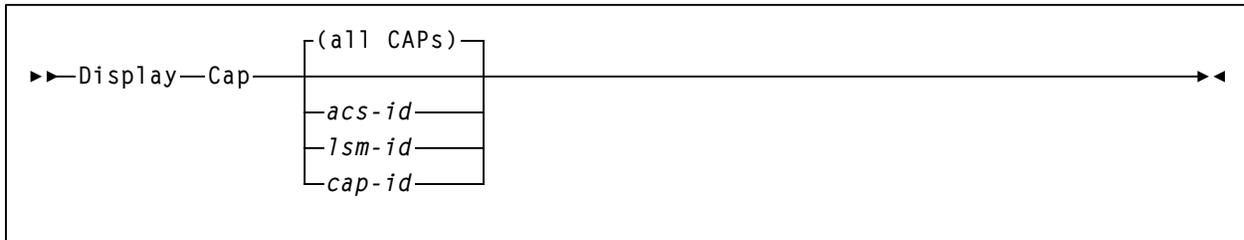
```
DISPLAY ALLOC  
  
Sample Output  
  
... HSC ALLOCATION OPTIONS: xxx  
  
DEFER      - OFF          (FOR DOWNLEVEL SMC)  
ZEROSCR    - OFF          (FOR DOWNLEVEL SMC)  
FETCH      - OFF          (FOR DOWNLEVEL SMC)  
SPECVOL    - (00-01)     (FOR DOWNLEVEL SMC)  
LSMPREF    - NONE  
SCRTECH    - COUNT  
LOWSCR     - NONE
```



**Note:** In the sample output above, *xxx* is the unique message sequence number assigned to multiple-line messages. This number appears in the left column of all subsequent lines of the message.

## Display Cap

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### Cap

displays CAP activity for one or more CAPs online to this host. The output display contains the following information:

- CAPid
- CAP size: PCAP (priority CAP); 21-cell or 14-cell 9740 (standard CAP); 40-cell (enhanced CAP); 20-cell (9360 CAP); 30-cell (9360 optional CAP); 26-cell (SL3000 CAP); or 39-cell (SL8500 CAP).
- Partition ID
- Host ID of the host owning the CAP
- Priority: CAP preference value
- CAP mode: cleaning, draining, ejecting, entering, or idle
- CAP status: active, automatic mode, manual mode, offline, online, and/or recovery needed.



**Note:** If the CAP status indicates RECOVERY, refer to “How To Clear Recovery Status On A CAP” on page 318 for instructions on clearing this condition.

#### **all CAPs**

displays all CAP activity for all ACSs online to this host.

#### **acs-id**

displays all CAP activity for a specified ACS.

#### **lsm-id**

displays all CAP activity for a specified LSM.

#### **cap-id**

displays all CAP activity for a specified CAP.



**Notes:**

- The *acsid*, *lsmid*, and *capid* parameters are positional operands. If no positional operand is specified, the default operation is to display the status of all CAP activity for all ACSs.
- The *acsid*, *lsmid*, and *capid* may be expressed as a list.

**Example**

The following examples illustrate the use of the Display Cap command and provide sample output.

In these examples, LSM 00:00 contains a standard CAP; LSM 00:01 a Clipper CAP; and LSM 01:00 an optional WolfCreek door with a 20-cell CAP, a 30-cell CAP, and a PCAP.

**Display CAP Status**

```

D CAP
Sample Output
... CAP STATUS: xxx
CAP ID      SIZE      HOSTID      PRIORITY      MODE      STATUS
-----
00:00:00    21-CELL    NONE        00            IDLE      MANUAL
                                ONLINE
00:01:00    40-CELL    HSC1        09            ENTERING  ACTIVE
                                MANUAL
                                ONLINE
00:01:01    40-CELL    NONE        08            IDLE      ACTIVE
                                MANUAL
                                ONLINE
00:01:02    PCAP       NONE        00            IDLE      AUTOMATIC
                                ONLINE
01:00:00    20-CELL    HSC3        09            EJECTING  ACTIVE
                                MANUAL
                                ONLINE
01:00:01    30-CELL    NONE        08            IDLE      MANUAL
                                ONLINE
01:00:02    PCAP       NONE        00            IDLE      AUTOMATIC
                                ONLINE
                                ONLINE
01:01:00    21-CELL    NONE        00            IDLE      MANUAL
                                ONLINE

```

### Display CAP Status Using LSMid

```
D CAP 00:01:00
Sample Output
... CAP STATUS: xxx
CAP ID      SIZE      HOSTID      PRIORITY      MODE      STATUS
-----
00:01:00    40-CELL    HSC1        09            ENTERING  ACTIVE
                                         MANUAL
                                         ONLINE
00:01:01    40-CELL    NONE        08            IDLE      ACTIVE
                                         MANUAL
                                         ONLINE
00:01:02    PCAP       NONE        00            IDLE      AUTOMATIC
                                         ONLINE
```

### Display CAP Status Using CAPid

```
D CAP 00:01:00
Sample Output
... CAP STATUS: xxx
CAP ID      SIZE      HOSTID      PRIORITY      MODE      STATUS
-----
00:01:00    40-CELL    HSC1        09            ENTERING  ACTIVE
                                         MANUAL
                                         ONLINE
```

### Display CAP Status Using LSMid List

```
D CAP (00:00,00:01)
Sample Output
... CAP STATUS: xxx
CAP ID      SIZE      HOSTID     PRIORITY   MODE       STATUS
-----
00:00:00    21-CELL  NONE      00         IDLE       MANUAL
                                ONLINE
00:01:00    40-CELL  HSC1      09         ENTERING   ACTIVE
                                MANUAL
                                ONLINE
00:01:02    PCAP     NONE      00         IDLE       AUTOMATIC
                                ONLINE
```

## Display CDS

### Syntax

```
►► Display — CDS —————►◄
```

### Parameters

#### CDS

displays the status of all copies of the control data set, the journals (if active), some operational settings (e.g., the cleaning cartridge prefix, SMF record type, etc.), and the status of all HSC-defined hosts. Output is dependent upon LIBGEN-specified recovery techniques, and the number of hosts that are identified to the library from the LIBGEN.

## Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display CDS command and provides sample output:

### *Display Control Data Set Status*

```
D CDS
```

```
Sample Output
```

```
Database Information
```

```
SYS00001 = SPAQ.MERGE.NCS60.DBASEPRM  
  PRIVOL = ENG000      FLAGS(40) ACTIVE  
SYS00003 = SPAQ.MERGE.NCS60.DBASESBY  
  SECVOL = ENG000      FLAGS(40) ACTIVE  
SYS00002 = SPAQ.MERGE.NCS60.DBASESEC  
  SBYVOL = ENG000      FLAGS(00) INACTIVE
```

```
JOURNALING NOT ACTIVE FOR THIS SUB-SYSTEM
```

```
CDS LEVEL = 020100      DATE = 20030807  
CREATE     = SLS600      TIME = 12:36:29  
VSM CDS LEVEL = C
```

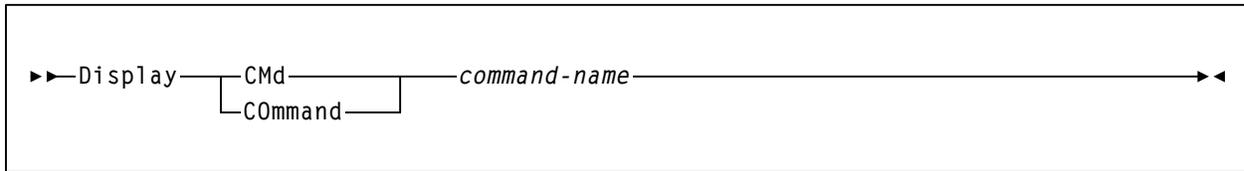
```
ENQNAME = STKALSQN      - SMFTYPE = 255  
CLEAN PREFIX = CLN      - LABTYPE = (00) SL  
RECOVERY = (40) STANDBY - DELETE DISP = (80,40) SCRATCH  
THIS HOST IS = ECCY     - CDS BLOCK COUNT = 3,000
```

```
HOSTID---LEVEL-FLAG---DESCRIPTION-----  
VM6      -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
EC31     -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
ECC32    -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
EC20     -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
ECC36    -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
ECCS     -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
EC38     -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
ECCB     -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
ECC18    -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
ECCL     -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
EC28     -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
EC41     -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
EC21     5.1.0 (F0) ACTIVE PRIMARY SECONDARY STANDBY  
ECCE     -.-.- (00) -INACTIVE-  
ECCY     5.1.0 (B0) ACTIVE PRIMARY STANDBY  
ECC42    5.1.0 (F0) ACTIVE PRIMARY SECONDARY STANDBY
```

```
Database Information End
```

## Display CMd

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### **CMd** or **COrmand**

displays syntax and usage information for a specified HSC operator command.

#### *command-name*

specifies the desired command name. The HSC checks only the first six characters; any characters after the first six are ignored.

You must specify the entire command name for commands containing six characters or less. Command names containing more than six characters may optionally be abbreviated to the first six characters.

## Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display CMd command and provides sample output.

### **Display Information About the HSC Mount Command**

```
DISPLAY CMD MOUNT
```

```
Sample Output
```

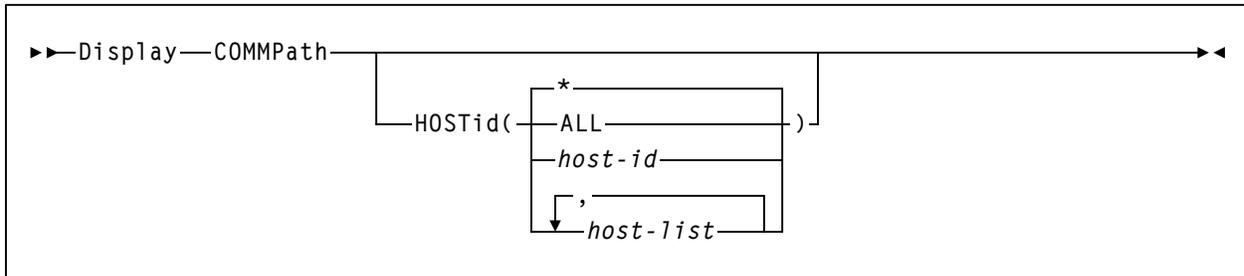
```
... COMMAND MOUNT HELP INFO: xxx
THE LIBRARY MOUNT COMMAND DIRECTS THE ROBOT TO MOUNT A
VOLUME ONTO A LIBRARY CONTROLLED TRANSPORT.
AUTOMATIC VOLUME RECOGNITION (AVR) RECOGNIZES THAT THE
VOLUME IS PREMOUNTED IF A JOB REQUESTS THAT VOLUME.
IN MVS, THE VOLUME IS NOT MARKED AS PERMANENTLY MOUNTED
(I.E. MVS READILY DISMOUNTS THE VOLUME). IN ORDER TO MAKE
THE VOLUME PERMANENTLY RESIDENT, THE OPERATOR MUST ISSUE THE
MVS MOUNT COMMAND.
IN VM, THE NATIVE TAPE LIBRARY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM MUST
PROCESS ITS OWN MOUNT COMMAND.
```

```
+-----+
| -MOUNT [VOLSER|SCRATCH|PRIVAT] DEVADDR      |
|           { HOST-ID } { READONLY }         |
|           { SUBPOOL(SUBPOOL-NAME) }       |
+-----+
```

```
MOUNT      INITIATES THE MOUNT COMMAND.
VOLSER     SPECIFIES THE VOLUME TO BE MOUNTED.
SCRATCH    SPECIFIES A SCRATCH VOLUME IS TO BE MOUNTED.
PRIVAT     SPECIFIES A SCRATCH VOLUME IS TO BE MOUNTED.
SUBPOOL    INDICATED THAT THE SCRATCH VOLUME IS TO BE TAKEN
           FROM A SCRATCH SUBPOOL.
SUBPOOL-NAME SPECIFIES THE SUBPOOL FROM WHICH THE SCRATCH
           VOLUME IS TO BE TAKEN.
DEVADDR    SPECIFIES THE DEVICE ADDRESS OF THE TRANSPORT ON
           WHICH TO MOUNT THE VOLUME.
HOST-ID    INDICATES THAT THE MOUNT COMMAND IS TO BE
           PERFORMED FOR THE DEVICE ADDRESS OF THE HOST
           SPECIFIED: IN THE CASE OF JES2, THE SMF SYSTEM
           IDENTIFIER; IN THE CASE OF JES3, THE MAIN
           PROCESSOR NAME.
READONLY   INDICATES THAT THE TAPE IS TO BE MOUNTED FOR
           READ-ONLY ACCESS.
```

## Display COMMPath

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### COMMPath

displays the current settings for HSC host-to-host communications. If the HOSTid parameter is not specified, a message displays a summary of the parameter settings for all hosts.

#### HOSTid

indicates that you want to obtain information about specific hosts.

#### ALL

displays the settings for all defined hosts. Depending on the number of hosts in your environment, the display can be extremely long.

#### *host-id* or *host-list*

identifies the host or hosts about which you want information. The HSC issues console messages that display the current settings for each specified host.

The elements in a *host-list* must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses. Ranges are not valid.

\*

displays the settings for the host on which you enter the command. This is the default if HOSTid is specified without a value.

## Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display COMMPath command and provides sample output.

### *Display Summary of Host-to-Host Communications*

```
D COMMP
Sample Output
... CURRENT HSC HOST-TO-HOST   XXX
  HOSTID   METHOD   METHLIM  VTAMNAME  LMUPATH
>>HSC1           CDS      AF1SLS0
  HSC2     CDS     CDS      AF2SLS0
  HSC3     CDS     CDS
```

In the sample output above, the “>>” indicates the host issuing the command.

METHOD is the method currently being used for host-to-host communications with the other host.

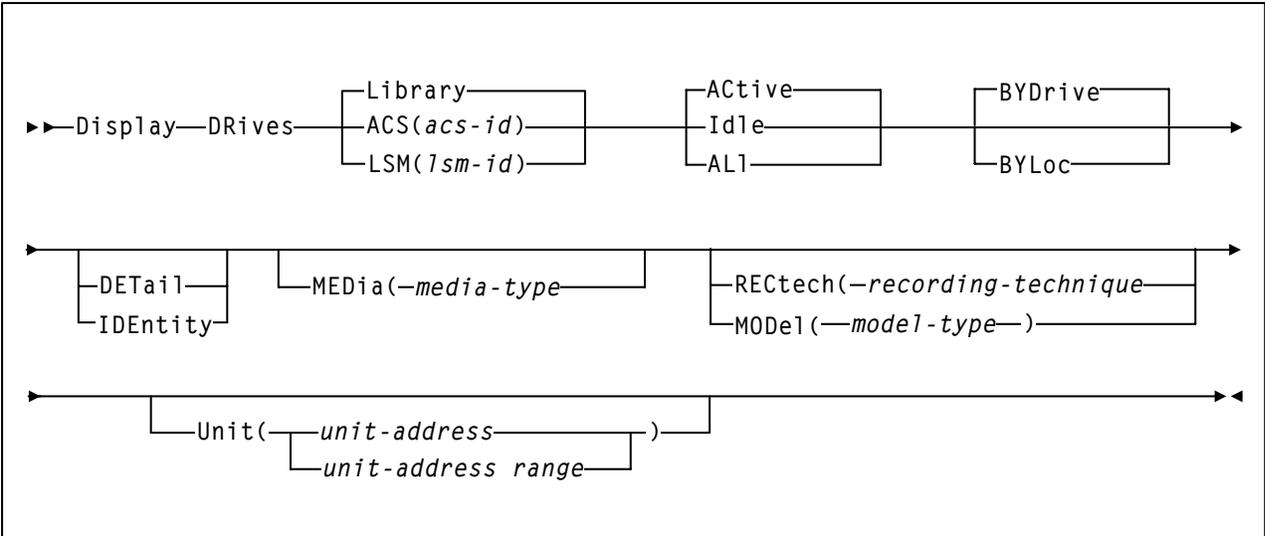
METHLIM is the upper limit used for host-to-host communications at that host. This is specified by the METHod parameter of the COMMPath command and control statement.

VTAMNAME is the VTAM name, if it is specified by the VTAMpath parameter of the COMMPath command and control statement.

LMUPATH is the ACS ID, if it is specified by the LMUpath parameter of the COMMPath command and control statement.

## Display DRives

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### DRives

displays current and queued mount activity for each transport address. This parameter derives its information from the HSC drive status information, which contains the actions requested of the LMU (mount, on drive, dismount).

#### Library

only library-controlled drives are processed. This is the default.

#### ACS

only drives in a specified ACS are processed.

#### *acs-id*

identifies the ACS for which the system is to display drive information.

#### LSM

only drives in a specified LSM are processed.

#### *lsm-id*

identifies the LSM for which the system is to display drive information.

#### Active

only active drives are processed. This is the default.

#### Idle

only idle drives are processed (includes drives that may be offline).

#### ALI

all drives are processed regardless of status.

**BYDrive**

displays the drives by host device address. This is the default.

**BYLoc**

displays the drives by library location.

**DETail**

optionally, displays the drive media types and recording techniques.

**IDEntity**

optionally, displays the World Wide Name transport identifier and the transport serial number.

**MEDia**

optionally, limits the display of drives only to those that support the specified type of media. The default is for all types of media.

**Notes:**

- If **MEDia** is not specified, the drive is selected without regard to media type.
- **The SL8500 library supports the T9840A, T9840B, T9840C, T9840D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- **The SL3000 library supports the T9840C, T9840D, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- LTO and SDLT transports are not supported in an MVS environment. These transports are recognized by the HSC but are accessible only to open systems clients using LibraryStation.

***media-type***

identifies the media type. Valid media types are:

**LONGItud**

indicates any Standard or ECART cartridge.

**Standard**

indicates a standard length, 3480 cartridge. It can be read on any longitudinal drives (4480, 4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Data can be written in 36-track mode on a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE transport but cannot be read on an 18-track (4480) drive. Synonyms for this type of cartridge include:

- CST
- MEDIA1
- STD
- 1
- 3480

**ECART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge. It can be used only on a 36-track drive (4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Synonyms include:

- E
- ECCST
- ETAPE
- Long
- MEDIA2
- 3490E

**ZCART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge that provides greater storage capacity than an ECART. It can be used only on a 9490EE drive. ZCART can be abbreviated as Z.

**DD3**

indicates any DD3A, DD3B, DD3C, or DD3D cartridge. HELical is a synonym for DD3.

**DD3A, DD3B, DD3C, DD3D**

indicates a helical cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (A, B, C, or D). DD3A, DD3B, DD3C, or DD3D can be abbreviated to A, B, C, or D, respectively.

Types of helical cartridges, along with their associated media capacities, are:

- A — 10GB
- B — 25GB
- C — 50GB
- D — cleaning cartridge.

Data capacity differences between DD3A, DD3B, and DD3C cartridges are related to the length of the tape in the cartridge, not to the recording density of the data.

**STK1**

indicates any T9840 cartridge.

**STK1R**

indicates a T9840 cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (R). STK1R can be abbreviated to R.

T9840 cartridge media capacities are 20GB (T9840A and T9840B), 40GB (T9840C), or 75GB (T9840D).

**STK1U**

indicates a T9840A, T9840B, or T9840C cleaning cartridge. STK1U can be abbreviated to U.

**STK1Y**

indicates a T9840D cleaning cartridge. STK1Y can be abbreviated to Y.

**STK2**

indicates any T9940 cartridge.

**STK2P, STK2W**

indicates a T9940 cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (P or W). STK2P or STK2W can be abbreviated to P or W, respectively.

Types of T9940 cartridges, along with their associated media capacities, are:

- STK2P — 60GB (T9940A) or 200GB (T9940B)
- STK2W — cleaning cartridge.

**LTO-10G**

indicates an LTO 10GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-35G**

indicates an LTO 35GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-50G**

indicates an LTO 50GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-100G**

indicates an LTO 100GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-200G**

indicates an LTO 200GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400G**

indicates an LTO 400GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400W**

indicates an LTO Generation 3 WORM cartridge.

**LTO-800G**

indicates an LTO 800GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-800W**

indicates an LTO Generation 4 WORM cartridge.

**LTO-CLN1**

indicates an LTO type 1 cleaning cartridge.

**LTO-CLN2**

indicates an LTO type 2 cleaning cartridge.

**LTO-CLNU**

indicates an LTO universal cleaning cartridge.

**SDLT**

indicates an SDLT 160GB cartridge.

**SDLT-2**

indicates an SDLT 125GB cartridge.

**SDLT-S1**

indicates an SDLT Generation S1 cartridge.

**SDLT-S2**

indicates an SDLT Generation S2 cartridge.

**SDLT-S3**

indicates an SDLT Generation S3 cartridge.

**SDLT-S4**

indicates an SDLT Generation S4 cartridge.

**SDLT-4**

indicates an SDLT Generation 4 cartridge.



**Note:** SDLT cleaning cartridges are defined by the cleaning prefix setting you specify in either the `SLILIBRY CLNPRFX` macro or the `SET CLNPRFX` utility. The cleaning prefix is the first three characters of the `VOLSER`. If you do not provide a cleaning prefix, it defaults to **CLN**.

**T1000T1 or T1**

indicates a full-capacity 500GB T10000A or 1TB T10000B cartridge. **T1000T1** can be abbreviated as **T1**.

**T1000TS or TS**

indicates a smaller-capacity 120GB T10000A or 240GB T10000B cartridge. **T1000TS** can be abbreviated as **TS**.

**T1000CT or CT**

indicates a T10000 cleaning cartridge. **T1000CT** can be abbreviated as **CT**.

## **RECtech**

optionally, limits the display of drives only to those that support the specified recording technique. The default is for all recording techniques. RECtech refers to the method used to record data tracks on the tape surface.

If RECtech is not specified, the drive is selected without regard to recording technique.



### **Notes:**

- RECtech and MODEL are mutually exclusive.
- **The SL8500 library supports the T9840A, T9840B, T9840C, T9840D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- **The SL3000 library supports the T9840C, T9840D, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**

### ***recording-technique***

displays drives for the specified recording technique. Valid recording techniques are:

#### **LONGitud**

indicates any device that uses longitudinal recording.

#### **18track**

indicates a 4480 transport.

#### **36track**

indicates a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE transport (any device that records in 36-track mode).

#### **36Atrack**

indicates a 4490 (Silverton) transport.

#### **36Btrack**

indicates a 9490 (Timberline) transport.

#### **36Ctrack**

indicates a 9490EE transport.

#### **HELical**

indicates a device using helical recording.

#### **DD3**

indicates a device using helical recording.

#### **STK1R**

indicates any 9840 transport.

**STK1R34**

indicates any 3490E-image 9840 transport.

**STK1R35**

indicates any 3590-image 9840 transport.

**STK1RA**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RA34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RA35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RB**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RB34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RB35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB4**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB5**

indicates a 3590E-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RC**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RC34**

indicates a 3490-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RC35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RD**

indicates any T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE**

indicates an encryption-enabled T9840D transport.

**STK1RDN**

indicates a non-encryption enabled T9840D transport.

**STK1RD34**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RD35**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE4**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE5**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T9840D transport.

**STK2P**

indicates any 9940 transport.

**STK2P34**

indicates any 3490E-image 9940 transport.

**STK2P35**

indicates any 3590-image 9940 transport.

**STK2PA**

indicates a T9940A transport.

**STK2PA34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940A transport.

**STK2PA35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940A transport.

**STK2PB**

indicates a T9940B transport.

**STK2PB34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940B transport.

**STK2PB35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940B transport.

**T10K**

indicates all T10000 transports.

**T10KN**

indicates all non-encrypted T10000 transports.

**T10KE**

indicates all encrypted T10000 transports.

**T1A**

indicates any T10000A transport.

**T1AN**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1A34**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000A transport.

**T1A35**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1AE**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1AE34**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000A transport.

**T1AE35**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1B**  
indicates any T10000B transport.

**T1BN**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1B34**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000B transport.

**T1B35**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE34**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE35**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000B transport.

**IGNORE**  
indicates a nonexistent physical transport.

## MODEL

optionally, specifies the model number of a tape transport. MODEL provides the same type of information as RECtech, but a user may find it more convenient to specify a transport model than a recording technique. If MODEL is not specified, drives are selected without regard to model number.



**Note:** MODEL and RECtech are mutually exclusive.

### *model-type*

identifies the model type. Valid model types are:

#### **4480**

indicates a 4480 (18-track) transport.

#### **4490**

indicates a 4490 (36-track Silverton) transport.

#### **9490**

indicates a 9490 (36-track Timberline) transport.

#### **9490EE**

indicates a 9490EE (36-track Timberline EE) transport.

#### **SD3**

indicates an SD-3 (RedWood) transport.

#### **9840**

indicates a 3490E-image 9840 transport.

#### **984035**

indicates a 3590-image 9840 transport.

#### **T9840B**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840B transport.

#### **T9840B35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840B transport.

#### **T9840C**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840C transport.

#### **T9840C35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840C transport.

#### **T9840D**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T9840D transport.

#### **T9840D35**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T9840D transport.

#### **T9840DE**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T9840D transport.

**T9840DE5**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T9840D transport.

**T9940A**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940A transport.

**T9940A35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940A transport.

**T9940B**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940B transport.

**T9940B35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940B transport.

**HP-LTO2**

indicates an HP LTO Generation 2 transport

**HP-LTO3**

indicates an HP LTO Generation 3 transport

**HP-LTO4**

indicates an HP LTO Generation 4 transport.

**IBM-LTO2**

indicates an IBM LTO Generation 2 transport

**IBM-LTO3**

indicates an IBM LTO Generation 3 transport

**IBM-LTO4**

indicates an IBM LTO Generation 4 transport.

**SDLT-600**

indicates a SuperDLT model 600 transport

**DLT-S4**

indicates a Quantum DLT-S4 transport.

**T1A34**

indicates a 3490E-image T10000A transport.

**T1A35**

indicates a 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1AE34**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000A transport.

**T1AE35**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1B34**

indicates a 3490E-image T10000B transport.

**T1B35**

indicates a 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE34**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE35**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000B transport.

**IGNORE**

indicates a nonexistent physical transport.

**Unit**

optionally, limits the display of drives to a unit address or a range of unit addresses.

*unit-address or unit-address range*

indicates a single unit address or a range of addresses.

**Examples**

The following examples illustrate the use of the Display DRives command and provide sample output.

***Display Mount Activity for Each Transport Address***

```
DISPLAY DRIVES
```

**Sample Output**

```
SLS2916I Drive 0C14 PG0045 Mounting
SLS2916I Drive 0C15 PG0046 Mounting
SLS2916I Drive 0C16 PG0043 Dismount
SLS2916I Drive 0C17 PG0044 On drive
SLS2916I Drive 0C12 105690 On drive
SLS2914I Display of drives complete.
```

## Display Detailed Drive Information by Host Device Address

D DR ALL DETAIL

### Sample output

DRIVE	LOCATION	VOLSER	STATUS	MODEL	MEDIA
0A60	01:00:10:07	VOL003	Dismount	4480	STANDARD
0A8C	00:00:01:00	VOL001	Mounting	4480	STANDARD
0A8D	00:00:01:01		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0A8E	00:00:01:02		Offline	4490	LONGITUDE
0A8F	00:00:01:03		Offline	4490	LONGITUDE
0AE2	00:00:02:03		Online	4490	LONGITUD
0AE3	00:00:04:00		Not rdy	4490	LONGITUD
0AE4	00:00:04:03		Online	4490	LONGITUD
0AE5	01:00:10:00		Not rdy	4490	LONGITUD
0AE6	00:00:04:01		Offline	4490	LONGITUD
0AE7	00:00:04:02		Offline	4490	LONGITUD
0B30	01:00:10:03		Online	9490	LONGITUD
0B31	01:00:10:04		Online	9490	LONGITUD
0B32	01:00:10:01		Not rdy	9490	LONGITUD
0B33	01:00:10:02		Not rdy	9490	LONGITUD
0B60	00:00:02:01	VOL002	On drive	9490	LONGITUD
0B62	01:00:10:05		Offline	9490EE	(1+E+Z)
0B63	01:00:10:06		Offline	9490EE	(1+E+Z)
0B70	00:00:02:02		Online	9490	LONGITUD
0B90	00:00:02:00		Offline	SD3	DD3

Display of drives complete

## ***Display Detailed Drive Information by World Wide Name and Serial Number***

D DR ALL IDENT

### **Sample output**

DRIVE	LOCATION	MODEL	WORLD WIDE NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
0112	00:00:10:06	IBM-LT03	50:01:04:F0:00:10:03:E7	1200019355
0114	00:00:10:28	T9840C	50:01:04:F0:00:10:04:35	500000020543
0140	00:00:12:03	T1B35	50:01:04:F0:00:10:03:90	572004000003
0141	00:00:12:13	T9840D	50:01:04:F0:00:10:03:BA	570001000288
0142	00:00:12:12	T9840C	50:01:04:F0:00:10:03:BD	500004000820
0143	00:00:12:15	T9840D	50:01:04:F0:00:10:03:B4	570001000291
0144	01:01:01:11	T9840D	50:01:04:F0:00:79:18:DA	570001000146
0145	01:00:01:07	T9840C	50:01:04:F0:00:79:19:0D	500000025713
0146	01:01:01:15	T9840C	50:01:04:F0:00:79:18:D7	500000028874
0147	01:01:01:03	T9840D	50:01:04:F0:00:79:18:E0	570001000307

Display of drives complete

## Display Detailed Drive Information by Location

```
D DR ALL DET BYLOC
```

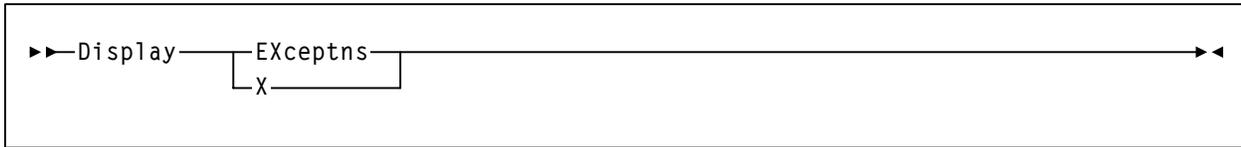
### Sample Output

DRIVE	LOCATION	VOLSER	STATUS	MODEL	MEDIA
0AA0	00:00:02:00		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0AA1	00:00:02:01		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0AA2	00:00:02:02		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0AA3	00:00:02:03		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0B0E	00:00:03:01		Not rdy	9490	LONGITUD
0B0F	00:00:03:03		Offline	9490	LONGITUD
0AE0	00:00:10:00	TIM021	On drive	4490	LONGITUD
0AE1	00:00:10:01		Offline	4490	LONGITUD
0AE2	00:00:10:02		Offline	4490	LONGITUD
0AE3	00:00:10:03		Offline	4490	LONGITUD
0080	00:01:01:00			9490	LONGITUD
EEEE	00:01:01:01	105772	On drive	9490	LONGITUD
0B02	00:01:01:02		Offline	9490	LONGITUD
0B03	00:01:01:03		Offline	9490	LONGITUD
0B04	00:01:03:00		Offline	9840	STK1
0B05	00:01:03:01		Offline	9840	STK1
0B06	00:01:03:02		Offline	984035	STK1
0B07	00:01:03:03		Offline	984035	STK1
0B08	00:01:03:04		Offline	T9940A	STK2
0B09	00:01:03:05		Online	T9940A	STK2
0B0A	00:01:03:06		Offline	T9940A35	STK2
0B0B	00:01:03:07		Online	T9940A35	STK2
2900	01:00:04:00		Offline	9490	LONGITUD
2901	01:00:04:01		Offline	9490	LONGITUD
2902	01:00:04:02		Offline	9490	LONGITUD
2903	01:00:04:03		Online	9490	LONGITUD
0A14	01:00:06:00		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0A15	01:00:06:01		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0A16	01:00:06:02		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0A17	01:00:06:03		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0A10	01:00:10:00		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0A11	01:00:10:01		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0A12	01:00:10:02		Offline	4480	STANDARD
0A13	01:00:10:03		Offline	4480	STANDARD

Display of drives complete

## Display Exceptions

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### **EXceptns** or **X**

displays the result of querying the LMU for the hardware status of the following:

- all LMUs
- all LSMs
- all CAPs
- all robotic hands
- all pass-thru ports (PTPs)
- all stations.



**Note:** For an SL3000 library, pass-thru ports (PTPs) are not supported.

Errors are reported in *AA:LL:CC* format, where *AA* is the hexadecimal value for the ACS (00-FF), *LL* is hexadecimal value for the LSM (00-17), and *CC* hexadecimal value for the CAP identifier (00 through 0B). The following error messages are possible:

#### **Message:**

*CAP Unallocated*

*CAP Not Installed*

*CAP Not Operational*

*CAP Door is Open*

*CAP Door is Unlocked*

*CAP is Reserved*

*CAP is Reserved by Partition nnn Host nn*

*Pass Thru Port is Inoperative*

*Robot Hand is Inoperative*

*Robot Hand needs Maintenance*

*LSM is Not Ready*

*LSM is Offline*

*LSM is Offline Pending*

*LSM is in Maint Mode*

*LSM Door is Open*

*LMU Compat 10 or less; not all functions supported:*

The LMU will not be able to respond correctly to some of the status queries until its microcode is updated. This condition will also cause SLS0662I LMU Response Error to be issued just before SLS4610I.

*Station nn has Inactive Connection:*

A hardware connection to the LMU is not usable. This may be normal for your configuration if the connection has never been made and is not necessary. The station number is in hex, so Station 0A is the tenth station, and Station 10 is really the sixteenth.

*Station nn Inoperative; Host not responding:*

The station number is in hex, so Station 0A is the tenth station, and Station 10 is really the sixteenth.

The following messages are summaries:

*No CAP problems were detected*

*No Pass Thru Port problems were detected*

*No Robot Hand problems were detected*

*No LSM problems were detected*

*No Station problems were detected*



**Note:** Message summaries only reflect that the LMU did not detect hardware errors. Something could be wrong with the software configuration, or with something that the LMU could not detect.

HSC processing continues and no user response is required.

## Display LKEYDEF

### Syntax

```
►—Display—LKEYDEF—◄
```

### Parameters

#### LKEYDEF

displays information about the definition data set, containing LKEYINFO statements, that is currently loaded. Definition data sets are loaded by issuing a LKEYDEF command and control statement. The display includes the name of the definition file (data set and member name if appropriate), the identifying string if the data set contains an OPTion TITLE statement, and the date and time the parameters were loaded.



**Note:** Refer to “Definition Data Set Control Statements” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for more information about definition data sets and OPTion TITLE, LKEYINFO, and LKEYDEF statements.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display LKEYDEF command.

#### ***Display Information About the LKEYDEF Data Set***

```
DISPLAY LKEYDEF
```

#### **Sample Output**

```
... LKEYDEF PARAMETER STATUS: xxx  
   LOADED FROM SYS5.HSC.DEFS(LKEYDEFS)  
   TITLE: LKEY TEST  
   LOADED ON 03/21/02 AT 10:17:21
```

## Display LMUPDEF

### Syntax

```
►► Display—LMUPDEF ◀◀
```

### Parameters

#### LMUPDEF

displays information about the definition data set, containing LMUPATH statements, that is currently loaded. Definition data sets are loaded by issuing a LMUPDEF command and control statement. The display includes the name of the definition file (data set and member name if appropriate), the identifying string if the data set contains an OPTion TITLE statement, and the date and time the parameters were loaded.



**Note:** Refer to “Definition Data Set Control Statements” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for more information about definition data sets and OPTion TITLE, LMUPATH, and LMUPDEF statements.

Users can find additional important TCP/IP-related information by referring to “Dynamic LMU Connection” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide*.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display LMUPDEF command.

#### ***Display Information About the LMUPDEF Data Set***

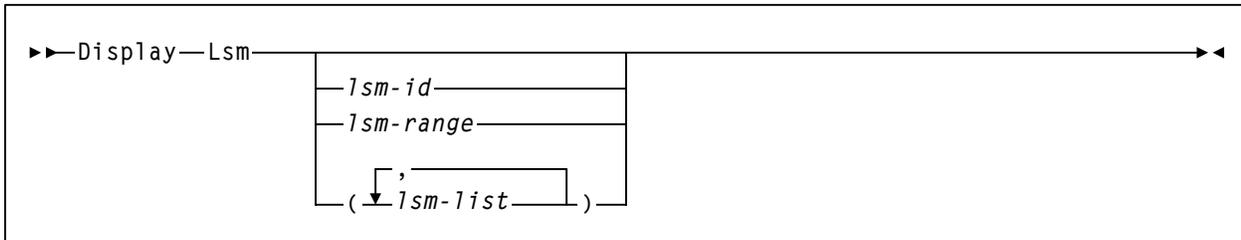
```
DISPLAY LMUPDEF
```

#### **Sample Output**

```
... LMUPDEF PARAMETER STATUS: xxx  
   LOADED FROM SPPW.PTF3490E.ITEST(HSCDATA3)  
   TITLE: TAP TEST  
   LOADED ON 02/21/01 AT 10:55:48
```

## Display LSM

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### Lsm

displays the status of the LSMs. LSM status includes:

- LSM type
- Online/offline status
- Ready/not ready
- Automatic/manual mode status
- Panels on an LSM frozen/unfrozen
- LSM unallocated or allocated to another partition
- If one or more LSMids are specified, the display includes the following:
  - Audits in progress (if any)
  - CAP status, priority, and owning host if CAP is not drained
  - Number of free storage cells and scratch volumes



#### Notes:

- The number of free cells in the LSM **does not** include free cells on frozen panels.
- The number of free cells is not accurate until the LSM(s) is varied online. Refer to “VARY Station Command” on page 236 for syntax information.
- Each frozen panel, showing the total number of cells and free cells on the panel.

***lsm-id* or *lsm-range* or *lsm-list***

identifies one or more LSMs for which the system is to display information. If you do not supply an *lsm-id*, a status summary is displayed for every LSM in the library.

Each *lsm-list* element can be either a single LSMid or an LSMid range. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

An *lsm-id* format is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

**Examples**

The following examples illustrate the use of the Display Lsm command and provides sample output.

***Display Summary of LSM Status***

“UNALLOCATED” for LSM 03 below means this LSM is unallocated to this host group and may be unassigned or allocated to another partition.

```
D LSM
Sample Output
... LSM STATUS: 650
LSM 00:00 :
TYPE = 8500
ONLINE - READY      - AUTOMATIC
LSM 00:01 :
TYPE = 8500
ONLINE - READY      - AUTOMATIC
LSM 00:02 :
TYPE = 8500
ONLINE - READY      - AUTOMATIC All Panels Frozen
LSM 00:03 :
TYPE = 8500
ONLINE - READY      - AUTOMATIC UNALLOCATED
```

**Display Status Information About LSMs 00:00 Through 00:01**

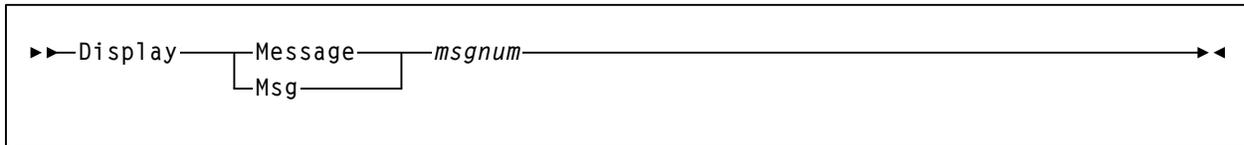
```
D LSM 00:00-00:01

Sample Output

... LSM STATUS: 130
LSM 00:00 :
TYPE = 4410
ONLINE - READY - AUTOMATIC
CAP ID    SIZE    HOSTID    PRIORITY  MODE    STATUS
-----
00:00:00  21-CELL  NONE     00        IDLE    ONLINE
SCRATCH VOLUMES AVAILABLE... 0.
FREE CELLS AVAILABLE..... 436.
LSM 00:01 :
TYPE = 4410
ONLINE - READY - AUTOMATIC
CAP ID    SIZE    HOSTID    PRIORITY  MODE    STATUS
-----
00:01:00  40-CELL  HSC1     09        ENTERING ACTIVE
00:01:01  40-CELL  NONE     08        IDLE    ONLINE
00:01:02  PCAP     NONE     00        IDLE    ONLINE
SCRATCH VOLUMES AVAILABLE... 80.
FREE CELLS AVAILABLE..... 371.
PANEL 06 FROZEN - 357 TOTAL CELLS, 287 FROZEN CELLS.
```

## Display Message

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### Message or Msg

displays detailed information about a specified message.

#### *msgnum*

identifies the four-digit numerical portion of the message number. Leading zeros are not required. For example, in the message number SLS1661I, 1661 is the *msgnum*. Message number SLS0005I can be shortened to 5.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display Message command and provides sample output.

#### ***Display Help Information for Message SLS0202I***

```
D MSG 202
```

```
Sample Output
```

```
... MESSAGE ID 202 HELP INFO: xxx
```

```
... MESSAGE ID 202 HELP INFO:
```

```
SLS0202I VOLUME VVVVVV IN CELL AA:LL:PP:RR:CC IS A DUPLICATE WITH  
VOLUME IN CELL AA:LL:PP:RR:CC  
EXPLANATION: A SLUADMIN AUDIT UTILITY FUNCTION ENCOUNTERED  
MORE THAN ONE LIBRARY CARTRIDGE WITH THE SPECIFIED VOLUME  
SERIAL NUMBER (VVVVVV). THE FIRST SPECIFIED LOCATION  
(AA:LL:PP:RR:CC) REFERS TO THE DUPLICATE, WHILE THE SECOND  
REFERS TO THE ORIGINAL. IF THE AUDIT WAS 'ACTIVE'  
(APPLY(YES) SPECIFIED OR DEFAULTED ON THE CONTROL  
STATEMENT), THE VOLUME WAS EJECTED.  
SYSTEM ACTION: THE DUPLICATE VOLUME IS PHYSICALLY  
EJECTED FROM THE LIBRARY IF THE AUDIT IS ACTIVE.  
USER RESPONSE: DEPENDING ON WHICH ONE IS SUPPOSED TO BE  
IN THE LIBRARY, THE VOLUME LEFT IN THE LIBRARY MAY HAVE TO  
BE EJECTED AND THE OTHER ONE REENTERED.
```

## Display MNTD

### Syntax

```
►—Display—MNTD—◄
```

### Parameters

#### MNTD

displays the current setting of all HSC mount options set by the MNTD command.

### Example

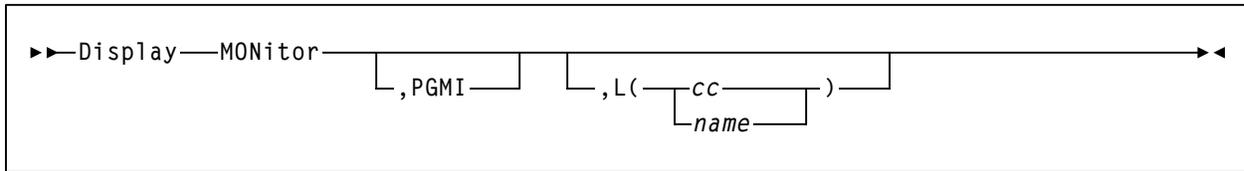
The following example illustrates the use of the Display MNTD command and provides sample output.

#### *Display the Current Mount Options*

```
D MNTD
Sample Output
... HSC MOUNT OPTIONS: xxx
... HSC MOUNT OPTIONS:
    MAXCLEAN - 100
    AUTOCLN  - OFF
    DISMOUNT - AUTO
    SCRATCH  - MANUAL
    MMOUNT   - DELETE
    SCRDISM  - CURRENT
    PASSTHRU - 1
    ACS(00)  - FLOAT ONEJCTAUTO ON
    ACS(01)  - FLOAT OFFEJCTAUTO MSG
    ACS(02)  - FLOAT ONEJCTAUTO OFF
```

## Display MONitor

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### **MONitor**

displays a list of the monitoring consoles.

#### **PGMI**

displays the status of the monitoring of move requests received by the programmatic interface.

#### **L**

displays the type of requests being monitored by the specified console. Console IDs and console names must be two to eight characters long.

#### *cc*

specifies the console ID.

#### *name*

specifies the console name (valid only for MVS 5.2.2 or higher).

If both **PGMI** and **L** are omitted, the status of all monitoring is displayed.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display MONitor command and provides sample output.

#### ***Display the Status of Monitoring***

```
D MONITOR
```

#### **Sample Output**

```
... MONITOR STATUS: xxx  
NONE
```

## Display OPTion

### Syntax

```
▶—Display—OPTion—▶
```

### Parameters

#### OPTion

displays the current setting of the general HSC options set by the OPTion command.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display OPTion command and provides sample output.

#### *Display the Current HSC General Options*

```
D OPT
Sample Output
... HSC GENERAL OPTIONS: xxx
    Viewtime 10
    EJlimit 100
    Output Upper
    ENTdup Manual
    Repath Yes
    Dialog Off
    DISCmsg ACS(00) Show
    Warnmsg 5
```

## Display Requests

The Display Requests command is used to display all pending LMU requests.

The output from this command is dependent on the LMU level; therefore, information about the operator command, utility, or mount driving the request is not available. If this information is required, refer to “Display Status” on page 123.

### Syntax

```
►► Display — Requests —————►◀◀
```

### Parameters

#### Requests

displays the status of queued LMU requests. A one-line summary is displayed for each request in the queue (e.g., ACTIVE, TEMPOUT, WAITING).

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display Requests command and provides sample output.

#### *Display the Status of Queued LMU Requests*

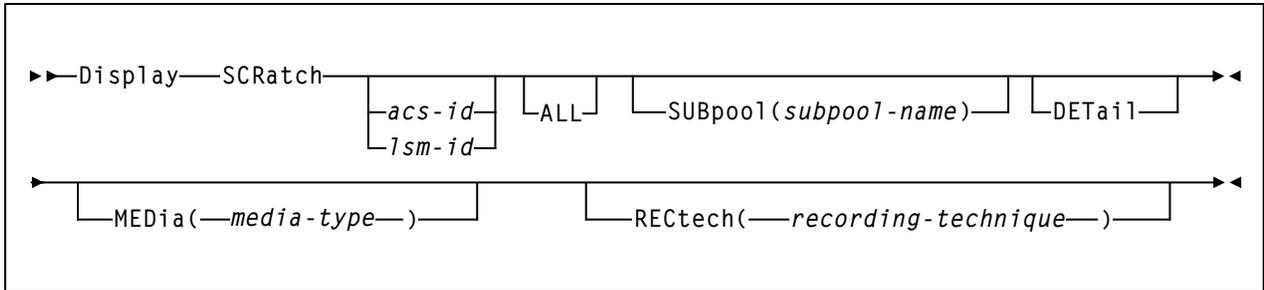
```
D REQUESTS
```

#### Sample Output

```
SLS2656I ACS 00: CATALOG 186 ACTIVE 01 01 10  
SLS2656I ACS 00: MOVE 190 ACTIVE 01 00 10  
SLS2656I ACS 00: MOUNT 191 ACTIVE 01 01 10  
SLS2656I ACS 00: DISMOUNT 193 Active 01 01 10  
SLS2656I ACS 00: MOUNT 194 Active 00 00 10  
SLS2656I ACS 00: MOUNT 195 ACTIVE 00 00 10  
SLS2654I ACS 01 has no requests queued
```

## Display SCRatch

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### SCRatch

displays scratch count information based on the subpool in which scratch volumes are located. If **MEDia** and **RECtech** are not specified, the accumulated total of all scratch media types is displayed.



#### Notes:

- Only subpools containing scratch volumes are displayed, unless the **ALL** parameter is specified.
- If a scratch cartridge is a member of more than one subpool, subpool counts may be higher than the actual scratch count for an ACS or LSM.
- Non-subpool totals containing zero values are not displayed.

#### *acs-id*

identifies the ACS for which the system is to display scratch information. If you specify *acs-id* without an LSM number, the system displays scratch values for the entire ACS.

#### *lsm-id*

identifies the LSM for which the system is to display scratch information.

#### **ALL**

optionally, specifies that all scratch subpool totals, including 0 scratch count values, are to be displayed.

#### **SUBpool**

optionally, identifies the subpool for which the system is to display scratch information.

#### *subpool-name*

is the name of the subpool.



**Note:** Scratch subpool names are specified with the SCRPOOL control statement. Refer to “HSC Control Statements” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for more information.

### **DETail**

optionally, displays scratch details. Scratch counts are broken down by media type.

### **MEDia**

optionally, shows scratch counts for the specified type of media. The default is for all types of media.



### **Notes:**

- If **MEDia** is not specified, the next scratch cartridge is selected without regard to media type.
- **The SL8500 library supports the T9840A, T9840B, T9840C, T9840D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- **The SL3000 library supports the T9840C, T9840D, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- LTO and SDLT transports are not supported in an MVS environment. These transports are recognized by the HSC but are accessible only to open systems clients using LibraryStation.

### ***media-type***

identifies the media type. Valid media types are:

#### **LONGItud**

indicates any Standard or ECART cartridge.

#### **Standard**

indicates a standard length, 3480 cartridge. It can be read on any longitudinal drives (4480, 4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Data can be written in 36-track mode on a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE transport but cannot be read on an 18-track (4480) drive. Synonyms for this type of cartridge include:

- CST
- MEDIA1
- STD
- 1
- 3480

#### **ECART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge. It can be used only on a 36-track drive (4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Synonyms include:

- E
- ECCST
- ETAPE

- Long
- MEDIA2
- 3490E

### **ZCART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge that provides greater storage capacity than an ECART. It can be used only on a 9490EE drive.

ZCART can be abbreviated as Z.

### **DD3**

indicates any DD3A, DD3B, or DD3C (HELical) cartridge. HELical is a synonym for DD3.

### **DD3A, DD3B, DD3C**

indicates a helical cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (A, B, or C). DD3A, DD3B, or DD3C can be abbreviated to A, B, or C, respectively.

Types of helical cartridges, along with their associated media capacities, are:

- A — 10GB
- B — 25GB
- C — 50GB.

Data capacity differences between DD3A, DD3B, and DD3C cartridges are related to the length of the tape in the cartridge, not to the recording density of the data.

### **STK1**

indicates any T9840 cartridge.

### **STK1R**

indicates a T9840 cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (R). STK1R can be abbreviated to R.

T9840 cartridge media capacities are 20GB (T9840A and T9840B), 40GB (T9840C), or 75GB (9840D).

### **STK2**

indicates any T9940 cartridge.

### **STK2P**

indicates a T9940 data cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (P). STK2P can be abbreviated to P.

T9940 cartridge media capacities are 60GB (T9940A) or 200GB (T9940B).

### **LTO-10G**

indicates an LTO 10GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-35G**

indicates an LTO 35GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-50G**

indicates an LTO 50GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-100G**

indicates an LTO 100GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-200G**

indicates an LTO 200GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400G**

indicates an LTO 400GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400W**

indicates an LTO Generation 3 WORM cartridge.

**LTO-800G**

indicates an LTO 800GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-800W**

indicates an LTO Generation 4 WORM cartridge.

**SDLT**

indicates an SDLT 160GB cartridge.

**SDLT-2**

indicates an SDLT 125GB cartridge.

**SDLT-S1**

indicates an SDLT Generation S1 cartridge.

**SDLT-S2**

indicates an SDLT Generation S2 cartridge.

**SDLT-S3**

indicates an SDLT Generation S3 cartridge.

**SDLT-S4**

indicates an SDLT Generation S4 cartridge.

**SDLT-4**

indicates an SDLT Generation 4 cartridge.

**T10000T1 or T1**

indicates a full-capacity 500GB T10000A or 1TB T10000B cartridge.  
**T10000T1** can be abbreviated as **T1**.

**T10000TS or TS**

indicates a smaller-capacity 120GB T10000A or 240GB T10000B cartridge. **T10000TS** can be abbreviated as **TS**.

## **RECtech**

optionally, shows scratch counts for the specified recording technique. The default is for all recording techniques. RECtech refers to the method used to record data tracks on the tape surface.



### **Notes:**

- If **RECtech** is not specified, the next scratch cartridge is selected depending on the MEDIA type that has been specified.
- **The SL8500 library supports the T9840A, T9840B, T9840C, T9840D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- **The SL3000 library supports the T9840C, T9840D, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**

### *recording-technique*

identifies the recording technique. Valid recording techniques are:

#### **LONGitud**

indicates any device that uses longitudinal recording.

#### **18track**

indicates a 4480 transport.

#### **36track**

indicates a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE transport (any device that records in 36-track mode).

#### **36Atrack**

indicates a 4490 (Silverton) transport.

#### **36Btrack**

indicates a 9490 (Timberline) transport.

#### **36Ctrack**

indicates a 9490EE transport.

#### **HELical**

indicates a device using helical recording.

#### **DD3**

indicates a device using helical recording.

#### **STK1R**

indicates any 9840 transport.

#### **STK1R34**

indicates any 3490E-image 9840 transport.

**STK1R35**

indicates any 3590-image 9840 transport.

**STK1RA**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RA34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RA35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RB**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RB34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RB35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB4**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB5**

indicates a 3590E-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RC**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RC34**

indicates a 3490-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RC35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RD**

indicates any T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE**

indicates an encryption-enabled T9840D transport.

**STK1RDN**

indicates a non-encryption enabled T9840D transport.

**STK1RD34**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RD35**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE4**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE5**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T9840D transport.

**STK2P**

indicates any 9940 transport.

**STK2P34**

indicates any 3490E-image 9940 transport.

**STK2P35**

indicates any 3590-image 9940 transport.

**STK2PA**

indicates a T9940A transport.

**STK2PA34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940A transport.

**STK2PA35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940A transport.

**STK2PB**

indicates a T9940B transport.

**STK2PB34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940B transport.

**STK2PB35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940B transport.

**T10K**

indicates all T10000 transports.

**T10KN**

indicates all non-encrypted T10000 transports.

**T10KE**

indicates all encrypted T10000 transports.

**T1A**

indicates any T10000A transport.

**T1AN**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000A transport.

- T1A34**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000A transport.
- T1A35**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000A transport.
- T1AE**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000A transport.
- T1AE34**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000A transport.
- T1AE35**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000A transport.
- T1B**  
indicates any T10000B transport.
- T1BN**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B transport.
- T1B34**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000B transport.
- T1B35**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000B transport.
- T1BE**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B transport.
- T1BE34**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000B transport.
- T1BE35**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000B transport.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the Display SCRatch command and provide sample output.

### *Display Scratch Counts for All LSMs in All ACSs*

```
DISPLAY SCRATCH
```

**Sample Output**

... Scratch Summary

ACS/LSM	Subpool Name	Media	Rectech	Count
LSM 00:00	MIXED	Total		11
LSM 00:00	S9940	Total		4
LSM 00:00	Non-Subpool	Total		26
LSM 00:00	Total			41
LSM 00:01	MIXED	Total		2
LSM 00:01	S9940	Total		1
LSM 00:01	Non-Subpool	Total		30
LSM 00:01	Total			33
ACS 00	MIXED	Total		13
ACS 00	S9940	Total		5
ACS 00	Non-Subpool	Total		56
ACS 00	Total			74

## Display Detailed Scratch Information

```
DISPLAY SCRATCH DETAIL

Sample Output

... Scratch Summary
```

ACS/LSM	Subpool Name	Media	Rectech	Count
LSM 00:00	MIXED	ECART	36TRACK	11
LSM 00:00	MIXED	Total		11
LSM 00:00	S9940	STK2P	STK2P35	4
LSM 00:00	S9940	Total		4
LSM 00:00	Non-Subpool	Total		26
LSM 00:00	Total			41
LSM 00:01	MIXED	ECART	36TRACK	2
LSM 00:01	MIXED	Total		2
LSM 00:01	S9940	STK20	STK2P35	1
LSM 00:01	S9940	Total		1
LSM 00:01	Non-Subpool	Total		30
LSM 00:01	Total			33
ACS 00	MIXED	ECART	36TRACK	13
ACS 00	MIXED	Total		13
ACS 00	S9940	STK2P	STK2P35	5
ACS 00	S9940	Total		5
ACS 00	Non-Subpool	Total		56
ACS 00	Total			74



**Note:** The “Non-Subpool Total” is derived by subtracting the total number of scratch tapes in the LSM from the total number of subpool scratch tapes in the LSM. If subpools are defined that include the same tape in more than one subpool, the non-subpool total will be incorrect (i.e., the tape will be counted more than once).

### Display Scratch Counts for a Single ACS

```

D SCR 0 DET

Sample Output

... Scratch Summary

```

ACS/LSM	Subpool Name	Media	Rectech	Count
LSM 00:00	Subpool SP001	ECART	36TRACK	3
LSM 00:00	Subpool SP001	Total		3
LSM 00:00	Subpool SP002	DD3B	DD3	4
LSM 00:00	Subpool SP002	DD3C	DD3	21
LSM 00:00	Subpool SP002	Total		25
LSM 00:00	Non-Subpool	Total		2
LSM 00:00	Total			30
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	18TRACK	49
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	36BTRACK	11
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	36ATRACK	6
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	36TRACK	50
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	ECART	36TRACK	22
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	Total		138
LSM 00:01	Non-Subpool	Total		4
LSM 00:01	Total			142
ACS 00	Subpool SP001	Total		141
ACS 00	Subpool SP002	Total		25
ACS 00	Non-Subpool	Total		6
ACS 00	Total			172

### Display Scratch Counts for a Single LSM

```

D SCR 0 DET

Sample Output

... Scratch Summary

```

ACS/LSM	Subpool Name	Media	Rectech	Count
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	18TRACK	49
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	36BTRACK	11
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	36ATRACK	6
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	36TRACK	50
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	ECART	36TRACK	22
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	Total		138
LSM 00:01	Non-Subpool	Total		4
LSM 00:01	Total			142

### ***Display Scratch Counts for a Subpool***

```
D SCR SUBPOOL(SP001)

Sample Output

... Scratch Summary
```

ACS/LSM	Subpool Name	Media	Rectech	Count
LSM 00:00	Subpool SP001	Total		3
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	Total		138
ACS 00	Subpool SP001	Total		141
ACS 00	Total			172

### ***Display Scratch Counts for Subpools Containing Longitud Tapes***

```
D SCR MEDIA(LONGITUD)

Sample Output

... Scratch Summary
```

ACS/LSM	Subpool Name	Media	Rectech	Count
LSM 00:00	Subpool SP001	ECART	36TRACK	3
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	18TRACK	49
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	36BTRACK	11
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	36ATRACK	6
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	STANDARD	36TRACK	50
LSM 00:01	Subpool SP001	ECART	36TRACK	22
ACS 00	Subpool SP001	Total		141
ACS 00	Total			172

## Display Scratch Counts for DD3B Helical Tapes

```
D SCR MED(DD3B)

Sample Output

... Scratch Summary

ACS/LSM      Subpool Name      Media      Rectech      Count
=====
  LSM 00:00      DD3B      DD3          4
  ACS 00      DD3B      DD3          4
-----
  LSM 01:00      DD3B      DD3         98
  ACS 01      DD3B      DD3         98
=====
```



**Note:** Even though the command syntax for the example shown above is similar to the previous example, this example shows output in a non-subpooling environment. In this case, scratch counts are displayed for each LSM and ACS.

## Display SCRDEF

### Syntax

```
►► Display — SCRDEF —————►◄
```

### Parameters

#### SCRDEF

displays information about the definition data set, containing SCRPOOL statements, that is currently loaded. Definition data sets are loaded by issuing a SCRDEF command and control statement. The display includes the name of the definition file (data set and member name if appropriate), the identifying string if the data set contains an OPTION TITLE statement, and the date and time the parameters were loaded.



**Note:** Refer to “Definition Data Set Control Statements” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for more information about definition data sets and OPTION TITLE, SCRPOOL, and SCRDEF statements.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display SCRDEF command.

#### ***Display Information About the SCRDEF Data Set***

```
DISPLAY SCRDEF
```

#### **Sample Output**

```
... SCRDEF PARAMETER STATUS: xxx  
   LOADED FROM SPPW.PTF4100E.ITEST(HSCDATA1)  
   TITLE: SCR TEST  
   LOADED ON 04/25/01 AT 16:17:18
```

## Display SRVlev

### Syntax

```
►► Display — SRVlev —————▶◀◀
```

### Parameters

#### **SRVlev**

displays the current service level of the HSC on the system from which you issue the command.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display SRVlev command and provides sample output.

#### ***Display the HSC Service Level***

```
D SRVLEV
```

#### **Sample Output**

```
... HSC SERVICE LEVEL FULL ACTIVE
```

## Display Status

### Syntax

►► Display — Status ————— ◀◀

### Parameters

#### Status

displays the status of pending requests currently active on the host issuing the command. The output display provides the following information to help you resolve problems during regular execution and termination of the HSC:

- requests: Dismount, Eject, Enter, Modify, Mount, Move, Vary, View
- information about the request, including:
  - the requester (such as Operator, PGMI, Clean, job name of utility)
  - physical element (such as CAPid, Drive, LSM, Station)
  - associated element for the request (such as CAPid belonging to an audit)
  - ready status of each queue, and whether a given queue is being purged or terminated.



#### Notes:

- Use the Display DRives command for information on current and pending mount activity, and Display Requests for information on queued LSM requests. Refer to “Display DRives” on page 81 and “Display Requests” on page 107 for explanations of command syntax and parameters.
- When an audit is running that is a full panel or more in scope, the current cell location points to the first cell in the panel being audited.

## Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display Status command and provides sample output.

### *Display Status of Pending Requests on This Host*

```
D STATUS

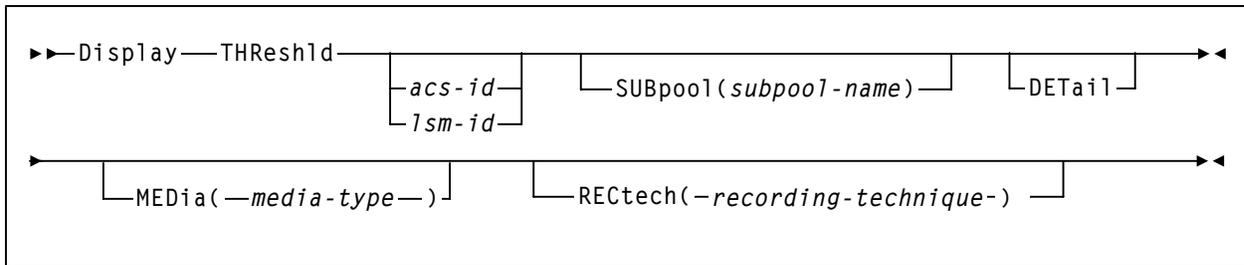
... Display Status command
Requestor      Action      Element      Volser      Associated
SPSRTEST      Audit      LSM          00:00      EVT001      CAPid 00:00:01
SPSRST2       Dismount   Drive        0A38       EVT033      -
SPSREJECT     Eject      CAPID        01:01:00   EVT222      -
Operator      Enter      CAPID        01:00:00   -           -
Operator      Modify     LSM          01:00      -           -
SPSRST1       Mount     Drive        0A30       EVT022      -
Clean         Mount     Drive        0A30       CLN011      -
Internal      Mount     Drive        0A31       EVT123      -
SPSRSCRR     Scrdist   ACS          00         EVT111      -
Operator      Vary      Station      0CC       -           -

CAP queue is READY
LMU queue is PURGING
Utility queue is READY
Mount queue is READY

Total pending mounts:  3
Total pending dismounts:  1
Total pending LMU requests:  10
Total utilities active:  2
End of Status display
```

## Display THReshd

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### THReshd

displays information about the threshold values you have set using the HSC Warn command. If **MEDia** and **RECTech** are not specified, the threshold value for the accumulated total of scratch tapes is displayed.



#### Notes:

- Display THReshd does not report non-subpool scratch counts. Because of this, scratch counts may not add up to scratch count totals shown for an ACS or LSM.
- If a scratch cartridge is a member of more than one subpool, subpool counts may be higher than the actual scratch count for an ACS or LSM.

#### *acs-id*

identifies the ACS for which the system is to display threshold information. If you specify *acs-id* without an LSM number, the system displays threshold values for the entire ACS.

#### *lsm-id*

identifies the LSM for which the system is to display threshold information.

#### SUBpool

indicates that the system is to display threshold information for a specific subpool.

#### *subpool-name*

is the name of the subpool.



**Note:** Scratch subpool names are specified with the SCRPOOL control statement. Refer to “Scratch Subpool Management” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for information on the SCRPOOL control statement.

#### DETail

optionally, displays scratch threshold details. Threshold values are broken out by media types.

## **MEDia**

optionally, shows threshold values for the specified type of media. The default is for all types of media.



### **Notes:**

- If **MEDia** is not specified, threshold values are displayed without regard to media type.
- **The SL8500 library supports the T9840A, T9840B, T9840C, T9840D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- **The SL3000 library supports the T9840C, T9840D, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- LTO and SDLT transports are not supported in an MVS environment. These transports are recognized by the HSC but are accessible only to open systems clients using LibraryStation.

### ***media-type***

identifies the media type. Valid media types are:

#### **LONGitud**

indicates any Standard or ECART cartridge.

#### **Standard**

indicates a standard length, 3480 cartridge. It can be read on any longitudinal drives (4480, 4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Data can be written in 36-track mode on a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE transport but cannot be read on an 18-track (4480) drive. Synonyms for this type of cartridge include:

- CST
- MEDIA1
- STD
- 1
- 3480

#### **ECART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge. It can be used only on a 36-track drive (4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Synonyms include:

- E
- ECCST
- ETAPE
- Long
- MEDIA2
- 3490E

**ZCART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge that provides greater storage capacity than an ECART. It can be used only on a 9490EE drive.

ZCART can be abbreviated as Z.

**DD3**

indicates any DD3A, DD3B, or DD3C (HELical) cartridge. HELical is a synonym for DD3.

**DD3A, DD3B, DD3C**

indicates a helical cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (A, B, or C). DD3A, DD3B, or DD3C can be abbreviated to A, B, or C, respectively.

Types of helical cartridges, along with their associated media capacities, are:

- A — 10GB
- B — 25GB
- C — 50GB.

Data capacity differences between DD3A, DD3B, and DD3C cartridges are related to the length of the tape in the cartridge, not to the recording density of the data.

**STK1**

indicates any T9840 cartridge.

**STK1R**

indicates a T9840 cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (R). STK1R can be abbreviated to R.

T9840 cartridge media capacities are 20GB (T9840A and T9840B) or 40GB (T9840C), 75GB (T9840D).

**STK2**

indicates any T9940 cartridge.

**STK2P**

indicates a T9940 data cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (P). STK2P can be abbreviated to P.

T9940 cartridge media capacities are 60GB (T9940A) or 200GB (T9940B).

**LTO-10G**

indicates an LTO 10GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-35G**

indicates an LTO 35GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-50G**

indicates an LTO 50GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-100G**

indicates an LTO 100GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-200G**

indicates an LTO 200GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400G**

indicates an LTO 400GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400W**

indicates an LTO Generation 3 WORM cartridge.

**LTO-800G**

indicates an LTO 800GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-800W**

indicates an LTO Generation 4 WORM cartridge.

**SDLT**

indicates an SDLT 160GB cartridge.

**SDLT-2**

indicates an SDLT 125GB cartridge.

**SDLT-S1**

indicates an SDLT Generation S1 cartridge.

**SDLT-S2**

indicates an SDLT Generation S2 cartridge.

**SDLT-S3**

indicates an SDLT Generation S3 cartridge.

**SDLT-S4**

indicates an SDLT Generation S4 cartridge.

**SDLT-4**

indicates an SDLT Generation 4 cartridge.

**T10000T1 or T1**

indicates a full-capacity 500GB T10000A or 1TB T10000B cartridge. T10000T1 can be abbreviated as **T1**.

**T10000TS or TS**

indicates a smaller-capacity 120GB T10000A or 120GB T10000B cartridge. T10000TS can be abbreviated as **TS**.

## **RECtech**

optionally, shows threshold values for the specified recording technique. The default is for all recording techniques. RECtech refers to the method used to record data tracks on the tape surface.



### **Notes:**

- If **RECtech** is not specified, threshold values are determined by the MEDIA type that has been specified.
- **The SL8500 library supports the T9840A, T9840B, T9840C, T9840D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- **The SL3000 library supports the T9840C, T9840D, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**

### *recording-technique*

identifies the recording technique. Valid recording techniques are:

#### **LONGItud**

indicates any device that uses longitudinal recording.

#### **18track**

indicates a 4480 transport.

#### **36track**

indicates a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE transport (any device that records in 36-track mode).

#### **36Atrack**

indicates a 4490 (Silverton) transport.

#### **36Btrack**

indicates a 9490 (Timberline) transport.

#### **36Ctrack**

indicates a 9490EE transport.

#### **HELical**

indicates a device using helical recording.

#### **DD3**

indicates a device using helical recording.

#### **STK1R**

indicates any 9840 transport.

#### **STK1R34**

indicates any 3490E-image 9840 transport.

**STK1R35**

indicates any 3590-image 9840 transport.

**STK1RA**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RA34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RA35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RB**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RB34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RB35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB4**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB5**

indicates a 3590E-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RC**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RC34**

indicates a 3490-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RC35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RD**

indicates any T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE**

indicates an encryption-enabled T9840D transport.

**STK1RDN**

indicates a non-encryption enabled T9840D transport.

**STK1RD34**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RD35**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE4**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE5**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T9840D transport.

**STK2P**

indicates any 9940 transport.

**STK2P34**

indicates any 3490E-image 9940 transport.

**STK2P35**

indicates any 3590-image 9940 transport.

**STK2PA**

indicates a T9940A transport.

**STK2PA34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940A transport.

**STK2PA35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940A transport.

**STK2PB**

indicates a T9940B transport.

**STK2PB34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940B transport.

**STK2PB35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940B transport.

**T10K**

indicates all T10000 transports.

**T10KN**

indicates all non-encrypted T10000 transports.

**T10KE**

indicates all encrypted T10000 transports.

**T1A**

indicates any T10000A transport.

**T1AN**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1A34**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000A transport.

**T1A35**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1AE**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1AE34**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000A transport.

**T1AE35**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1B**

indicates any T10000B transport.

**T1BN**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1B34**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000B transport.

**T1B35**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE34**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE35**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000B transport.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the Display THReshld command and provides sample output.

### *Display Threshold Information*

```
DISPLAY THRESHLD
```

**Sample Output**

...Threshold Value Summary:

ACS/LSM	Subpool Name	Media	Rectech	Count	Thresh
LSM 00:00	MIXED	Total		11	0
LSM 00:00	S9940	Total		4	0
LSM 00:00	Total			41	20
LSM 00:01	MIXED	Total		2	0
LSM 00:01	S9940	Total		1	0
LSM 00:01	Total			33	35
ACS 00	MIXED	Total		13	0
ACS 00	S9940	Total		5	0
ACS 00	Total			74	0

## Display Detailed Threshold Information

D THR DETAIL

### Sample Output

...Threshold Value Summary:

ACS/LSM	Subpool Name	Media	Rectech	Count	Thresh
LSM 00:00	Subpool P00L1	STANDARD	18TRACK	8	5
LSM 00:00	Subpool P00L1	Total		9	5
LSM 00:00	Subpool P00L2	DD3C	DD3	9	0
LSM 00:00	Subpool P00L2	Total		9	0
LSM 00:00		STANDARD	18TRACK	89	0
LSM 00:00		ECART	36BTRACK	32	0
LSM 00:00		ECART	36ATRACK	19	0
LSM 00:00		DD3B	DD3	1	0
LSM 00:00		DD3C	DD3	9	0
LSM 00:00	Total			150	0
LSM 00:01	Subpool P00L2	DD3C	DD3	10	0
LSM 00:01	Subpool P00L2	Total		10	0
LSM 00:01		STANDARD	18TRACK	23	0
LSM 00:01		ECART	36BTRACK	60	0
LSM 00:01		ECART	36ATRACK	17	0
LSM 00:01		DD3B	DD3	11	0
LSM 00:01		DD3C	DD3	14	0
LSM 00:01	Total			125	0
LSM 00:02	Subpool P00L2	DD3C	DD3	12	0
LSM 00:02	Subpool P00L2	Total		12	0
LSM 00:02		STANDARD	18TRACK	8	0
LSM 00:02		ECART	36BTRACK	1	0
LSM 00:02		ECART	36ATRACK	10	0
LSM 00:02		DD3C	DD3	17	0
LSM 00:02	Total			36	0
ACS 00	Subpool P00L1	STANDARD	18TRACK	8	0
ACS 00	Subpool P00L1	Total		8	0
ACS 00	Subpool P00L2	DD3C	DD3	31	0
ACS 00	Subpool P00L2	Total		31	0
ACS 00	Subpool P00L3	STANDARD	18TRACK	120	0
ACS 00	Subpool P00L3	ECART	36BTRACK	93	0
ACS 00	Subpool P00L3	ECART	36ATRACK	46	0
ACS 00	Subpool P00L3	DD3B	DD3	12	0
ACS 00	Subpool P00L3	DD3C	DD3	40	0
ACS 00	Total			311	0
LSM 01:00	Subpool P00L3	STANDARD	18TRACK	10	0
LSM 01:00	Subpool P00L3	Total		10	0
LSM 01:00		STANDARD	18TRACK	21	0
LSM 01:00	Total			21	0
LSM 01:01	Total			0	0
ACS 01	Subpool P00L3	STANDARD	18TRACK	10	0
ACS 01	Subpool P00L3	Total		10	0
ACS 01	Subpool P00L3	STANDARD	18TRACK	21	0
ACS 01	Total			21	0

### Display Threshold Information for a Subpool

```
D THR SUBPOOL(P00L2)

Sample Output

...Threshold Value Summary:
```

ACS/LSM	Subpool Name	Media	Rectech	Count	Thresh
LSM 00:00	Subpool	P00L2 Total		9	0
LSM 00:01	Subpool	P00L2 Total		10	0
LSM 00:02	Subpool	P00L2 Total		12	0
ACS 00	Subpool	P00L2 Total		31	0

### Display Detailed Threshold Information for a Media Type

```
D THR SUB(P00L2) DET MEDIA(DD3C)

Sample Output

...Threshold Value Summary:
```

ACS/LSM	Subpool Name	Media	Rectech	Count	Thresh
LSM 00:00	Subpool	P00L2 DD3C	DD3	9	0
LSM 00:00	Subpool	P00L2 Total		9	0
LSM 00:01	Subpool	P00L2 DD3C	DD3	10	0
LSM 00:01	Subpool	P00L2 Total		10	0
LSM 00:02	Subpool	P00L2 DD3C	DD3	12	0
LSM 00:02	Subpool	P00L2 Total		12	0
ACS 00	Subpool	P00L2 DD3C	DD3	31	0

## Display TREQDEF



This command is still supported, however, it can be used only when an HSC 6.1/6.2 server is communicating with an SMC 6.0 client.

### Syntax

```
► Display — TREQDEF — ◀
```

### Parameters

#### TREQDEF

displays information about the definition data set, containing TAPEREQ statements, that is currently loaded. Definition data sets are loaded by issuing a TREQDEF command and control statement. The display includes the name of the definition file (data set and member name if appropriate), the identifying string if the data set contains an OPTion TITLE statement, and the date and time the parameters were loaded.



**Note:** Refer to “Definition Data Set Control Statements” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for more information about definition data sets and the OPTion TITLE statement, and the *SMC Configuration and Administration Guide* for information about the TREQDEF and TAPEREQ statements.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display TREQDEF command.

#### ***Display Information About the TREQDEF Data Set***

```
DISPLAY TREQDEF
```

#### **Sample Output**

```
... TREQDEF PARAMETER STATUS: xxx  
LOADED FROM SPPW.PTF3490E.ITEST(HSCDATA1)  
TITLE: TAP TEST  
LOADED ON 05/21/93 AT 09:32:14
```

## Display UNITDEF



This command is still supported, however, it can be used only when an HSC 6.1/6.2 server is communicating with an SMC 6.0 client.

### Syntax

```
►► Display—UNITDEF—————►◄
```

### Parameters

#### UNITDEF

displays information about the definition data set containing UNITATTR statements. The display includes the name of the definition file (data set and member name, if appropriate), the identifying string if the data set contains an OPTion TITLE statement, and the date and time the parameters were loaded.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display UNITDEF command.

#### *Display Information About the UNITDEF Data Set*

```
DISPLAY UNITDEF
```

#### Sample Output

```
... UNITDEF PARAMETER STATUS: xxx  
LOADED FROM SYS4.HSC.DEFS(UNITDEFS)  
TITLE: TAP TEST  
LOADED ON 05/16/94 AT 07:55
```



**Note:** In the sample output above, *xxx* is the unique message sequence number assigned to multiple-line messages. This number appears in the left column of all subsequent lines of the message.

## Display VOLDEF

### Syntax

```
►—Display—VOLDEF—◄
```

### Parameters

#### **VOLDEF**

displays information about the definition data set, containing VOLATTR statements, that is currently loaded. Definition data sets are loaded by issuing a VOLDEF command and control statement. The display includes the name of the definition file (data set and member name if appropriate), the identifying string if the data set contains an OPTion TITLE statement, and the date and time the parameters were loaded.



**Note:** Refer to “Definition Data Set Control Statements” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for more information about definition data sets and OPTion TITLE, VOLATTR, and VOLDEF statements.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display VOLDEF command.

#### ***Display Information About the VOLDEF Data Set***

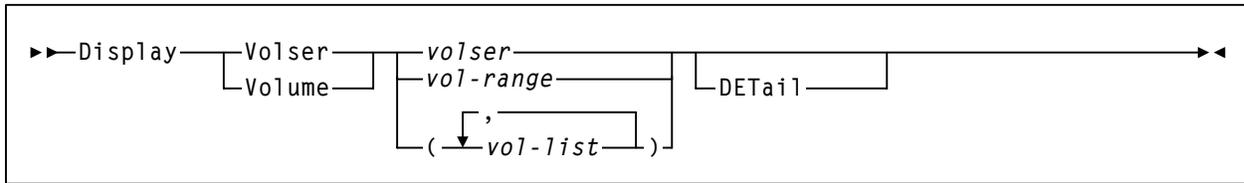
```
DISPLAY VOLDEF
```

#### **Sample Output**

```
... VOLDEF PARAMETER STATUS: xxx  
   LOADED FROM SPPW.PTF3490E.ITEST(HSCDATA2)  
   TITLE: SER TEST  
   LOADED ON 05/21/93 AT 09:56:51
```

## Display Volume

### Syntax



### Parameters

#### Volser or Volume

displays volume locations for the specified volumes. The information displayed includes:

- status of volume (selected or unselected) and its location
- in the case of an errant volume, the source, destination, and home location

#### *volser* or *vol-range* or *vol-list*

identifies one or more VOLSERS for which the system is to display status. Each *vol-list* element can be either a single VOLSER or a VOLSER range.



**Note:** You can display a range of up to 100 volumes.

List elements must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

#### DETail

optionally displays all available information about the specified volume(s).



**Note:** The minimum acceptable abbreviation for DETail is “DET.”

The information displayed includes:

- the home cell location
- whether or not the volume is a scratch cartridge
- whether or not the volume is selected
- the owning host (displayed if the volume is selected)
- the drive address or drive ID (displayed if the volume is mounted)
- whether or not an external label is present
- whether or not the media label is readable by the robotic vision system (displayed if the external label exists)
- when the volume was last inserted into the library
- when the volume was last selected

- the select count
- the media type for the volume
- the recording technique for the volume
- whether or not the media label was readable (**N/A** appears if the value was not read from the LMU)
- how the media type has been determined for the volume. The values that appear in this field are:

<b>YES</b>	The media label and the VOLATTR defined for the volume agree.
<b>NO</b>	The media label and the VOLATTR defined for the volume do not agree.
<b>VOLATTR Only</b>	A VOLATTR has been defined, but the LMU has not determined the media type.
<b>Label Only</b>	The LMU has determined the media type, but a VOLATTR has not been defined.
<b>Undefined</b>	A VOLATTR has not been defined, and the LMU has not determined the media type.

- whether or not the volumes are unusable (i.e., spent cleaning cartridges)
- the volume density for STK1 and STK2 media volumes.

## Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Display Volume command and provides sample output.

### Display All Available Information About VOLSER RW0001

```
DISPLAY VOLUME RW0001 DETAIL

Sample output

...  VOLUME 105142 - DETAIL: xxx
     HOME CELL:      00:01:10:08:01
     SCRATCH:        NO
     SELECTED:       NO
     MOUNTED:        DRIVE AE0
     EXTERNAL LABEL: YES
     LABEL READABLE: YES
     INSERTED:       2009-03-26   20:29:19
     LAST SELECTED:  2009-04-01   07:15:33
     SELECT COUNT:   012
     MEDIA TYPE:     STK1R
     RECTECH:        STK1R
     MEDIA LABEL:    READABLE
     MEDIA MATCH:    LABEL ONLY
     DENSITY:        UNKNOWN
     WARRANTY LIFE:  95%
```

## DRAIN CAP Command

The DRAIn command terminates an eject or enter operation on one or more CAPs, which frees the CAP resources for use by other processes. Refer to “EJECT Command” on page 146 and “ENTER Command” on page 162 for details on command syntax and parameters. Refer to “Overview of Library Utilities” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for information on utilities.

The DRAIn command can be used to terminate an EJECT command or EJECT utility on one or more CAPs before all specified cartridges are ejected. For the EJECT command the action taken by the HSC for volumes associated with the drained CAPs is determined by the setting of the OPTION REPATH command. Refer to “OPTION Command and Control Statement” on page 202 for additional information.

An ENter command requires dedicated use of CAPs because it allows you to enter any number of cartridges into the library. When you are finished using a CAP to enter cartridges, you must issue a DRAIn command to release the CAP and make it available for other work.

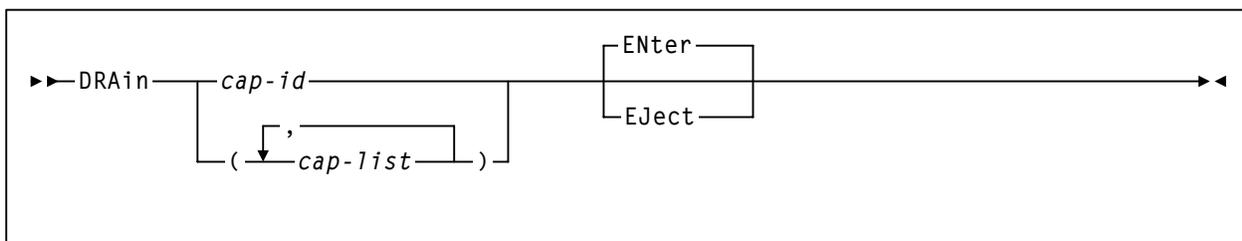
The DRAIn command must be issued from the same host as the corresponding EJECT or ENter command or utility. If a DRAIn is attempted for the wrong command, an error message is issued.



### Notes:

- When the DRAIn command is issued, the LSM robot uses its camera to make sure that the CAP is empty before the command is executed. An ENter command does not stop until all cartridges in the CAP are processed.
- The DRAIn command has no affect on an ENter command that is using an automatic mode CAP. The DRAIn command can be issued against an automatic mode CAP that is being used by either an EJECT command or EJECT utility.
- The status of a CAP can be determined using the Display Cap command (refer to “Display Cap” on page 71 for details on command syntax and parameters).
- If you cannot drain a CAP because it is allocated to a now failed host, refer to “Freeing An Allocated CAP” on page 319 for recovery procedures.

## Syntax



## Command Name

### **DRAin**

initiates the DRAin command.

## Parameters

### *cap-id* or *cap-list*

specifies one or more CAPs to be drained. The CAPids specified on a DRAin command must match the CAPids specified on the associated Eject or ENter command.

The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid (*AA* is the ACSid, hexadecimal 00-FF; *LL* is the LSM number, hexadecimal 00-17), and *CC* is one of the following:

#### **00**

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, standard 21-cell CAP or the right-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For 9740 LSMs, fixed rack 14-cell or 10-cell removable magazine CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a left-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, the CAP consists of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

#### **01**

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, left-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.
- For SL8500 libraries, this is an optional CAP consisting of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

#### **02**

- priority CAP (PCAP) for a 4410 or 9310 LSM enhanced CAP.
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

#### **03, 04, 05**

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM/DEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

#### **06**

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is the only required BDM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

### 07, 08, 09, 0A

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

### 0B

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a right-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines



**Notes:** If SL3000 library CAPs are not present, the HSC reports them as “not installed.” This keeps CAP addresses from changing as new CAPs are added.

- Refer to “How to Specify a CAPid” on page 24 for a complete explanation of CAPid formats
- SL3000 and SL8500 libraries do not contain a PCAP.

Each *cap-list* element can be either an *lsm-id* or a *cap-id* that describes a specific CAP. The elements in a list must be separated by a comma or a blank, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

#### **ENter**

specifies that an enter operation is to be terminated on the specified CAPs. ENter is the default.

#### **EJect**

specifies that an eject operation is to be terminated on the specified CAPs.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the DRAIN command.

### ***Terminate the ENter Command Controlling CAPid 000:00***

```
DRAIN 00:00:00 ENTER
```

### ***Terminate the ENter Command On CAPids 003:00 & 003:01***

```
DRA (00:03:00,00:03:01)
```

### ***Terminate the Eject Command on CAPids 000:01 and 001:00***

```
DRAIN (00:00:01,00:01:00) EJECT
```

## EJECT Command

The Eject command directs the robot to take cartridges from inside an LSM and place them into a CAP, where they can be removed by the operator. One or more CAPs can be specified by the operator or a CAP can be automatically selected by the HSC based on CAP preference. (Refer to “CAP Preference (CAPPref) Command and Control Statement” on page 42 for information on setting CAP preference values.)

Up to 9999 cartridges can be ejected with one Eject command. (Refer to “OPTION Command and Control Statement” on page 202 for information on how to set the eject limit with the OPTion EJLimit command.) Each time the CAP is filled, or when all specified cartridges have been placed in the CAP, the CAP is unlocked and the HSC displays a console message instructing the operator to empty the CAP. The operator must open the CAP, remove all cartridges, and close the CAP. Each time the CAP is closed the robot scans the CAP (called a CAP catalog).

One of the following occurs:

- the eject operation terminates if all specified cartridges have been ejected.
- the robot resumes filling the CAP until either the CAP is full, or the remaining specified cartridges have been placed in the CAP.



**Note:** Use the SLUADMIN EJECT utility or the programmatic interface EJECT request to eject more than 9999 cartridges in one operation. The parameter defaults (such as *cap-id*) for the EJECT utility are different than the parameter defaults for the Eject command. Refer to “EJECT Cartridge Utility” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for information on the EJECT utility and programmatic interface EJECT request.

The Eject command allows you to identify specific VOLSERS or indicate a count of scratch cartridges to be ejected. When a volume is ejected, it is erased from the control data set and is no longer considered under library control.

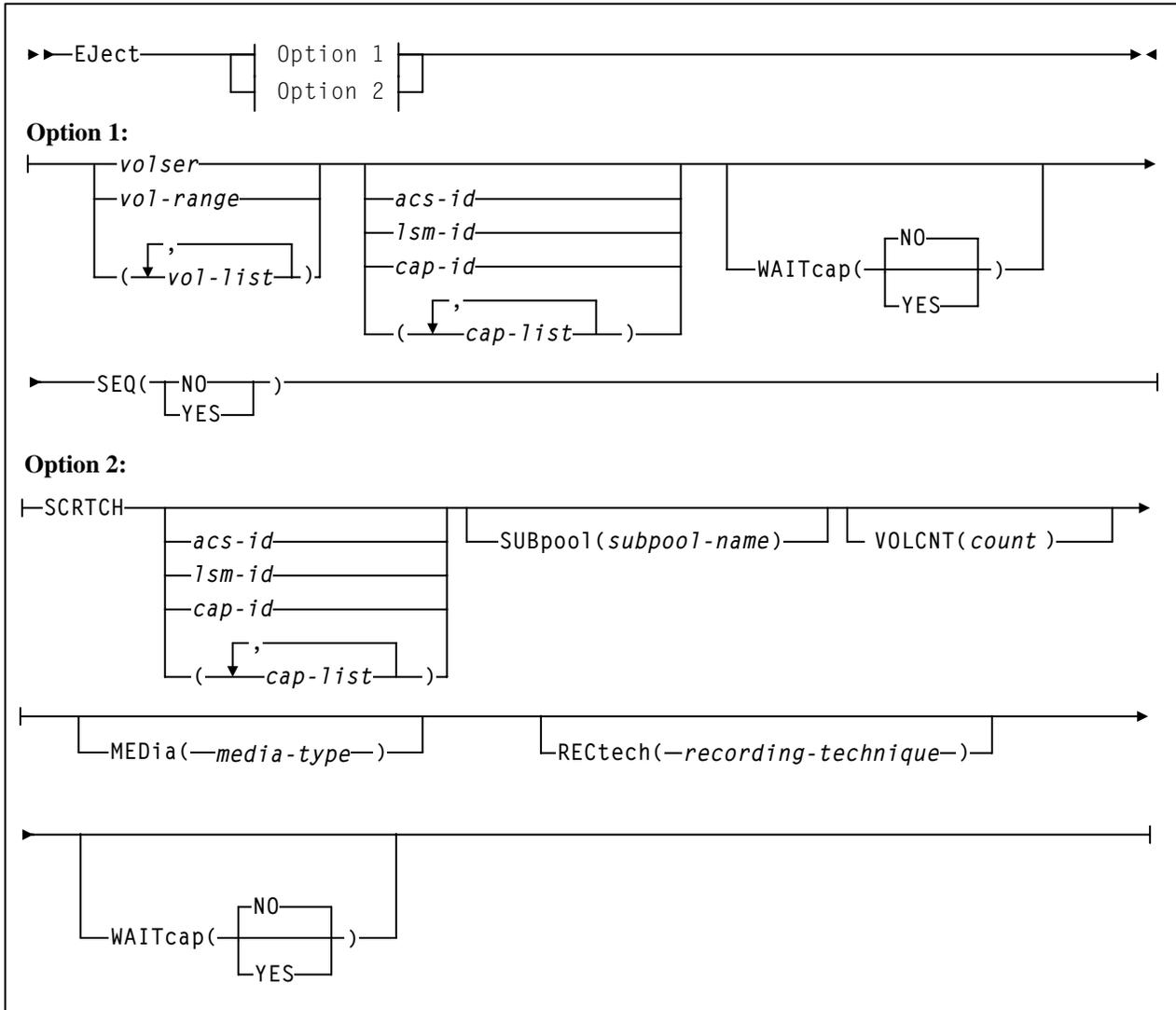
If a media type (MEDia) or recording technique (RECtech) is not specified, any type of cartridge is ejected. That is, the next scratch cartridge is selected without taking media type and recording technique into consideration.



**Notes:**

- When the Eject command is issued, the robot uses its camera to make sure that the CAP is empty before the command is executed.
- The operator is prompted for a password if a nonblank eject password was specified in the EJCTPAS parameter on the LIBGEN SLILIBRY macro.

## Syntax



### Command Name

#### Eject

initiates the Eject command.

### Parameters

#### *volser* or *vol-range* or *vol-list*

specifies one or more cartridges to be ejected. The VOLSERS are sorted in sequential order. VOLSERS that do not reside in the ACS are removed from the list.

Each *vol-list* element can be either a single VOLSER or a VOLSER range. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.



### Notes:

- If you designate specific volumes to be ejected but do not enter an ACS, LSM, or CAP identifier, the HSC allocates a non-zero preference CAP in each ACS that contains one or more of these volumes.

When you are ejecting to one or more SL8500 CAPs, the volume list is not ejected sequentially. Rather, the volume list is reordered by cell location to utilize all hand-bots.

- Use the OPTion EJLimit command to set the number of cartridges that can be ejected with one Eject command. Refer to “OPTION Command and Control Statement” on page 202 for details on command syntax and parameters. The initial value for the HSC is set to 100 cartridges.

#### *acs-id*

identifies the ACS containing the cartridges to eject. The HSC selects a nonzero preference CAP within the ACS.

#### *lsm-id*

identifies one of the following:

- an LSM with a single CAP
- an LSM that contains multiple CAPs. The HSC selects an available manual mode CAP with the highest nonzero preference. CAPid 00 is selected if it is available, in manual mode, and has a preference value equal to or higher than other available manual mode CAPs in the LSM.

The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

#### *cap-id* or *cap-list*

identifies one or more specific CAPs to use regardless of availability or CAP preference. The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is one of the following:

#### **00**

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, standard 21-cell CAP or the right-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For 9740 LSMs, fixed rack 14-cell or 10-cell removable magazine CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a left-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, the CAP consists of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 01

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, left-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, this is an optional CAP consisting of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 02

- priority CAP (PCAP) for a 4410 or 9310 LSM enhanced CAP.
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 03, 04, 05

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM/DEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 06

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is the only required BDM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 07, 08, 09, 0A

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 0B

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a right-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines



### Notes:

- If SL3000 library CAPs are not present, the HSC reports them as “not installed.” This keeps CAP addresses from changing as new CAPs are added.
- Refer to “How to Specify a CAPid” on page 24 for a complete explanation of CAPid formats
- SL3000 and SL8500 libraries do not contain a PCAP.

Each *cap-list* element can be either an *lsm-id* or a *cap-id*. The elements in a list must be separated by a comma or a blank, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.



### Notes:

- When one CAP is specified, the cartridges are processed sequentially by VOLSER.

However, when you are ejecting to one or more SL8500 CAPs, the volume list is not ejected sequentially. Rather, the volume list is reordered by cell location to utilize all hand-bots.

- When two CAPs within the same LSM are specified, the list of VOLSERs is ordered such that volumes will be assigned to the lowest numbered CAP first until the capacity of the CAP is reached, then volumes are assigned to the other CAP up to its capacity. This process continues until all volumes are assigned to a CAP. During the EJECT all CAPs are used at the same time.

For example, if CAPids 00:00:00 and 00:00:01 in an enhanced CAP are being used to eject VOLSERs VOL001 through VOL100, VOL001 through VOL040 and VOL081 through VOL100 are assigned to CAP 00:00:00, and VOL041 through VOL080 are assigned to CAP 00:00:01. The robot begins placing cartridges into both CAPs. Each CAP is unlocked when it is full. After the operator empties and closes CAP 00:00:00, the robot begins filling it with VOL081 through VOL100.

- When multiple CAPs are specified across LSMs, volumes are associated with a CAP that is the fewest number of pass-thrus away. CAPs that have no associated volumes are released.
- When SCRTCH is specified (with or without SUBpool), volumes are assigned to a CAP that is the fewest number of pass-thrus away. CAPs that have no associated volumes are released.
- When a DRAIN is issued against a CAP, or a CAP is made unavailable, the OPTION REPATH setting determines how the cartridges associated with the CAP are processed. Refer to “OPTION Command and Control Statement” on page 202 for details on command syntax and parameters.

### **WAITcap**

specifies whether or not a list of ejecting volumes waits for an available CAP if one is not available.

### **NO**

specifies that the eject process does not wait for a CAP if it is not available. **NO** is the default.

### **YES**

specifies that the eject process waits indefinitely for a CAP to become available.

## SEQ

specifies whether or not CAP eject processing fills the CAP cells in the same order specified by the *volser* parameter.



### Notes:

- If **SEQ** is not specified, but two CAPs are requested in the same LSM, and the LSM is not an SL8500 cartridges in the ACS are ejected in sequential order.
- For best performance, **SEQ(NO)** is recommended.

## NO

specifies to eject the requested volumes in the order of home cell location. Eject processing fills the CAP or magazine (SL3000s and SL8500s) according to the distance of the home cell to the CAP or magazine; that is, volumes closest to the CAP or magazine are ejected first.

## YES

specifies to eject cartridges to the CAP in the order the volumes are listed in the associated *volser* parameter. The first cartridge requested appears in the topmost CAP cell, the second cartridge requested appears in the next CAP cell, and so on until the CAP is full or all cartridges have been moved to the CAP.

## SCRATCH

indicates that scratch volumes are to be ejected.



**Note:** If you do not supply *acs-id*, *lsm-id*, *cap-id*, or *cap-list*, the HSC selects an available nonzero preference CAP in ACS 00, and scratch volumes are ejected from ACS 00 only.

### *acs-id*

identifies the ACS containing the cartridges to eject. The HSC selects a nonzero preference CAP within the ACS.

### *lsm-id*

identifies one of the following:

- an LSM with a single CAP
- an LSM that contains multiple CAPs. The HSC selects an available manual mode CAP with the highest nonzero preference. CAPid 00 is selected if it is available, in manual mode, and has a preference value equal to or higher than other available manual mode CAPs in the LSM.

The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

### *cap-id* or *cap-list*

identifies one or more specific CAPs to use regardless of availability or CAP preference. The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is one of the following:

**00**

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, standard 21-cell CAP or the right-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For 9740 LSMs, fixed rack 14-cell or 10-cell removable magazine CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a left-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, the CAP consists of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

**01**

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, left-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, this is an optional CAP consisting of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

**02**

- priority CAP (PCAP) for a 4410 or 9310 LSM enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines

**03, 04, 05**

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM/DEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13 cell removable magazines

**06**

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is the only required BDM CAP consisting of 2, 13 cell removable magazines

**07, 08, 09, 0A**

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13 cell removable magazines

**0B**

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a right-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines

**Notes:**

- If SL3000 library CAPs are not present, the HSC reports them as “not installed.” This keeps CAP addresses from changing as new CAPs are added.
- Refer to “How to Specify a CAPid” on page 24 for a complete explanation of CAPid formats
- SL3000 and SL8500 libraries do not contain a PCAP.

**SUBpool**

indicates to the system that scratch cartridges are to be selected from a designated subpool. If you do not specify this parameter, the HSC selects from subpool 0, which contains all scratch tapes in the ACS including scratch tapes in named subpools.

***subpool-name***

is the name of the subpool.



**Note:** Scratch subpool names are specified with the SCRPool control statement. Refer to “Scratch Subpool Control Statement” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for information on the SCRPool control statement.

**VOLCNT**

allows the user to specify the number of scratch volumes to be ejected. One cartridge is ejected if the VOLCNT parameter is not specified.

***count***

is a decimal value in the range from 1 through 9999.



**Note:** Use the OPTion EJLimit command to set a maximum limit on the number of cartridges that can be ejected with one Eject command. Refer to “OPTION Command and Control Statement” on page 202 for details on command syntax and parameters.

**MEDia**

specifies the type of scratch media (cartridge) that is to be ejected.

**Notes:**

- If **MEDia** is not specified, the next scratch cartridge is selected without regard to media type.
- **The SL8500 library supports the T9840A, T9840B, T9840C, T9840D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- **The SL3000 library supports the T9840C, T9840D, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**

- LTO and SDLT transports are not supported in an MVS environment. These transports are recognized by the HSC but are accessible only to open systems clients using LibraryStation.

***media-type***

identifies the media type. Valid media types are:

**LONGItud**

indicates any Standard or ECART cartridge.

**Standard**

indicates a standard length, 3480 cartridge. It can be read on any longitudinal drives (4480, 4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Data can be written in 36-track mode on a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE transport but cannot be read on an 18-track (4480) drive. Synonyms for this type of cartridge include:

- CST
- MEDIA1
- STD
- 1
- 3480

**ECART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge. It can be used only on a 36-track drive (4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Synonyms include:

- E
- ECCST
- ETAPE
- Long
- MEDIA2
- 3490E

**ZCART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge that provides greater storage capacity than an ECART. It can be used only on a 9490EE drive.

ZCART can be abbreviated as Z.

**DD3**

indicates any DD3A, DD3B, or DD3C (HELical) cartridge. HELical is a synonym for DD3.

**DD3A, DD3B, DD3C**

indicates a helical cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (A, B, or C). DD3A, DD3B, or DD3C can be abbreviated to A, B, or C, respectively.

Types of helical cartridges, along with their associated media capacities, are:

- A — 10GB
- B — 25GB
- C — 50GB.

Data capacity differences between DD3A, DD3B, and DD3C cartridges are related to the length of the tape in the cartridge, not to the recording density of the data.

**STK1**

indicates any T9840 cartridge.

**STK1R**

indicates a T9840 cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (R). STK1R can be abbreviated to R.

T9840 cartridge media capacities are 20GB (T9840A and T9840B), 40GB (T9840C), or 75GB (9840D).

**STK2**

indicates any T9940 cartridge.

**STK2P**

indicates a T9940 data cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (P). STK2P can be abbreviated to P.

T9940 cartridge media capacities are 60GB (T9940A) or 200GB (T9940B).

**LTO-10G**

indicates an LTO 10GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-35G**

indicates an LTO 35GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-50G**

indicates an LTO 50GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-100G**

indicates an LTO 100GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-200G**

indicates an LTO 200GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400G**

indicates an LTO 400GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400W**

indicates an LTO Generation 3 WORM cartridge.

**LTO-800G**

indicates an LTO 800GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-800W**

indicates an LTO Generation 4 WORM cartridge.

**SDLT**

indicates an SDLT 160GB cartridge.

**SDLT-2**

indicates an SDLT 125GB cartridge.

**SDLT-S1**

indicates an SDLT Generation S1 cartridge.

**SDLT-S2**

indicates an SDLT Generation S2 cartridge.

**SDLT-S3**

indicates an SDLT Generation S3 cartridge.

**SDLT-S4**

indicates an SDLT Generation S4 cartridge.

**SDLT-4**

indicates an SDLT Generation 4 cartridge.

**T10000T1 or T1**

indicates a full-capacity 500GB T10000A or ITB T10000B cartridge. T10000T1 can be abbreviated as **T1**.

**T10000TS or TS**

indicates a smaller-capacity 120GB T10000A or 240GB T10000B cartridge. T10000TS can be abbreviated as **TS**.

## **RECtech**

specifies the scratch method used to record data tracks on the tape surface.



### **Notes:**

- If RECtech is not specified, the next scratch cartridge is selected depending on the MEDIA type that has been specified.
- **The SL8500 library supports the T9840A, T9840B, T9840C, T9840D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- **The SL3000 library supports the T9840C, T9840D, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**

### *recording-technique*

identifies the recording technique. Valid recording techniques are:

#### **LONGItud**

indicates any device that uses longitudinal recording.

#### **18track**

indicates a 4480 transport.

#### **36track**

indicates a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE transport (any device that records in 36-track mode).

#### **36Atrack**

indicates a 4490 (Silverton) transport.

#### **36Btrack**

indicates a 9490 (Timberline) transport.

#### **36Ctrack**

indicates a 9490EE transport.

#### **HELical**

indicates a device using helical recording.

#### **DD3**

indicates a device using helical recording.

#### **STK1R**

indicates any 9840 transport.

#### **STK1R34**

indicates any 3490E-image 9840 transport.

#### **STK1R35**

indicates any 3590-image 9840 transport.

**STK1RA**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RA34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RA35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RB**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RB34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RB35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB4**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB5**

indicates a 3590E-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RC**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RC34**

indicates a 3490-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RC35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RD**

indicates any T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE**

indicates an encryption-enabled T9840D transport.

**STK1RDN**

indicates a non-encryption enabled T9840D transport.

**STK1RD34**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RD35**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE4**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T9840D transport.

**STK1RDE5**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T9840D transport.

**STK2P**

indicates any 9940 transport.

**STK2P34**

indicates any 3490E-image 9940 transport.

**STK2P35**

indicates any 3590-image 9940 transport.

**STK2PA**

indicates a T9940A transport.

**STK2PA34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940A transport.

**STK2PA35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940A transport.

**STK2PB**

indicates a T9940B transport.

**STK2PB34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940B transport.

**STK2PB35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940B transport.

**T10K**

indicates all T10000 transports.

**T10KN**

indicates all non-encrypted T10000 transports.

**T10KE**

indicates all encrypted T10000 transports.

**T1A**

indicates any T10000A transport.

**T1AN**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1A34**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000A transport.

**T1A35**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1AE**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1AE34**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000A transport.

**T1AE35**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000A transport.

**T1B**  
indicates any T10000B transport.

**T1BN**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1B34**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000B transport.

**T1B35**  
indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE34**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE35**  
indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000B transport.

**WAITcap**  
specifies whether or not a list of ejecting volumes waits for an available CAP if one is not available.

**NO**  
specifies that the eject process does not wait for a CAP if it is not available. **NO** is the default.

**YES**  
specifies that the eject process waits indefinitely for a CAP to become available.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the EJECT command.

### ***Eject Cartridge 123456 Using a CAP in ACS 00***

```
EJECT 123456
```

### ***Eject VOLSERs EDU026-EDU035 Using a CAP in LSM 00:01***

```
EJ EDU026-EDU035 00:01
```

### ***Eject Cartridges EDU037 & EDU086 Using a CAP in ACS 01***

```
EJ (EDU037,EDU086),01
```

### ***Eject a Scratch Cartridge From Default Subpool Using CAPid 00:01:00***

```
EJ SCRATCH 00:01:00
```

### ***Eject 10 Scratches From PAYROLL Subpool Using CAPid 00:01:00***

```
EJ SCRATCH 00:01:00 SUB(PAYROLL) VOLCNT(10)
```

### ***Eject 100 Scratches From Subpool BACKUP Using Multiple CAPs***

```
EJ SCRATCH (00:03:00,00:03:01) SUB(BACKUP) VOLCNT(100)
```

### ***Eject One Standard Cartridge***

```
EJECT SCRATCH MEDIA(STD)
```

### ***Eject Five SD-3 Cartridges***

```
EJECT SCRATCH RECTECH(DD3) VOLCNT(5)
```

## ENTER Command

The ENter command makes a CAP available to the operator for entering cartridges into an LSM. The LSM must be operating in automatic mode, which means that the robot is fully functional (see “Automatic Mode” on page 14). The CAP must be in manual mode, which means that it is locked when not in use (see “CAP Preference (CAPPref) Command and Control Statement” on page 42). The ENter command is rejected if the CAP is in automatic mode.



### Notes:

- When a cartridge is entered, if the vision system does not detect a media label, the cartridge is entered and the media type defaults to Standard. If the media label is unreadable, a message is displayed prompting the operator to supply a valid media type or eject the cartridge. VOLATTR information is not used during ENter processing.
- StorageTek recommends that users provide an external media label for all cartridges. **The SL3000 and SL8500 libraries will not enter a non-labeled cartridge.**

One CAP is allocated to each ENter command allowing the operator to enter cartridges into the LSM without interrupting other work. In a multiple-LSM configuration, or for an LSM that contains multiple CAPs, you can specify the CAP to be used or have the HSC select an available CAP based on CAP preference. Refer to “CAP Preference (CAPPref) Command and Control Statement” on page 42 for details on setting CAP preference values.



**Caution: For all CAPs except SL3000s and SL8500s, do not leave empty CAP cells between cartridges. Cartridges placed after an empty cell are not entered. The robot scans each CAP cell for a cartridge and stops when it finds the first empty cell.**

The CAP can be refilled as many times as necessary to enter cartridges (as long as empty storage cells exist in the ACS). Each time the CAP is closed the robot scans the CAP (called a CAP catalog). If it finds cartridges in the CAP, the robot picks up the cartridges and stores them in cell locations selected by the HSC.

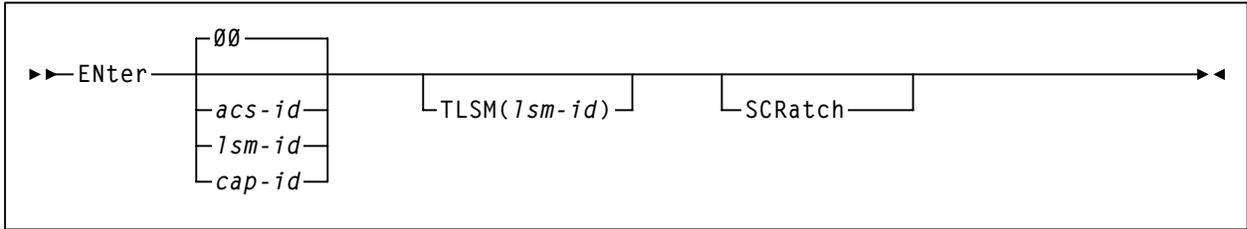
The CAP remains in enter mode until a DRAIN command is issued to release it (see “DRAIN CAP Command” on page 142), unless the CAP is in automatic mode.



### Notes:

- When the ENter command is issued, the robot uses its camera to make sure that the CAP is empty before the command is executed.
- In a dual LMU environment, enter operations must be restarted after an LMU switch.
- Use the Display Cap command to determine the status of a CAP (refer to “Display Cap” on page 71 for details on command syntax and parameters).

## Syntax



## Command Name

### ENter

initiates the ENter command.

## Parameters

### *acs-id*

specifies the ACS where cartridges are to be entered. The HSC selects a nonzero preference manual mode CAP within the ACS to use.

### *lsm-id*

identifies one of the following:

- an LSM with a single CAP
- an LSM that contains multiple CAPs. The HSC selects an available manual mode CAP with the highest nonzero preference. CAPid 00 is selected if it is available, in manual mode, and has a preference value equal to or higher than other available manual mode CAPs in the LSM.

### *cap-id*

identifies a specific manual mode CAP to use regardless of availability or CAP preference. The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is one of the following:

#### 00

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, standard 21-cell CAP or the right-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For 9740 LSMs, fixed rack 14-cell or 10-cell removable magazine CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a left-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, the CAP consists of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 01

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, left-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, this is an optional CAP consisting of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 02

- priority CAP (PCAP) for a 4410 or 9310 LSM enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 03, 04, 05

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM/DEM CAPs consists of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 06

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is the only required BDM CAP consisting of 2, 13 cell removable magazines.

## 07, 08, 09, 0A

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are an optional CEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13 cell removable magazines.

## 0B

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a right-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines



### Notes:

- If SL3000 library CAPs are not present, the HSC reports them as “not installed.” This keeps CAP addresses from changing as new CAPs are added.
- Refer to “How to Specify a CAPid” on page 24 for a complete explanation of CAPid formats.
- SL3000 and SL8500 libraries do not contain a PCAP.

## 00

is the default ACSid. If you do not supply an *acs-id*, *cap-id*, or *lsm-id* the HSC selects an available manual mode CAP in ACS 00 based upon the preference values set with the CAPPref command.

## **TLSM**

specifies the LSM to receive the entered cartridges.

### ***lsm-id***

identifies one of the following:

- an LSM with a single CAP
- an LSM that contains multiple CAPs. The HSC selects an available manual mode CAP with the highest nonzero preference. CAPid 00 is selected if it is available, in manual mode, and has a preference value equal to or higher than other available manual mode CAPs in the LSM.

The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

## **SCRatch**

optionally enables you to put the volumes you enter into scratch status. If you do not specify that the volumes are to be given scratch status, the system enters them as nonscratch volumes.

## **Examples**

The following examples illustrate the use of the ENter command.

### ***Enter Cartridges Using CAPid 00:02:01***

```
ENTER 00:02:01
```

### ***Enter Cartridges Using an Available CAP in ACS 01***

```
EN 01
```

### ***Enter Cartridges Using an Available CAP in ACS 00***

```
EN
```

**Enter Cartridges Using CAPid 00:01:00 Into LSMid 00:03**

EN 00:01:00 TLSM(00:03)

**Enter Scratch Cartridges Into LSMid 00:01**

EN 00:01 SCR

**Enter Cartridges Using CAPid 00:01:00 into LSMid 00:03**

EN 00:01:00 TLSM(00:03)

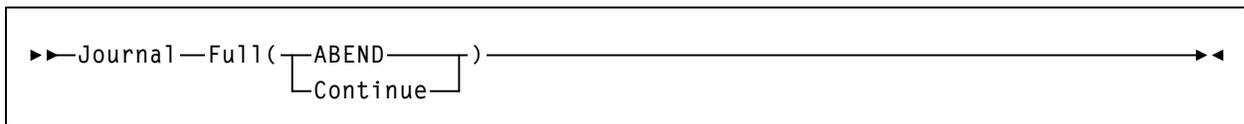
## JOURNAL Command

The Journal command is used to establish the action taken by the HSC if both journals fill to capacity before a control data set backup or a journal off-load is executed. When journaling is used as a recovery technique, the HSC is initially set to ABEND when both journals become full. The Journal command allows you to direct the HSC to disable journaling and continue running when both journals become full. Refer to “Control Data Set Recovery Strategies” in the *HSC Configuration Guide* for information on specifying journaling as a control data set recovery technique.



**Note:** Use the Display CDS command to display the status of journals. Refer to “Display CDS” on page 75 for details on command syntax and parameters.

### Syntax



### Command Name

#### Journal

initiates the Journal command.

### Parameters

#### Full

establishes the action taken by the HSC if both journals fill to capacity before a control data set backup or a journal off-load is executed.

#### ABEND

directs the HSC for this host to ABEND when both journals become full.

#### Continue

directs the HSC to disable journaling for this host and continue running when both journals become full.



#### Notes:

- If journaling is disabled and the HSC continues to run, the existing journals immediately become outdated as control data set transactions occur. All current journals on all hosts, and prior off-load copies, as well as the last control data set backup, are invalid.
- The BACKup utility resets journaling. If you run the BACKup utility while journaling is disabled, all journals are reset and journaling automatically becomes active again.

## Example

The following example illustrates the use of the Journal command.

### ***Disable Journaling & Continue Running if Both Journals Are Full***

```
JOURNAL FULL(CONTINUE)
```

## MNTD (Mount/Dismount Options) Command and Control Statement

The MNTD command and control statement offers you options on how the HSC processes the mounting and dismounting of library volumes. The following options are available:

- enable/disable the HSC automated cleaning function
- automatic or manual deletion of volumes from the control data set for a manual mode LSM
- automatic ejection of cleaning cartridges
- HSC cell selection for dismounted volumes that require pass-thru operations to be mounted (i.e., in a new cell or the original cell before the dismount)
- setting the maximum number of times a cleaning cartridge is used
- retaining manually mounted volumes in the control data set until dismount
- setting the maximum number of pass-thrus allowed for cartridge archival
- automatic or manual selection of scratch volumes in a manual mode LSM

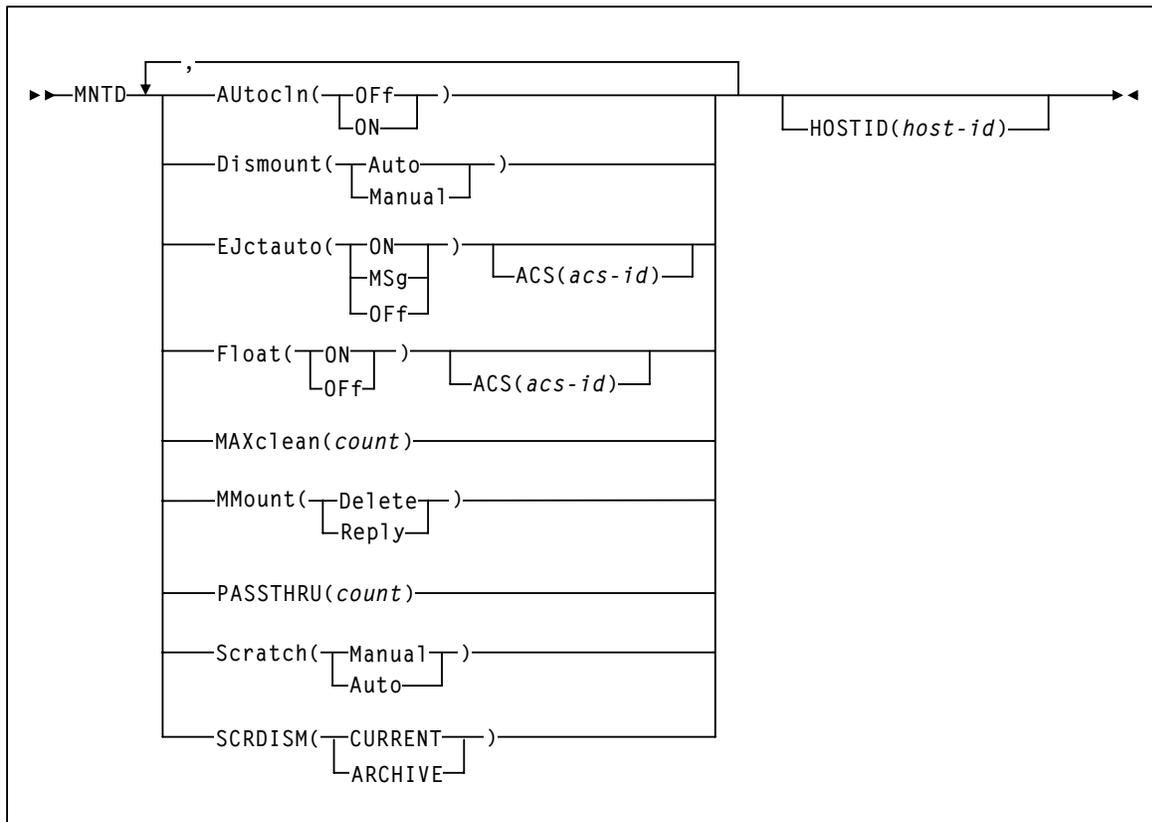
MNTD can be specified by an operator as an operator command or by a systems programmer as a PARMLIB control statement.



### Notes:

- The MOUNTmsg, SCRDISM, and VOLWatch parameters have been replaced by the SMC MOUNTDef command. These parameters are still supported when an SMC 6.0 client is communicating with an HSC 6.1 or 6.2 server. Refer to the *SMC Configuration and Administration Guide* for more information about MOUNTDef.
- The specified option remains in effect for the designated host until it is changed by another MNTD command, or until the HSC is shutdown and restarted.
- Use the Display MNTD command to display the current MNTD options (refer to “Display MNTD” on page 104 for details on command syntax and parameters).
- If any MNTD parameters are entered more than once, only the last occurrence applies.
- On a single MNTD command, if the ACS subparameter is entered for more than one parameter (i.e., EJctauto and Float), the ACS setting applies to both parameters.

## Syntax



### Command Name

#### **MNTD**

initiates the MNTD command or control statement.

### Parameters

#### **AUtocln**

controls automated transport cleaning.

#### **OFF**

disables the automated cleaning function. OFF is the initial value for the HSC.

**ON**

enables the following HSC cleaning functions:

- the automated cleaning function, which detects when a transport requires cleaning and schedules the mount of a cleaning cartridge prior to the next volume mount
- the CLean command which is used to schedule the mount of a cleaning cartridge for a specified transport. (refer to “CLEAN Command” on page 52 for details on command syntax and parameters).

**Dismount**

specifies whether volumes are to be deleted automatically from the control data set when a dismount is requested in a manual mode LSM for a volume that was mounted by the robot before the LSM was modified offline.

**Auto**

indicates that volumes are to be automatically deleted from the control data set when a manual dismount is requested for a volume that was mounted by the robot. Auto is the initial value for the HSC.

**Manual**

directs the HSC to issue a message prompting the operator to decide whether the volume is to be deleted from the control data set when a manual dismount is requested for a volume that was mounted by the robot.

Setting Dismount to Manual is useful when an LSM is modified offline for only a short time. In this case, the operator can choose to **not** respond to the dismount message and leave the volume mounted on the transport. When the LSM is modified online the HSC re-drives the outstanding dismount request, causing the robot to dismount the volume and place it in a storage cell.

**EJctauto**

controls automatic ejection of cleaning cartridges that have exceeded their maximum use.

In a multi-host environment, the EJctauto setting for a given ACS should be the same on all hosts. EJctauto status is not shared among the HSCs on different hosts.

**ON**

directs the HSC to automatically eject cleaning cartridges that have exceeded the number of times they can be used (as specified by the MNTD MAXclean or VOLATTR MAXclean parameters). ON is the initial value for the HSC.

**MSg**

directs the HSC to prompt the operator to either eject an over use-limit cartridge from the ACS or to keep a cleaning cartridge in the ACS.

**OFF**

directs the HSC to keep an over use-limit cleaning cartridge in the ACS. A message is issued displaying the cleaning cartridge's volser and describing this action.

**ACS**

optionally, specifies that the EJctauto settings apply only to the specified ACS. If this parameter is omitted, EJctauto settings affect all ACSs.

***acsid***

indicates a hexadecimal value from 00 to FF that identifies the ACS. A single digit *acsid* can be entered.

**Float**

specifies whether the HSC is to select a new home cell location when it dismounts a volume that required a pass-thru when it was mounted.

In multi-host environments, the Float setting for a specific ACS should be the same on all hosts. Float status is not shared among the HSCs on different hosts.

**ON**

directs the HSC to select a new home cell location for the volume in the LSM where the dismount occurs (provided a cell is available). If no cells are available in the new LSM, the volume is returned to its original cell location regardless of the Float setting. Setting Float to ON reduces the number of pass-thru operations. ON is the initial value for the HSC.

**OFF**

directs the HSC to return the volume to its original home cell location when it is dismounted.



**Note:** The MNTD Float OFF command is useful for remote ACS/CDS link down situations to avoid control data set integrity issues by making sure cartridges are returned to their original home cell locations. Refer to "Remote-linked Library Configurations" in the *HSC System Programmer's Guide* for information on remote libraries.

**ACS**

optionally, specifies that the Float setting applies only to this ACS. If the ACS parameter is omitted, the Float setting affects all ACSs.

***acsid***

indicates a hexadecimal value from 00 to FF that identifies the ACS. A single digit *acsid* can be entered.

**MAXclean**

specifies the maximum number of times a cleaning cartridge is to be used.



#### Notes:

- The **EJctauto** setting in effect for the ACS controls how cleaning cartridges are handled when they exceed their maximum use.
- In a multi-host environment, the **MAXclean** setting should be the same on all hosts. The **MAXclean** value is not shared among the HSCs on different hosts.
- Follow the cartridge vendor's recommendations for the number of times a cleaning cartridge should be used.

#### *count*

a decimal value, in the range from 1 through 32767. The initial value for the HSC is 100.



#### Notes:

- The *count value* applies to each cleaning cartridge in the library.
- When a cleaning cartridge is used *count* number of times, it is not selected if there are cleaning cartridges compatible with the transports in the ACS that have been used less than *count* number of times. Over use-limit cleaning cartridges may be automatically ejected, depending on the MNTD EJctauto setting.

#### **MMount**

specifies whether or not a mount message is issued during manual mode that allows the operator to retain a manually mounted volume in the control data set.

#### **Delete**

generates a manual mode mount message which prompts the operator to respond "D" to delete the volume from the control data set, or "I" to ignore the mount request. Delete is the initial value of the HSC.

#### **Reply**

generates a manual mode mount message which prompts the operator to reply "M" to DOM the message and retain the volume in the control data set, or "I" to ignore the mount request.



**Note:** When MNTD MMount(Reply) is specified, the HSC action for a manual mode dismount is determined by the MNTD Dismount setting.

#### **PASSTHRU**

specifies the maximum number of pass-thrus that can occur to allow cartridge archival if SCRDISM(ARCHIVE) is specified.

#### *count*

indicates the maximum number of pass-thrus allowed for archival of cartridges. Allowable values are decimal in the range from 1 through 99. The initial value of the HSC is 1.

### **Scratch**

determines how a scratch volume is selected to satisfy a scratch mount request for a manual mode LSM.

### **Manual**

specifies that the operator must select a scratch volume when a scratch mount is requested for a manual mode LSM. Manual is the initial value for the HSC.

### **Auto**

directs the HSC to select a scratch volume when a scratch mount is requested for a manual mode LSM. If Scratch is set to Auto, the HSC manual mount message indicates the cartridge VOLSER and cell location as if it were a request for a specific volume.

### **SCRDISM**

specifies whether or not scratch volumes mounted in a 9310 or 9360 LSM are to be automatically archived to a larger or slower LSM upon dismount.



**Note:** 9740 LSMs cannot attach to any other type of LSM. Thus, SCRDISM does not affect mounts in ACSs containing 9740s.

### **CURRENT**

indicates that scratch volumes mounted in a 9310 or 9360 LSM are to be dismounted according to the MNTD Float parameter setting. CURRENT is the initial value for the HSC.

### **ARCHIVE**

indicates that scratch volumes mounted in a 9310 or 9360 LSM are to be archived into a larger or slower storage device. Archival occurs only if the number of pass-thrus does not exceed PASSTHRU. Archival of a cartridge can occur

- from a 9360 to either a 9310 or a 4410
- from a 9310 to a 4410.



### **Notes:**

1. SCRDISM(ARCHIVE) overrides the MNTD Float parameter setting.
2. The ARCHIVE parameter does not affect dismounts in ACSs containing 9740 LSMs.

## HOSTID

used in PARMLIB control statements to identify the host associated with the MNTD command. This allows you to restrict certain startup options to a specific host.

If this parameter is not specified, the command is executed by each host that accesses PARMLIB.

### *host-id*

is the host ID (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).



**Note:** If the *host-id* does not match the host executing the command, a message is issued and the command is not processed.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the MNTD command and control statement.

### ***Enable Automatic Tape Transport Cleaning for This Host***

```
MNTD AUTOCLN(ON)
```

To have the HSC issue a message when a manual dismount is requested by this host for a volume that was mounted by the robot, the following example applies. The command takes effect only when the LSM is in manual mode.

### ***Set Dismount Processing to Manual***

```
MNTD DISMOUNT(MANUAL)
```

To return a volume to its original home cell when it is dismounted, after a mount which required a pass-thru from one LSM to another, the following example applies for ACS 01.

### ***Pass Dismounted Cartridge Back to Original Home Cell in ACS 01***

```
MNTD FLOAT(OFF) ACS(01)
```

To generate a manual mount message that allows the operator to reply “M” and retain the volume in the control data set following example applies. The command takes effect only when the LSM is in manual mode.

### ***Generate Manual Mount Message to Retain Cartridge in CDS***

```
MNTD MMOUNT(REPLY)
```

To have scratch volumes that are mounted in a 9310 or 9360 LSM archived in a larger or slower LSM, and set a maximum number of two pass-thrus allowed to archive the cartridges, following example applies.

***Archive Scratch Cartridges in a Larger or Slower LSM***

```
MNTD SCRDISM(ARCHIVE),PASSTHRU(2)
```

To have the HSC issue a message when a mount is requested for a library volume on a nonlibrary transport, the following example applies.

***Specifying Multiple Mount/Dismount Options for Host HSC1***

```
MNTD AU(ON),F(OF),MAX(200),HOSTID(HSC1)
```

## MODIFY Command

The MODify command performs these functions:

- to start dynamic hardware reconfiguration for a SL3000 or a SL8500 library
- to modify a CAP or an LSM online or offline to all hosts, independent of the issuing host.

### Starting Dynamic Hardware Configuration

Dynamic hardware reconfiguration for the SL3000 and SL8500 libraries represents the portion of Near Continuous Operation (NCO) that allows you to dynamically add or delete drives and expansion panels.

Enter the MODify CONFIG command to activate dynamic hardware reconfiguration. Refer to Appendix C, “Near Continuous Operation (NCO), in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for more information.



**Warning:** BEFORE you enter MODify CONFIG, RUN A BACKUP OF THE CDS.

### Additional Considerations

- **Do not** run the Vary command from the SLConsole (SLC) when the HSC is active. Varying LSMs offline through the SLC places the affected LSMs in a NOT READY state, which can lead to disrupted library operations. Instead, when you want to modify an LSM OFFLINE, run the MODify command.
- It is possible to remove LSMs from the SL8500 configuration without performing a LIBGEN, MERGEcds, and recycle of the HSC. However, **this operation requires assistance from StorageTek.**
- If you intend to add drives, run the SET SLIDRIVS utility to allow the HSC to recognize drive locations and associated UCB addresses and to ensure the CDS reflects the new tape drive configuration. Refer to the SET SLIDRIVS utility in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide*.

For more information, see the procedure “Adding Tape Drives,” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide*, Appendix B, “HSC Support for Near Continuous Operation (NCO).”



**Caution:** StorageTek recommends that you do not run CDS-related commands and utilities while dynamic hardware changes are being implemented.

## Modifying CAPs/LSMs Offline or Online

Modifying a CAP offline causes it to be placed into an unavailable state, preventing it from being allocated. This command can be used when a hardware problem occurs on a CAP, to prevent the CAP from being used without modifying the entire LSM offline. The command will fail if the CAP is busy.

Modifying an LSM offline stops any new automated cartridge handling operations from being initiated while allowing current activity to terminate normally. When all active requests have been processed, the HSC issues a console message to inform the operator that the LSM is offline. An offline LSM is placed in manual mode; that is, the operator must enter the LSM and manually mount/dismount tapes as required.



**Caution: StorageTek strongly recommends that you do not place SL3000 and SL8500 libraries in manual mode.** To use manual mode, all LSMs in the SL3000 and SL8500 must be offline, and that means all CAPs and drives are unavailable for automated operations. Additionally, SL3000 and SL8500 libraries have been designed for high cartridge density, so there is limited room for manually mounting and dismounting cartridges.

Refer to the “Precautions” topic in the *SL3000 or SL8500 Modular Library System User’s Guide* for safety requirements and physical restrictions if you decide that you must enter the library.

The MODify LSM OFFline FORCE command stops current activity in the LSM immediately. All outstanding requests to this LSM are purged, and an initial program load (IPL) process may need to be run on the LSM.

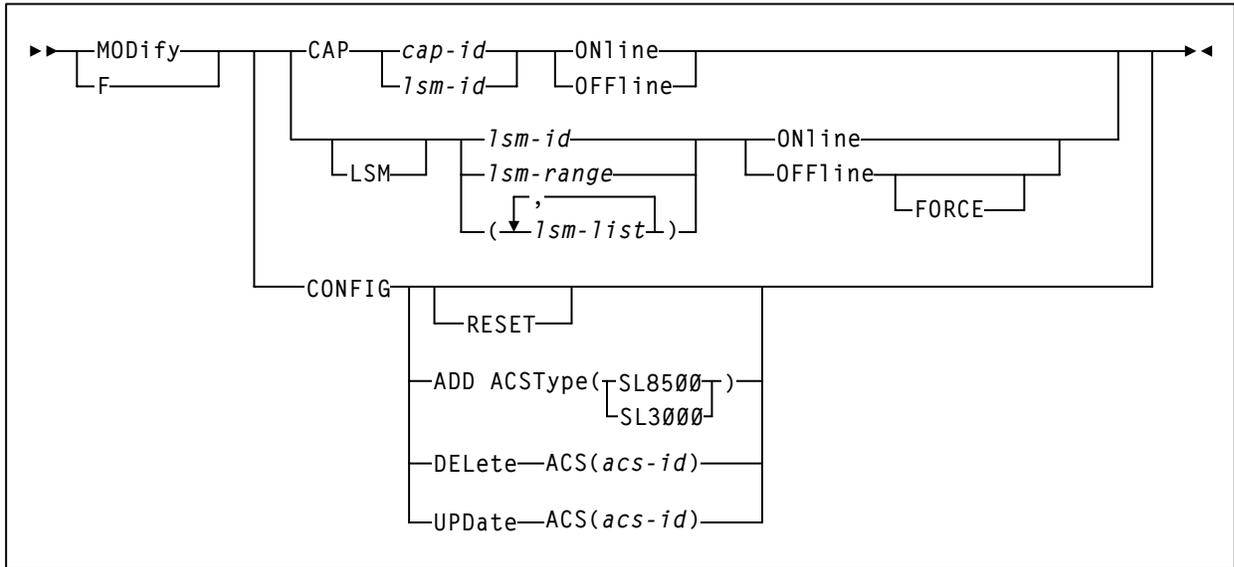
In-transit cartridges may become errant when an LSM is forced offline. Refer to “Recovering Errant Cartridges” on page 315 “Recovering Errant Cartridges” on page 315 for errant cartridge recovery procedures.

## Differences Between MODify and Vary Commands

The MODify command differs from the Vary command in the following ways:

- The MODify command places a specified CAP or LSM online/offline globally to all hosts.
  - A CAP that is modified offline cannot be used for eject/enter processing.
  - An LSM that is modified offline must be operated in manual mode.
  - A manual mode LSM is still available for diagnostic requests from a host.
- The Vary command places a host station online/offline to an LMU.
  - A host that has all of its LMU stations varied offline is disconnected from all LSMs attached to the LMU.
  - An LSM can still be used to semi-automate cartridge handling for a disconnected host by issuing HSC commands from a connected host.

## Syntax



## Command Name

### MODify or F

initiates the MODify command.

## Parameters

### CAP

specifies that a CAP is to be modified online/offline to all hosts.

### cap-id

identifies a specific CAP to be modified online/offline. The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is one of the following:

#### 00

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, standard 21-cell CAP or the right-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For 9740 LSMs, fixed rack 14-cell or 10-cell removable magazine CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a left-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, the CAP consists of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

#### 01

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, left-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines

- For SL8500 LSMs, this is an optional CAP consisting of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 02

- priority CAP (PCAP) for a 4410 or 9310 LSM enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 03, 04, 05

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM/DEM CAPs consists of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 06

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is the only required BDM CAP consisting of 2, 13 cell removable magazines.

## 07, 08, 09, 0A

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are an optional CEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13 cell removable magazines.

## 0B

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a right-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines



### Notes:

- If you enter this parameter when there is more than one CAP in the specified LSM, an error message is generated.
- If SL3000 library CAPs are not present, the HSC reports them as “not installed.” This keeps CAP addresses from changing as new CAPs are added.
- Refer to “How to Specify a CAPid” on page 24 for a complete explanation of CAPid formats.
- SL3000 and SL8500 libraries do not contain a PCAP.



### Notes:

#### *lsm-id*



**Caution:** Be sure you specify the CAP parameter to modify a CAP offline. If the LSM is online, and you specify an *lsm-id* to modify the CAP offline but do not specify the CAP parameter, the LSM will be modified offline.

An *lsm-id* identifies a standard CAP to be modified online/offline. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

**ONline**

specifies that the CAP is to be modified online to all hosts. When a CAP is modified online, the HSC attempts to restore the CAP mode (automatic or manual) that was in effect when the CAP was modified offline.

**OFFline**

specifies that the CAP is to be modified offline to all hosts.



**Caution:** Use this command only in an emergency. Make sure the CAP is not being used by another active process. Issuing the MODify command on an active CAP may cause the process using the CAP to receive errors.

Modifying a CAP offline places it in an unavailable state, preventing it from being allocated. The CAP mode (automatic or manual) is retained in the control data set.

**LSM**

optionally indicates that one or more LSMs are to be modified online/offline to all hosts.



**Note:** The LSM parameter is optional for HSC 2.0 but may be a required parameter in future releases.

***lsm-id* or *lsm-range* or *lsm-list***

identifies one or more LSMs to be modified online/offline to all hosts. Each *lsm-list* element may be either a single LSMid or an LSMid range. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

**ONline**

specifies that the LSMs are to be modified online to all hosts. Modifying an LSM online places it in automatic mode. When an LSM is modified online, CAPs that were in auto mode before the LSM was modified offline are again placed in auto mode (unlocked state).

**OFFline**

specifies that the LSMs are to be modified offline to all hosts. Modifying an LSM offline places it in manual mode. CAPs in a manual mode LSM cannot be used, but the auto/manual state of each CAP is retained.

**FORCE**

specifies that the LSM(s) is to be modified offline immediately. FORCE is only used with the OFFline parameter to modify an LSM offline.

## CONFIG

initiates the Near Continuous Operation (NCO) hardware reconfiguration process for SL3000 and SL8500 libraries. This is a system-wide change that propagates to all hosts connected to the CDS.



**Notes:** Refer to the following appendixes in the *HSC System Programmer's Guide*:

- Appendix A, “HSC Support for the SL8500 Library” and Appendix B, “HSC Support for the SL3000 Library,” for procedures describing how to partition those libraries.
- Appendix C, “Near Continuous Operation,” for information about dynamic hardware reconfiguration.

## ADD

initiates an NCO configuration change to add one ACS to the HSC configuration. The ACS added takes on the library characteristics of the library type specified by the **ACSType** parameter. The number of ACSs that can be added is limited by the number specified on the SLILIBRY FUTRACS parameter.

### ACSType

specifies the library type to use for the configuration change. Options are **SL3000** or **SL8500**.

## DELEte

initiates an NCO configuration change to delete the disconnected ACS specified in the **ACS(*acs-id*)** parameter.

### ACS(*acs-id*)

indicates a hexadecimal value from 00 to FF that identifies the ACS.

If the ACSid is the highest numbered ACS, the ACS is entirely deleted and can be re-added as a different ACSType. If the ACSid is **not** the highest numbered ACS, the ACS becomes a place holder with a status of unallocated and can be re-added only as the same ACSType.



**Note:** The ADD and DELEte parameters are only valid if the SLILIBRY FUTRACS parameter was specified during the LIBGEN process.

## RESET

resets internal flags for any host that may be failing as a hardware configuration is being performed. When the failing host comes back up, the new hardware configuration is automatically recognized and implemented.

A reset is intended only to reset a failing host and does not initiate the actual dynamic hardware reconfiguration operation. The MODify CONFIG command, without the RESET parameter, must be run separately to invoke dynamic hardware reconfiguration.

**UPDate**

initiates an NCO configuration change to update the ACS configuration specified in the **ACS(*acs-id*)** parameter.

**ACS(*acs-id*)**

indicates a hexadecimal value from 00 to FF that identifies the ACS.

This is **not** a system-wide change and does not propagate to other hosts connected to the CDS. If a system-wide update is needed, enter the MODify CONFIG command minus any additional parameters.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the MODify command.

### ***Modify CAP 00:01:01 Online***

```
MODIFY CAP 00:01:01 ONLINE
```

### ***Modify LSMs 00:02 and 00:03 Offline***

```
MODIFY LSM (00:02,00:03) OFFLINE
```

### ***Modify LSM 00:01 Online***

```
MOD 00:01 ON
```

### ***Modify LSM 00:01 Offline Immediately***

```
F 00:01 OFF FORCE
```

### ***Initiate Hardware Reconfiguration***

```
MOD CONFIG
```

### ***Add a new SL3000 ACS***

```
MOD CONFIG ADD ACST(SL3000)
```

### ***Add a new SL8500 ACS***

```
MOD CONFIG ADD ACST(SL8500)
```

### ***Delete ACS 01***

```
MOD CONFIG DELeTe ACS(01)
```

### ***Update ACS 01 configuration***

```
MOD CONFIG UPDate ACS(01)
```

## MONITOR Command

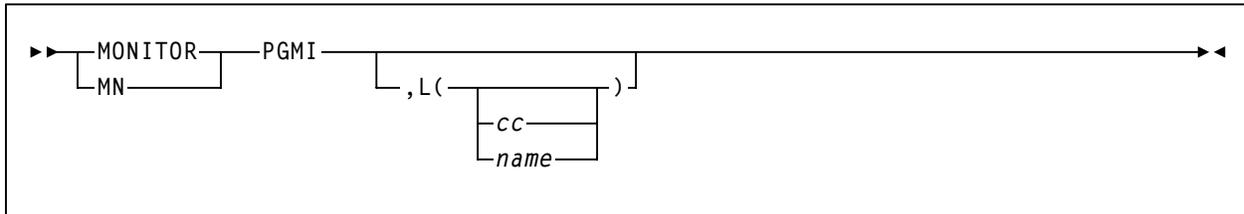
The MONITOR command initiates monitoring of cartridge move requests received from the programmatic interface. Requests that can be monitored include MOUNT, DISMOUNT, MOVE, and EJECT. The output messages can be recorded in the hardcopy log, or displayed on a designated console, or both.



### Notes:

- Use the STOPMN command to terminate monitoring (refer to “Stop Monitoring (STOPMN) Command” on page 219 for details on command syntax and parameters).
- Use the Display MONitor command to display the current monitoring operations (refer to “Display MONitor” on page 105 for details on command syntax and parameters).

### Syntax



### Command Name

#### **MONITOR** or **MN**

initiates the MONITOR command.

### Parameters

#### **PGMI**

specifies that cartridge move requests from the programmatic interface are to be monitored.

#### **L**

identifies the console where the monitoring information is to be displayed. If this parameter is omitted, or is specified without a console ID or console name, the information is displayed on the console that issued the command.

#### *cc*

specifies the console ID. Allowable values are decimal in the range from 00 through 99.

If you specify 00, the information is sent only to the hardcopy log. This may cause duplicated entries in the hardcopy log.

*name*

specifies the console name. **A console name is valid only for MVS/SP 5.2.2 or higher.**

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the MONITOR command.

To monitor volume move requests from the programmatic interface and display the information on this console, the following example applies.

### ***Monitor Volume Move Requests Using This Console***

```
MONITOR PGMI
```

To monitor volume move requests from the programmatic interface and display the information on console ID 51, the following example applies.

### ***Monitor Volume Move Requests Using Console ID 51***

```
MN PGMI, L=51
```

To monitor volume move requests from the programmatic interface and send the information only to the hardcopy log, the following example applies.

### ***Monitor Volume Move Requests Sending the Information to the Log***

```
MONITOR PGMI, L=00
```

## MOUNT Command



**Caution:** The Mount command always positions the tape at load point.

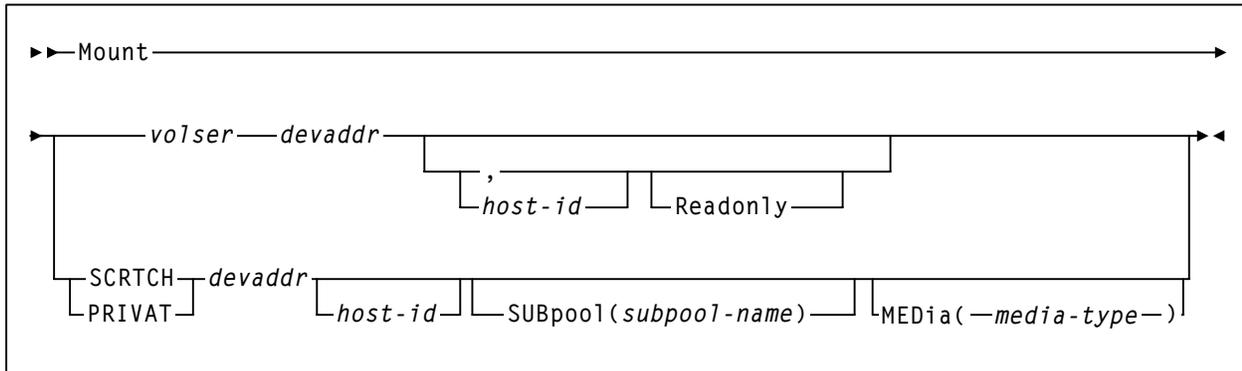
The Mount command directs the robot to mount a volume onto a specified library-controlled transport. Using this command you can:

- mount either a specific volume or a scratch volume
- mount a scratch volume from a specified scratch subpool
- redrive a mount request that was lost by the HSC (because of an LMU IPL, for example)
- use the virtual thumbwheel feature to write-protect a volume by specifying the Readonly parameter
- semi-automate mounts for a disconnected host, in a multi-host environment, by issuing the Mount command from a connected host.

When a volume is mounted using the HSC Mount command, MVS Automatic Volume Recognition recognizes that the volume is pre-mounted if a job requests that volume. However, the volume is not made permanently resident (that is, MVS readily dismounts the volume). To make the volume permanently resident the operator must issue an MVS Mount command.

If MEDia is not entered, the next available scratch is mounted that is compatible with the specified *devaddr*.

## Syntax



### Command Name

#### **Mount**

initiates the Mount command.

### Parameters

#### *volses*

specifies the volume to be mounted.

#### *devaddr*

specifies the device address of the transport on which to mount the volume.

#### *host-id*

indicates that the volume is to be mounted on the device address defined to the specified host (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

#### **Readonly**

indicates that the volume is to be mounted for read-only access.

If you do **not** supply a *host-id* and do specify **Readonly**, a comma must be entered immediately before **Readonly** to indicate the missing operand. For example:

```
MOUNT 123456 0B0, ,READONLY
```

#### **SCRTCH**

specifies a scratch volume is to be mounted.

#### **PRIVAT**

specifies a scratch volume is to be mounted.

#### *devaddr*

specifies the device address of the transport on which to mount the volume.

### *host-id*

indicates that the volume is to be mounted on the device address defined to the specified host (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

### **SUBpool**

indicates the scratch volume is to be taken from a scratch subpool. If this parameter is not specified, the system mounts a scratch volume from subpool 0, which contains all scratch tapes in the ACS including scratch tapes in named subpools.

Refer to “Scratch Subpool Control Statement” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for information on defining scratch subpools.

### *subpool-name*

is the name of the subpool from which the scratch volume is to be taken.



**Note:** Scratch subpool names are specified with the SCRPOOL control statement. Refer to “HSC Control Statements” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for information on the SCRPOOL control statement.

### **MEDIA**

optionally, specifies the type of media for the scratch volume. The specified media must be compatible with the requested *devaddr*.



#### **Notes:**

- If **MEDIA** is not specified, the next scratch cartridge is selected without regard to media type.
- **The SL8500 library supports the T9840A, T9840B, T9840C, T9840D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- **The SL3000 library supports the T9840C, T9840D, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- LTO and SDLT transports are not supported in an MVS environment. These transports are recognized by the HSC but are accessible only to open systems clients using LibraryStation.

### *media-type*

identifies the media type. Valid media types are:

#### **LONGitud**

indicates any Standard or ECART cartridge.

**Standard**

indicates a standard length, 3480 cartridge. It can be read on any longitudinal drives (4480, 4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Data can be written in 36-track mode on a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE transport but cannot be read on an 18-track (4480) drive. Synonyms for this type of cartridge include:

- CST
- MEDIA1
- STD
- 1
- 3480

**ECART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge. It can be used only on a 36-track drive (4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Synonyms include:

- E
- ECCST
- ETAPE
- Long
- MEDIA2
- 3490E

**ZCART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge that provides greater storage capacity than an ECART. It can be used only on a 9490EE drive.

ZCART can be abbreviated as Z.

**DD3**

indicates any DD3A, DD3B, or DD3C (HELical) cartridge. HELical is a synonym for DD3.

**DD3A, DD3B, DD3C**

indicates a helical cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (A, B, or C). DD3A, DD3B, or DD3C can be abbreviated to A, B, or C, respectively.

Types of helical cartridges, along with their associated media capacities, are:

- A — 10GB
- B — 25GB
- C — 50GB.

Data capacity differences between DD3A, DD3B, and DD3C cartridges are related to the length of the tape in the cartridge, not to the recording density of the data.

**STK1**

indicates any T9840 cartridge.

**STK1R**

indicates a T9840 cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (R). STK1R can be abbreviated to R.

T9840 cartridge media capacities are 20GB (T9840A and T9840B), 40GB (T9840C), or 75GB (T9840D).

**STK2**

indicates any T9940 cartridge.

**STK2P**

indicates a T9940 data cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (P). STK2P can be abbreviated to P.

T9940 cartridge media capacities are 60GB (T9940A) or 200GB (T9940B).

**LTO-10G**

indicates an LTO 10GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-35G**

indicates an LTO 35GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-50G**

indicates an LTO 50GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-100G**

indicates an LTO 100GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-200G**

indicates an LTO 200GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400G**

indicates an LTO 400GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400W**

indicates an LTO Generation 3 WORM cartridge.

**LTO-800G**

indicates an LTO 800GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-800W**

indicates an LTO Generation 4 WORM cartridge.

**SDLT**

indicates an SDLT 160GB cartridge.

**SDLT-2**

indicates an SDLT 125GB cartridge.

**SDLT-S1**

indicates an SDLT Generation S1 cartridge.

**SDLT-S2**

indicates an SDLT Generation S2 cartridge.

**SDLT-S3**

indicates an SDLT Generation S3 cartridge.

**SDLT-S4**

indicates an SDLT Generation S4 cartridge.

**SDLT-4**

indicates an SDLT Generation 4 cartridge.

**T10000T1 or T1**

indicates a full-capacity 500GB T10000A or 1TB T10000B cartridge. T10000T1 can be abbreviated as **T1**.

**T10000TS or TS**

indicates a smaller-capacity 120GB T10000A or 240GB T10000B cartridge. T10000TS can be abbreviated as **TS**.

**Examples**

The following examples illustrate the use of the Mount command.

***Mount a Scratch Volume on Device B04 Defined to This Host***

```
MOUNT SCRTCH B04
```

***Mount VOLSER 016288 on Device Address 585***

```
M 016288 585
```

***Mount VOLSER EDU027 on Device Address 0B0***

```
M EDU027 0B0 MVS1
```

***Mount VOLSER EDU076 on Device 0B0 Allowing Read-Only Access***

```
M EDU076 0B0,,READONLY
```

***Mount a Scratch Volume From Subpool SIGHT1 on Device address B04***

```
M SCRTCH B04 SUB(SIGHT1)
```

***Mount a Scratch Volume From Default Subpool on Device B04***

```
M SCRTCH B04
```

***Mount an STD Scratch Volume on Devaddr C90***

```
MOUNT SCRTCH C90 MEDIA(STD)
```

***Mount an SD-3 Scratch Volume on Devaddr C91***

```
MOUNT SCRTCH C91 MED(DD3A)
```

## MOVE Command

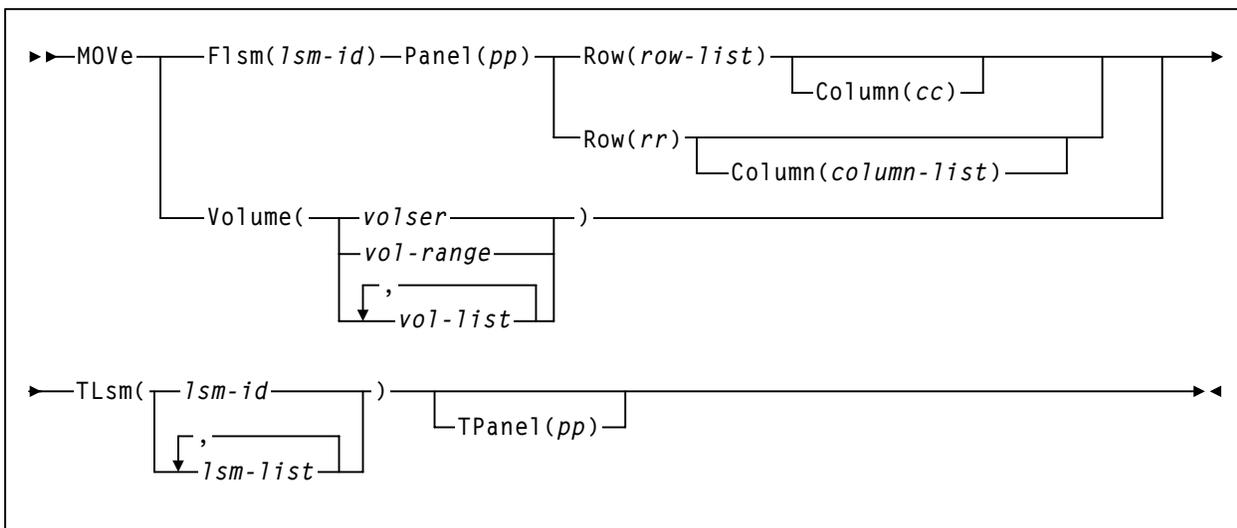
The MOVE command directs the robot to move cartridges to selected destinations within the same LSM, or to any other LSM within an ACS. Cartridges can be moved to allow better control over tape activity, or to prepare for hardware changes (for example, adding a cartridge drive to an LSM).

You can identify the cartridges to be moved by location (LSM, panel, row, column), or by VOLSERS. The command accepts a single VOLSER, a range of VOLSERS, or a list of VOLSERS. A maximum of 300 volumes can be moved with one MOVE command.

### Notes:

- Movement between cells in the same panel is prohibited.
- If every available cell in the destination location is filled before all specified cartridges are moved, the command terminates. The HSC issues a console message to inform the operator that there are no more “free cells available” at the specified destination.
- A frozen panel cannot be the target of a move. Cartridges will not be moved to frozen panels in a target LSM.

### Syntax



### Command Name

**MOVE**  
initiates the MOVE command.

## Parameters

### **Flsm**

specifies the “from” LSM; that is, the LSM where the cartridges are currently being stored. This parameter is used to move volumes by location.

### **lsm-id**

identifies the “from” LSMid. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

Only one *lsm-id* can be specified.



**Note:** The *Flsm* parameter and the *Volume* parameter cannot be specified in the same command.

### **Panel**

identifies the panel containing the cartridges to be moved. This parameter is required when the *Flsm* parameter is specified.



**Note:** Ranges and lists of panels are not valid.

### **pp**

is the panel number. Allowable values for *pp* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type:

- LSM Models 4410 and 9310 PowderHorn
  - 0-11 for outer wall panels
  - 12-19 for inner wall panels.
- LSM Model 9360 WolfCreek
  - 0-2 for Model 9360-050
  - 0-3 for Model 9360-075
  - 0-4 for Model 9360-100.
- LSM Model 9740 TimberWolf
  - 0-2 (panel 3 is included if the optional cells are present).
- LSM Model SL3000 StreamLine library
  - Access Expansion Module (AEM required) - panels 0-1 and 22-23 are located on both ends of the library
  - Base Drive Module (BDM required) - panels 12-13
  - Drive Expansion Module (DEM optional) - panels 10-11 are located left of the BDM
  - Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM optional) - panels 2 - 9 are located left of the BDM or optional DEM

- Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM optional) - panels 14 -21 are located right of the BDM
- Parking Expansion Module (PEM) - **Dual Robots only** - panel numbers equate to the same panel numbers of the CEM it replaces, depending on its location right or left of the BDM.



**Note:** The SL3000 library has static panels numbers starting with the left-most back panel (panel 0) and ending with the right-most front panel (panel 23) on a fully-configured library. The panel numbering starts with the BDM, the only required module (panels 12 and 13), and works outward to the left and to the right.

- LSM Model SL8500 StreamLine
  - base library — 2-10
  - With one expansion panel — 2-18 (expansion panel is 8-15)
  - With two expansion panels — 2-26 (expansion panels are 8-23)
  - With three expansion panels — 2-34 (expansion panels are 8-31).

### Row

identifies one or more rows containing the cartridges to be moved. This parameter is required when the Flsm parameter is specified.

**Note:** Ranges of rows are not valid.

*rr*

is the row number. Allowable values for *rr* and *row-list* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type:

- LSM Models 4410 and 9310 PowderHorn
  - 0-14 for outer wall panels
  - 0-5 and 8-14 for inner wall panels.
  - The maximum list is 4 rows (approximately 100 cells).
- LSM Model 9360 WolfCreek - 0-41 (all models). The maximum list is 20 rows (approximately 100 cells).
- LSM Model 9740 TimberWolf - 0-41 on panels 0, 2, and 3; and 36-41 on panel 1.



### Notes:

- Column 3 on panel 2 allows row entries only on rows 28-41.
- The cells on panel 3 are optional.

- LSM Model SL3000 StreamLine Library
  - Access Expansion Modules - panels 0-1 and 22-23
  - Base Drive Module (BDM) - panel 12 (back)
    - 12-47 with 8 drives installed
    - 23-47 with 16 drives installed
    - 35-47 with 24 drives installed
  - Base Drive Module (BDM) - panel 13 (front)
    - 0-51 on the front panel
  - Drive Expansion Module (DEM) - panel 10 (back)
    - 12-47 available with 8 drives installed
    - 23-47 available with 16 drives installed
    - 35-47 available with 24 drives installed
    - No rows available with 32 drives installed
  - Drive Expansion Module (DEM) - panel 11 (front)
    - 0-51 available on the front panel
  - Cartridge Expansion Modules (CEM) - all panels
    - 0-51 available on both front and back panels
  - Parking Expansion Module (PEM) - all panels
    - 0-51 available on the back and front panels
- LSM Model SL8500 StreamLine
  - 0-26 on a standard panel
  - 0-12 on a short panel (panels 4, 6-7)
  - 6-12 on a PTP panel (panel 5)

**Row/Column Parameter Restrictions:**

- A list of rows **cannot** be specified if a list of columns is specified.
- A list of columns **cannot** be specified if a list of rows is specified.

**Column**

identifies one or more columns containing cartridges to be moved. This parameter is optional. If not specified, then all the columns will be moved for the designated rows.



**Note:** Ranges of columns are not valid.

*cc*

is the column number. Allowable values for *cc* and *column-list* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type:

- LSM Models 4410 and 9310 PowderHorn
  - 0-23 for outer wall panels
  - 0-19 for inner wall panels.

- LSM Model 9360 WolfCreek - 0-5 (all models).
- LSM Model 9740 TimberWolf - 0-3 for panels 0, 2, and 3 (if the optional cells are present); 0-2 for panel 1.
- LSM Model SL3000 StreamLine Library
  - Access Expansion Module (AEM) panels 0-1 and 22-23
  - Base Drive Module (BDM) - panel 12 (back)
    - 0 is available, if a CEM or DEM is added to the left of the BDM
    - 1-5 available for rows 12-47 with 8 drives installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 23-47 with 16 drives installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 35-47 with 24 drives installed.
  - Base Drive Module (BDM) - panel 13 (front)
    - 0 available with expansion to the left of the BDM
    - 5 available for rows 39-51 with expansion to the right of the BDM
    - 1-3 available for rows 0-38 with a CAP installed
    - 1-4 available for rows 39-51 with a CAP installed
    - 1-3 not available for rows 9-16 with optional window/Operator panel installed.
  - Drive Expansion Module (DEM) - panel 10 (back)
    - 0 is available with expansion to the left of the DEM
    - 1-5 available for rows 12-47 with 8 drives installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 23-47 with 16 drives installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 35-47 with 24 drives installed
    - No columns available with 32 drives installed.
  - Drive Expansion Module (DEM) - panel 11 (front)
    - 0 available with expansion to the left DEM
    - 1-3 available for rows 0-38 with a CAP installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 39-51, with a CAP installed
    - 1-3 not available for rows 9-16 with a window installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 0-51 on a standard DEM panel.
  - Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM) - panels 2, 4, 6, 8 (back)
    - 0 available with expansion to the left
    - 1- 5 available on the standard CEM back panel.
  - Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM) - panels 3, 5, 7, 9 (front)
    - 0 available with expansion to the left
    - 1-3 available for rows 0-38 with a CAP installed
    - 1-4 available for rows 39-51, with a CAP installed
    - 1-4 available on the standard CEM front panel.
  - Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM) - panels 14, 16, 18, 20 (back)
    - 0-5 available on the standard CEM back panel.

- Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM) - panels 15, 17, 19, 21 (front)  
0-3 available for rows 0-38 with a CAP installed  
0-5 available for rows 39-51 with a CAP installed  
0-5 available on the standard CEM front panel.
- Parking Expansion Module (PEM) - left side PEM  
3-5 available on the back and front panels with a second robot installed.
- Parking Expansion Module (PEM) - right side PEM  
0-2 available on the back and front panels with a second robot installed.
- LSM Model SL8500 StreamLine - 0-1 for all panel types.

#### Row/Column Parameter Restrictions:

- A list of rows **cannot** be specified if a list of columns is specified.
- A list of columns **cannot** be specified if a list of rows is specified.



**Note:** All SL3000 columns are numbered 0-5 (left to right).

#### Volume

specifies up to 300 volumes to be moved. This parameter is used to move specific volumes regardless of their location within an LSM.

#### *volser* or *vol-range* or *vol-list*

identifies a single VOLSER, a VOLSER range, or a list of VOLSERS in any combination.



**Note:** The Flsm parameter and the Volume parameter cannot be specified in the same command.

#### TLsm

identifies up to sixteen “to” LSMs; that is, the destination LSMs where the cartridges are being moved. This parameter is required.

If more than one TLsm is specified, the cell locations in the first LSM listed are filled, then the cells in the second LSM listed, and so forth, until either all designated cartridges have been moved, or all designated cells are filled. The “from” LSM (Flsm) can be included in the TLsm list.

**Note:** Ranges of TLsms are not valid.

#### *lsm-id* or *lsm-list*

identifies one or more “to” LSMids. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

### LSMid Conditions:

- All TLsm *lsm-ids* must contain the same ACSid.
- If the Flsm parameter is specified, the TLsm *lsm-ids* must specify the same ACSid as the Flsm parameter.
- If the Volume parameter is specified, the TLsm *lsm-ids* must be in the same ACS as the specified volumes.

### TPanel

identifies the panel where the cartridges are to be moved. This parameter is optional.

**Note:** Ranges and lists of TPanels are not valid.

### *pp*

is the panel number. Allowable values for *pp* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type:

- LSM Models 4410 and 9310 PowderHorn
  - 0-11 for outer wall panels
  - 12-19 for inner wall panels.
- LSM Model 9360 WolfCreek
  - 0-2 for Model 9360-050
  - 0-3 for Model 9360-075
  - 0-4 for Model 9360-100.
- LSM Model 9740 TimberWolf
  - 0-2 (panel 3 is included if the optional cells are present).
- LSM Model SL3000 StreamLine library -
  - Base Drive Module (BDM required) - panels 12-13
  - Drive Expansion Module (DEM optional) - panels 10-11 are located left of the BDM
  - Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM optional) - panels 2-9 are located left of the BDM or optional DEM
  - Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM optional) - panels 14-21 are located right of the BDM
  - Parking Expansion Module (PEM) - **Dual Robots only** - The panel number (front and back) equates to the same panel number of the CEM it replaces, depending on its location right or left of the BDM.



**Note:** The SL3000 library has static panels numbers starting with the left-most back panel (panel 0) and ending with the right-most front panel (panel 23) on a fully-configured library. The panel numbering starts with the BDM (panels 12 and 13), the only required module, and works outward to the left and to the right.

- LSM Model SL8500 StreamLine
  - base library — 2-10
  - With one expansion panel — 2-18 (expansion panel is 8-15)
  - With two expansion panels — 2-26 (expansion panels are 8-23)
  - With three expansion panels — 2-34 (expansion panels are 8-31).

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the MOVE command.

### ***Move the Cartridges in LSM 00:01, Panel 9, Rows 2-4 to LSM 00:00***

```
MOVE FLSM(00:01) PANEL(9) ROW(2,3,4) TLSM(00:00)
```

### ***Move VOLSERs 123456 and 111000-111032 to Panel 18 in LSM 00:00***

```
MOV V(123456,111000-111032) TL(00:00) TP(18)
```

### ***Move Cartridges in SL8500 LSM 00:01, Panel 6, Row 13, Column 0 to LSM 00:03***

```
MOVE FLSM(00:01) PANEL(6) ROW(13) COLUMN(0) TLSM(00:03)
```

## OPTION Command and Control Statement

The OPTion command and control statement is used to set or change the following general purpose options of the HSC:

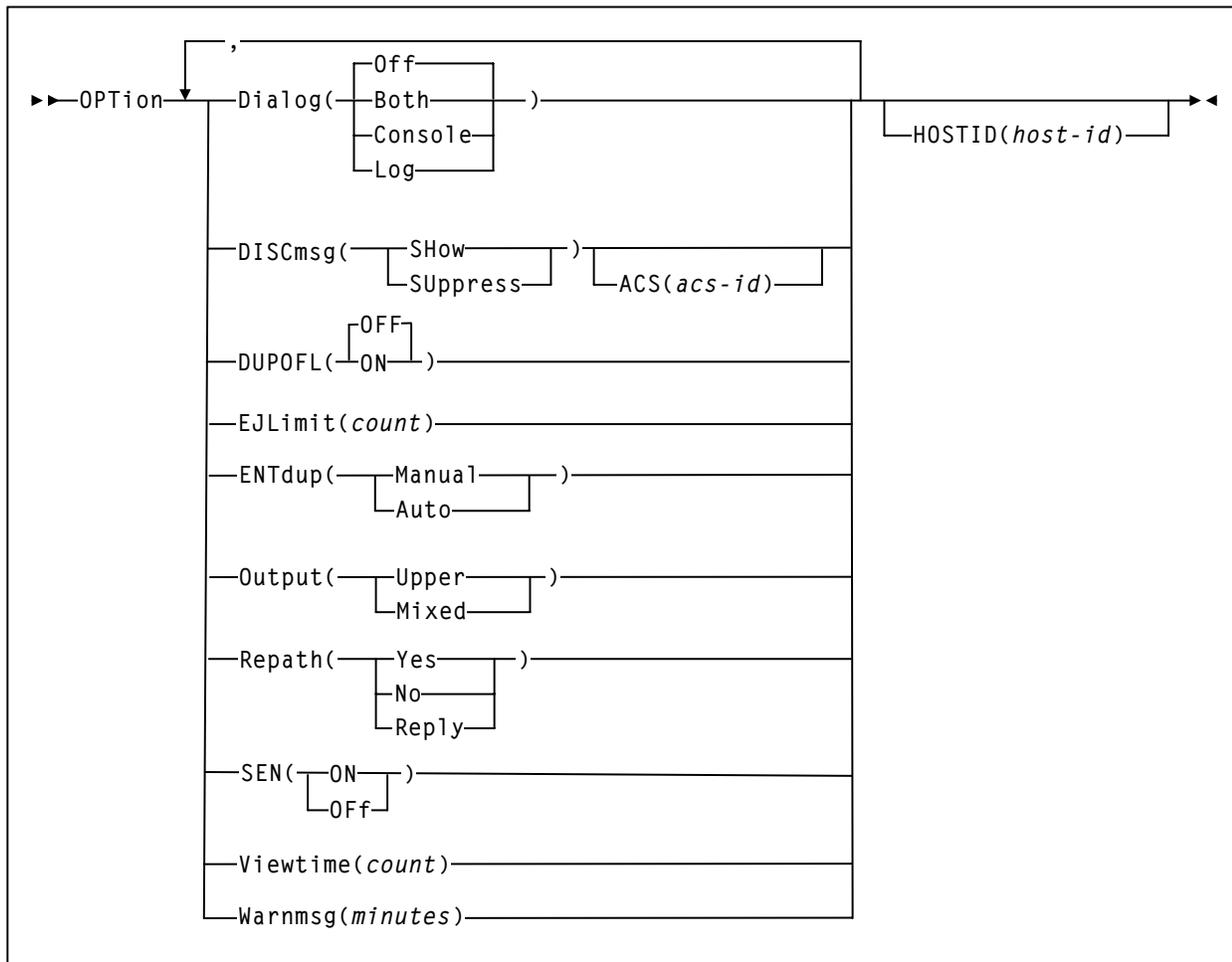
- whether HSC messages are written to the operator console and/or system log during HSC termination
- suppressing the “ACS acs-id is disconnected” (SLS1664A) message.
- allows the duplicate VOLSER process to continue when the VOLSER being entered into the CAP shows in the CDS that it exists in an ACS that is disconnected or in an LSM that is offline.
- the maximum number of cartridges that are allowed to be specified on the EJECT command
- whether or not the HSC prompts the operator when an enter operation finds a duplicate VOLSER in the control data set but cannot locate the cartridge in the ACS
- uppercase or mixed case character output for messages displayed on the console
- how the HSC processes volumes associated with a specific CAP for an eject operation, when the CAP becomes unavailable before the eject completes
- enabling the Significant Event Notification (SEN) facility
- the viewing time permitted during the VIEW command. Refer to “VIEW Command” on page 239 for details on command syntax and parameters.
- the duration between scratch depletion warning messages.

OPTion can be specified by an operator as an operator command or by a systems programmer as a PARMLIB control statement.



**Note:** Use the Display OPTion command to display the current OPTion settings (refer to “Display OPTion” on page 106 for details on command syntax and parameters).

## Syntax



### Command Name

#### OPTion

initiates the OPTion command or control statement.

### Parameters

#### Dialog

allows HSC messages to be written to the operator console and/or the system log. These messages indicate that the HSC is waiting for an active task to complete before the HSC terminates. The initial Dialog value is set by the EXEC statement during HSC startup.

#### Off

specifies that messages are not to be written. **Off is the default value for the HSC if the Dialog parameter is not specified on the EXEC statement.**

**Both**

specifies that messages are written to the system log and the operator console.

**Console**

specifies that messages are written to the operator console only.

**Log**

specifies that messages are written to the system log only.

**DISCmsg**

specifies whether or not the “ACS *acs-id* is disconnected” message (SLS1664A) is displayed for the specified ACS.

This option is useful when an ACS has been added to the LIBGEN in advance to provide for future expansion. Entering DISCmsg allows the user to turn off the display for those ACSs that will not be connected until later.

**SHow**

Displays the “ACS *acs-id* is disconnected” message (SLS1664A) for an ACS. This is the initial value.

**SUppress**

Suppresses the “ACS *acs-id* is disconnected” message (SLS1664A) for an ACS.

**ACS**

optionally, specifies the ACS for which the command applies. If ACS is not specified, the DISCmsg setting entered (**Show** or **Suppress**) applies to all ACSs.

***acs-id***

indicates the hexadecimal ACSid value (00-FF).

If **ACS** is not specified, all ACSs are affected.

**DUPOFL**

allows the duplicate VOLSER process to continue when the VOLSER being entered into the CAP shows in the CDS that it exists in an ACS that is disconnected or in an LSM that is offline.

**OFF**

disables the duplicate VOLSER process. This is the default.

**ON**

enables the duplicate VOLSER process.

**EJLimit**

indicates the maximum number of cartridges that can be specified on one Eject command.

**count**

specifies the limit. Allowable values are 1 through 9999. The initial value for the HSC is 100.

**ENTdup**

specifies whether the HSC prompts the operator when an enter operation finds a duplicate VOLSER in the control data set, but cannot locate the cartridge in the ACS.

When someone attempts to enter a cartridge with a VOLSER that duplicates an entry in the control data set, the HSC attempts to locate the original cartridge. The ENTdup option determines how the HSC responds when the cartridge

- is not in its home cell,
- is not selected, and
- is not errant.

**Auto**

instructs the HSC to delete the cartridge in the control data set and allow the enter to continue.

**Manual**

instructs the HSC to issue a console message when a duplicate VOLSER is entered. The message prompts the operator to decide whether the HSC should delete the cartridge in the control data set and allow the enter to continue, or eject the duplicate cartridge. **Manual** is the initial value for the HSC.

**Output**

specifies whether the output messages are displayed on the console in uppercase or mixed case.

**Upper**

specifies uppercase. **Upper** is the initial value for the HSC.

**Mixed**

specifies mixed case.

**Repath**

determines how the HSC processes volumes associated with a specific CAP for an Eject command, when the CAP is drained or becomes unavailable before the eject operation completes.

**Yes**

automatically causes the unavailable CAP's volumes to be associated with another CAP running under the same Eject command. **Yes** is the initial value for the HSC.

**No**

causes failure messages to be generated for volumes associated with the unavailable CAP. The Eject command continues processing the next volume.

**Reply**

generates a message which prompts the operator to determine how the volumes are processed. The operator must respond either “Y” or “N,” where

**Y**

causes the unavailable CAP’s volumes to be associated with another CAP running under the same Eject command.

**N**

causes failure messages to be generated for volumes associated to the unavailable CAP. The Eject command continues processing the next volume.

**SEN**

enables or disables the Significant Event Notification (SEN) facility. Refer to the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for more information about the SEN.

**ON**

enables the SEN.

**OFF**

disables the SEN.

**Viewtime**

specifies the length of time in seconds the system is to hold an LSM camera in one location when the View command is issued (refer to “VIEW Command” on page 239 for details on command syntax and parameters).

***count***

is the number of seconds. Allowable values for count are decimal in the range from 5 through 120. The initial value for the HSC is 10 seconds.

**Notes:**

- The View command allows the user to override the OPTION Viewtime setting for a single viewing operation.
- An SMF record (subtype 8) is written when the View command is issued to document robot activity.

**Warnmsg**

sets the number of minutes between scratch depletion messages.

***minutes***

specifies the number of minutes. Allowable values for minutes are 1 through 65535. The initial value is 5 minutes.

## HOSTID

used in PARMLIB control statements to identify the host associated with the OPTion command. This allows you to restrict certain startup options to a specific host.

If this parameter is not specified, the command options are applied to each host that accesses PARMLIB.

### *host-id*

is the host identifier (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).



**Note:** If the *host-id* does not match the host executing the command, a message is issued and the command is not processed.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the OPTion command and control statement.

To change the default viewing time on this host to twenty seconds when the VIEW command is issued, the following example applies.

### ***Change Viewing Time to 20 Seconds***

```
OPTION VIEWTIME(20)
```

To instruct the HSC to issue a console message when someone attempts to enter a duplicate VOLSER into an LSM and the original cartridge cannot be located, the following example applies.

### ***Prompt the Operator for Duplicate VOLSERS***

```
OPT ENT(MANUAL)
```

### ***Write HSC Messages to System Log During HSC Termination***

```
OPT DIALOG(LOG)
```

### ***Set a Maximum Limit of 250 Cartridges Allowed for EJECT Command***

```
OPT EJLIMIT(250)
```

***Instruct HSC to Display Messages in Mixed Case***

```
OPT O(M)
```

***Specifying Multiple Options in PARMLIB for Host HSC0***

```
OPT ENT(M),O(M),V(5),HOSTID(HSC0)
```

***Set the Scratch Depletion Warning Message Interval***

```
OPT WARNMSG(10)
```

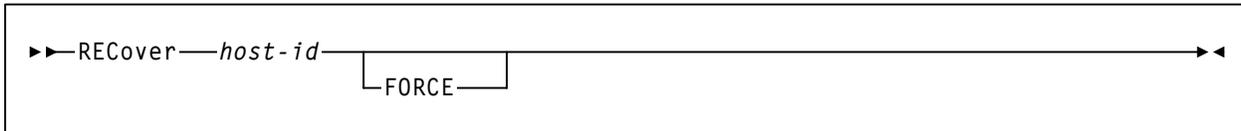
***Enable the Significant Event Notification Facility***

```
OPT SEN(ON)
```

## RECOVER Host Command

The RECOVER command allows the operator to recover the resources owned by a host that becomes inoperable. Cross-host recovery frees library resources that are owned by the failing host, and transfers that ownership to the recovering host. These resources include CAPs, which can be activated by only one host at a time, and volumes, which are assigned to a particular host while moving or mounting.

### Syntax



### Command Name

#### RECOVER

initiates the RECOVER command.

### Parameters

#### *host-id*

identifies the host for which to perform recovery (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

#### FORCE

FORCE indicates that recovery is to be performed for the specified host even if the HSC has not detected that the host is inactive. This allows recovery of a host when the active flag for that host is still on.



**Caution: Use the FORCE operand with great caution. Make sure the specified host is inactive before specifying this operand.**

Forced recovery of an active host requires that the HSC on that host be recycled. All database activity is prohibited on the recovered host, which can cause unexpected abends when tape activity occurs, or when the HSC is recycled on that host.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the RECOVER command.

### ***Recover the Resources That Are Currently Owned By Host HSC1***

```
RECOVER HSC1
```

### ***Forcibly Recover the Resources That Are Owned By Host HSC2***

```
REC HSC2 FORCE
```

## RELease CAP Command



**Caution: Use this command as a last resort. Make sure the CAP is not being used by another active process.** Issuing the RELease command on an active CAP may cause the process using the CAP to receive errors.

The RELease command is used to free an allocated CAP making it available for other processes. A CAP can be left allocated to a host if the HSC on that host terminated without performing recovery while the CAP was active. The RELease command enables the operator to make the CAP available again without requiring a recycle of all HSCs sharing the control data set.

The command can be issued from any connected host. The operator is required to confirm the release operation by responding to a console message.

### Syntax

```
►►—RELease—cap-id—————▶◀
```

### Command Name

#### **RELease**

initiates the RELease command.

### Parameters

#### *cap-id*

identifies the CAP to be released. The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is one of the following:

#### **00**

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, standard 21-cell CAP or the right-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For 9740 LSMs, fixed rack 14-cell or 10-cell removable magazine CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a left-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, the CAP consists of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

#### **01**

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, left-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines

- For SL8500 LSMs, this is an optional CAP consisting of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 02

- priority CAP (PCAP) for a 4410 or 9310 LSM enhanced
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 03, 04, 05

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM/DEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 06

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is the only required BDM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 07, 08, 09, 0A

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 0B

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a right-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines



**Notes:** If SL3000 library CAPs are not present, the HSC reports them as “not installed.” This keeps CAP addresses from changing as new CAPs are added.

- Refer to “How to Specify a CAPid” on page 24 for a complete explanation of CAPid formats.

## Example

The following example illustrates the use of the RELease command and the operator intervention required to release CAPid 00:01:00.

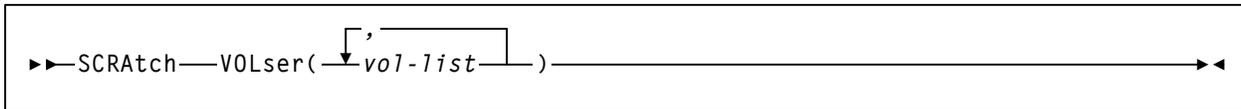
### **Release CAPid 00:01:00**

```
REL 00:01:00
... RELEASE CAP 00:01:00 REQUESTED: REPLY N TO CANCEL, OR Y TO CONTINUE
Y
```

## SCRATCH Command

The SCRATCH command allows you to scratch a volume, a list of volumes, or a range of volumes. SCRATCH is supported by the UUI interface, which provides plain text, structured XML, and comma separated values (CSV) output formats. See “UUI Command Support” on page 32 for more information.

### Syntax



### Command Name

#### SCRATCH

initiates the SCRATCH command.

### Parameters

#### VOLSER

specifies the list of volume serial numbers to be added to the scratch list(s).

#### (vol-list)

vol-list specifies the volume serial numbers; this can be a single volume, a list of volume serial numbers, ranges of volume serial numbers, or combinations of lists with ranges delimited by commas. The entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

The maximum number of volume serial numbers that can be specified is 100.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the SCRATCH command.

```
SCRATCH VOLSER(A1B1C1,A1B1C3)
SCRATCH VOLSER(A1B1C4-A1B1C6)
SCRATCH VOLSER(A2B1C1,A2B1C4,A2B1C6-A2B1C9)
```

## SEnTER Command

The SEnTER command is used to schedule an enter on a CAP that is currently allocated to an eject operation. Up to a full CAP of cartridges can be entered when the CAP becomes available. The SEnTER command must be issued from the host that has the CAP allocated for ejecting cartridges.

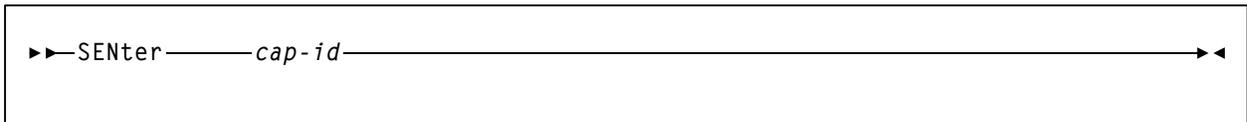
When the HSC message instructs you to empty the CAP:

1. Open the CAP.
2. Remove the ejected cartridges.
3. Place the cartridges to be entered into the CAP.
4. Close the CAP.



**Note:** Drive enters (i.e., from a CAP to a transport) are not supported.

### Syntax



### Command Name

#### SEnTER

initiates the SEnTER command.

### Parameters

#### *cap-id*

specifies the CAP to use to enter the cartridge. One CAP must be specified and it must be allocated to the host issuing the SEnTER command.

The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is one of the following:

#### 00

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, standard 21-cell CAP or the right-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For 9740 LSMs, fixed rack 14-cell or 10-cell removable magazine CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a left-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, the CAP consists of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 01

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, left-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines
- For SL8500 LSMs, this is an optional CAP consisting of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 02

- priority CAP (PCAP) for a 4410 or 9310 LSM enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 03, 04, 05

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM/DEM CAPs each consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 06

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is the only required BDM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

## 07, 08, 09, 0A

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13 cell removable magazines.

## 0B

For SL3000 LSMs, this is a right-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines



**Notes:** If SL3000 library CAPs are not present, the HSC reports them as “not installed.” This keeps CAP addresses from changing as new CAPs are added.

- Refer to “How to Specify a CAPid” on page 24 for a complete explanation of CAPid formats
- SL3000 and SL8500 libraries do not contain a PCAP.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the SENter command to enter cartridges using a CAP that is performing enter processing.

### ***Enter Cartridges Into a Standard CAP (CAPid 00:00)***

```
SEN 00:00
```

### ***Enter Cartridges Into an LSM With Multiple CAPs (LSMid 00:01)***

```
SEN 00:01:00
```



## Example

The following example illustrates the use of the SRVlev command to bring the HSC to the FULL service level.

### *Operate the HSC at the FULL Service Level*

```
SRV FULL
```

## Stop Monitoring (STOPMN) Command

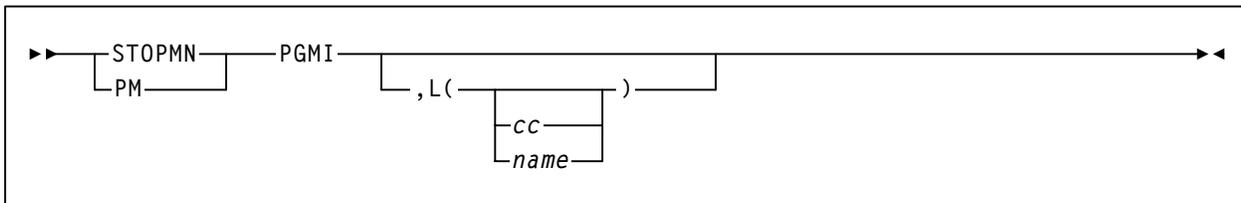
The STOPMN command terminates monitoring of cartridge move requests received from the programmatic interface.



### Notes:

- Use the MONITOR command to initiate monitoring (refer to “MONITOR Command” on page 185 for details on command syntax and parameters).
- Use the Display MONitor command to display the current monitoring operations (refer to “Display MONitor” on page 105 for details on command syntax and parameters).

### Syntax



### Command Name

#### STOPMN or PM

initiates the STOPMN command.

### Parameters

#### PGMI

specifies that monitoring of cartridge move requests from the programmatic interface is to be terminated.

#### L

identifies the console where the monitoring information is being displayed. If this parameter is omitted or if L= is specified without a console ID or console name, the monitoring being displayed on the console that issued the command is terminated.

#### cc

specifies the console ID. Allowable values are decimal in the range from 00 through 99.

Specifying 00 stops information from being sent explicitly to the hardcopy log.

#### name

specifies the console name. **A console name is valid only for MVS/SP 5.2.2 or higher.**

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the STOPMN command.

To terminate monitoring of volume move requests from the programmatic interface that is being displayed on this console, the following example applies.

### ***Stop Monitoring on this Console***

```
STOPMN PGMI
```

To terminate monitoring of volume move requests from the programmatic interface that is being displayed on console ID 51, the following example applies.

### ***Stop Monitoring on Console ID 51***

```
PM PGMI ,L=51
```

To terminate the information about monitoring of volume move requests from the programmatic interface from being sent to the hardcopy log, the following example applies.

### ***Stop Sending Monitoring Information to the Hardcopy Log***

```
STOPMN PGMI ,L=00
```

## SWITCH Command

The SWitch command can be used to *manually* reverse the roles of the master and standby LMUs or Library Controllers (LCs). The following configurations support switching:

- dual LMU
- SL8500 dual Library Controller (LC).

In a dual LMU environment, this command initiates an IPL in the master LMU, causing the current standby LMU to become the master LMU. If the former master LMU completes the IPL successfully, it then assumes the role of the standby LMU.

In a dual LC configuration for a multiple SL8500 library ACS, the SWitch command issues a request to the LMU to switch the library LCs by library ID.



**Caution: Issue the Display Acs command** (see page 66) **BEFORE** you enter the **SWitch command** to ensure the library to switch includes an assigned TCP/IP address or host name for the standby. **If it does not, DO NOT switch the library because doing so causes the HSC to lose communication with the library.**



Notes:

- **For this release, only the SL8500 library is supported for dual LC switching.**
- For an *automatic* switch to occur (for example, from LCA to LCB or visa versa), the LC must fail. In this case, if there is a network/communication problem with LCA, the HSC goes into network recovery for the LCA connection(s). If you cannot recover or fix the connection, issue the SWitch command to switch LCA to LCB manually.
- Before you issue the SWitch command, if the library is partitioned, be aware of other host software groups (ACSLs, HSC, ELS) using other partitions in the same library.

### Syntax

```
Switch [Acs acs-id(1) LIBrary lib-id]
```

**Note:**

(1) ACS *acs-id* is optional in a single-ACS environment; it is required in a multiple-ACS environment.

### Command Name

#### SWitch

initiates the SWitch command.

## Parameters

### Acs

indicates that an ACSid is being specified. **This parameter is required for a multiple-ACS configuration or if an *acs-id* is specified.**

### *acs-id*

identifies the ACS that must switch the current active connection as standby and bring the standby connection online as active.



### Notes:

- In a single ACS configuration, Acs *acs-id* is optional and defaults to ACS 00.
- If the *acs-id* defaults to 00 or is specified with no other parameters, then all of the ACS's active connections are switched to standby, and the standby connections are switched to active.

### LIBrary

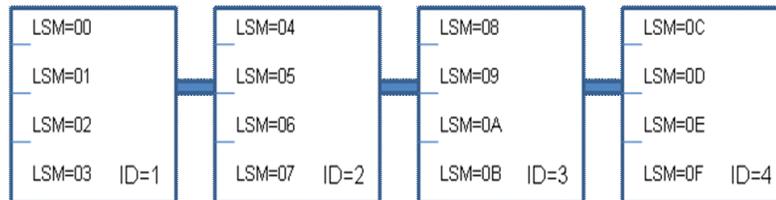
specifies the SL8500 library ID for the connection switch. **This parameter applies only to the SL8500 library.**

### *lib-id*

specifies the library ID from 1-9 or A-G.

For an SL8500 four library ACS cluster, each library is assigned an ID from 1 to 4, as shown below.

### SL8500 ACS



An ACS can have up to 16 library connections with A and B Library Controller (LC) connections. For the initial release, only one library (preferred to be ID 1) can have A and B LC connections. The other libraries can have a single LC connection. Of course, each LC can handle dual TCP/IP (2B and 2A). Table 5 shows the LSM ID correlation to Library ID:

**Table 5. Library ID/LSM ID Association**

Library ID	LSM ID Range	Library ID	LSM ID Range
1	00-03	9	20-23
2	04-07	A	24-27
3	08-0B	B	28-2B
4	0C-0F	C	2C-2F
5	10-13	D	30-33
6	14-17	E	34-37
7	18-1B	F	38-3B
8	1C-1F	G	3C-3F

### Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the SWITCH command

#### **Switch Control of ACS 00 to the Standby ACS**

```
SWITCH ACS 00
```

#### **Switch Control of ACS 00 to the Standby Library**

```
SWITCH ACS 00 LIB 1
```

## TRACE Command

The TRace command enables or disables tracing of events for selected HSC components. The GTF GTRACE facility is used to perform the tracing.

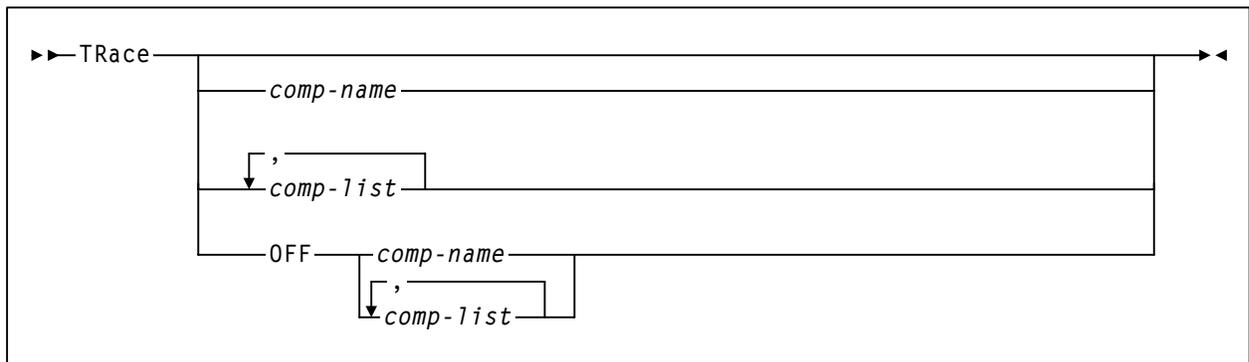
To create GTF output for the event, GTF must be started before the HSC TRace command is issued.



### Notes:

- Refer to “Generalized Trace Facility” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for information about using the Generalized Trace Facility (GTF) Tracing (GTRACE).
- TRace is supported by the UI interface, which provides plain text, structured XML, and comma separated values (CSV) output formats. See the *NCS/VTCS XML Guide* for more information.

## Syntax



## Command Name

### TRace

initiates the TRace command. If you do not specify any other parameters, the status of all component tracing is displayed.

## Parameters

### OFF

turns off tracing for the specified component(s).

***comp-name* or *comp-list***

specifies one or more HSC components for which tracing is to be enabled or disabled. If a list of component names is specified, separate the identifiers with blank spaces or commas.



**Notes:**

- When tracing is enabled or disabled for one or more HSC components, the status of all component tracing is displayed.
- By default, all TRace command output goes to GTF. For example, to trace an LMU and send the output to GTF, issue TR LMU. No other parameters are necessary.
- To trace the Recovery component, you must also trace the SERvice component (a service is used to trace Recovery).
- The LS component displays in message SLS0068I only if LibraryStation has been initialized.

Valid component names are listed below; uppercase letters denote the minimum abbreviations allowed.

<b>ALloc</b>	allocation volume lookup
<b>AScomm</b>	address space communications
<b>CAP</b>	CAP common
<b>COntfigur</b>	configuration control
<b>Database</b>	database server
<b>HComm</b>	host communications
<b>Initiali</b>	initialization
<b>Lmu</b>	LMU server
<b>LS</b>	LibraryStation
<b>Mount</b>	mount/dismount
<b>Operator</b>	operator commands
<b>Recovery</b>	recovery (Note: must also trace SERvice)
<b>SERvice</b>	services
<b>Utilitie</b>	utilities
<b>UII</b>	Unified User Interface
<b>Volume</b>	volume/cell
<b>VTcs</b>	VTCS

<b>Wto</b>	WTO server
<b>XMI</b>	XML interface

### **Examples**

The following examples illustrate the use of the TRace command and provide sample outputs.

## ***Display the Status of All HSC Component Tracing***

```
TRACE
Sample Output
... Current TRACE Status: xxx
ALLOC          NOT Traced
ASCOMM        NOT Traced
CAP           NOT Traced
CONFIGURATION  NOT Traced
DATABASE      NOT Traced
INIT/TERM     NOT Traced
LMU DRIVER    NOT Traced
LS            NOT Traced
MOUNT/DISMOUNT NOT Traced
OPERATOR      NOT Traced
RECOVERY      NOT Traced
SERVICE      NOT Traced
UTILITIES     NOT Traced
VOLUME/CELL   NOT Traced
WTO SERVER    NOT Traced
XML           NOT Traced

HOST COMMUNICATIONS NOT Traced
```

## Trace the Host Communications Components

```
TRACE ALLOCATI HCOMM
```

```
Sample Output
```

```
... Current TRACE Status: xxx  
ALLOC                NOT Traced  
ASCOMM              NOT Traced  
CAP                 NOT Traced  
CONFIGURATION       NOT Traced  
DATABASE            NOT Traced  
INIT/TERM           NOT Traced  
LMU DRIVER          NOT Traced  
LS                  NOT Traced  
MOUNT/DISMOUNT     NOT Traced  
OPERATOR            NOT Traced  
RECOVERY            NOT Traced  
SERVICE            NOT Traced  
UTILITIES           NOT Traced  
VOLUME/CELL         NOT Traced  
WTO SERVER          NOT Traced  
XML                 NOT Traced
```

```
HOST COMMUNICATIONS Traced
```

## Turn Off Tracing for Host Communications Component

```
TR OFF HCOMM

Sample Output

... Current TRACE Status: xxx
ALLOC                NOT Traced
ASCOMM              NOT Traced
CAP                 NOT Traced
CONFIGURATION       NOT Traced
DATABASE            NOT Traced
INIT/TERM           NOT Traced
LMU DRIVER          NOT Traced
LS                  NOT Traced
MOUNT/DISMOUNT      NOT Traced
OPERATOR            NOT Traced
RECOVERY            NOT Traced
SERVICE            NOT Traced
UTILITIES           NOT Traced
VOLUME/CELL         NOT Traced
WTO SERVER          NOT Traced
XML                 NOT Traced

HOST COMMUNICATIONS NOT Traced
```

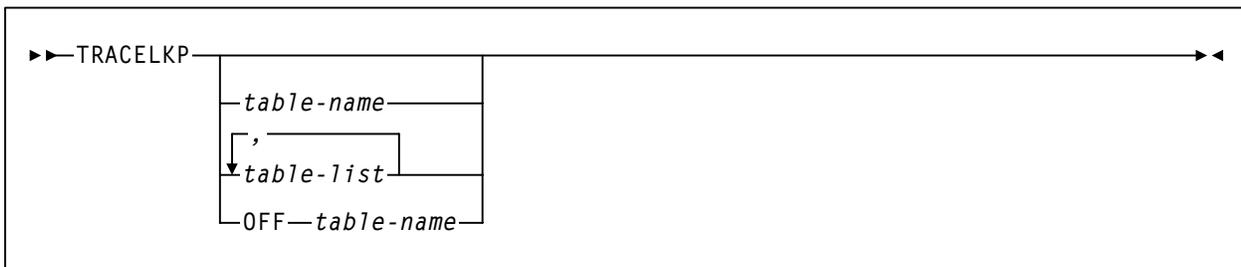
## TRACELKP Command

The TRACELKP command enables or disables tracing of LOOKUP events associated with HSC definition files. The GTF GTRACE facility is used to perform the tracing.

To create GTF output for the event, GTF must be started before the HSC TRACELKP command is issued.

**Note:** Refer to “Generalized Trace Facility in the HSC System Programmer’s Guide for information about using the Generalized Trace Facility (GTF) Tracing (GTRACE).

### Syntax



### Command Name

#### TRACELKP

initiates the TRACELKP command. If you do not specify any other parameters, the status of all event tracing is displayed.

### Parameters

#### OFF

turns off tracing for the specified component(s).

#### *table-name* or *table-list*

specifies one or more LOOKUP definition files for which tracing is to be enabled or disabled. If a list of event names is specified, separate the identifiers with blank spaces or commas.



#### Note:

- When LOOKUP tracing is enabled or disabled for one or more files, the status of all LOOKUP tracing is displayed.
- All LOOKUP tracing output goes to GTF.

Valid LOOKUP table names are listed below; uppercase letters denote the minimum abbreviations allowed.

<b>TAPEREQ</b>	TAPEREQ (TREQDEF) table
<b>VOLATTR</b>	VOLATTR (VOLDEF) table
<b>UNITATTR</b>	UNITATTR (UNITDEF) table
<b>LMUPATH</b>	LMUPATH (LMUPDEF) table
<b>MVCPOOL</b>	MVCPOOL (MVSPDEF) table
<b>MGMTCLAS</b>	MGMTCLAS (MGMTDEF) table
<b>STORCLAS</b>	STORCLAS (STORDEF) table
<b>LOOKFAIL</b> *	Trace the LOOKUP failures in detail

\* If LOOKFAIL is specified, the detail failure trace records are output for all events that are ON.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the TRACELKP command.

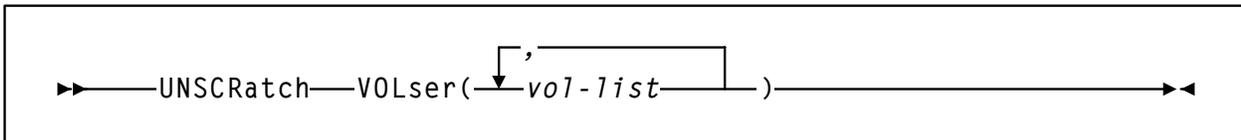
```
TRACELKP table-name
```

```
TRACELKP OFF
```

## UNSCRatch Command

The UNSCRatch command allows you to unscratch a volume, a list of volumes, or a range of volumes. UNSCRatch is supported by the UUI interface, which provides plain text, structured XML, and comma separated values (CSV) output formats. See “UUI Command Support” on page 32 for more information.

### Syntax



### Command Name

#### UNSCRatch

initiates the UNSCRatch command.

### Parameters

#### VOLser

specifies the list of volume serial numbers to be deleted from the scratch list(s).

#### (vol-list)

vol-list specifies the volume serial numbers; this can be a single volume, a list of volume serial numbers, ranges of volume serial numbers, or combinations of lists with ranges delimited by commas. The entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

The maximum number of volume serial numbers that can be specified is 100.

### Example

The following example illustrates the use of the UNSCRatch command.

```
UNSCRATCH VOLSER(A3B1C1,A3B1C3)
UNSCRATCH VOLSER(A3B1C4-A3B1C6)
UNSCRATCH VOLSER(A4B1C1,A4B1C4,A4B1C6-A4B1C9)
```

## User Exit (UEXIT) Command and Control Statement

HSC user exits permit you to invoke your own processing routines at particular points during HSC processing. User exits controlled by the HSC are loaded at HSC initialization from the load library identified by DDNAME SLSUEXIT.

The following user exits are managed by the HSC and invoked using the UEXIT command:

- SLSUX03
- SLSUX05
- SLSUX06
- SLSUX14
- SLSUX15.

The remainder, with the exception of User Exit 07, which is no longer supported, are managed by the SMC. Refer to the *NCS User Exit Guide* for more information.

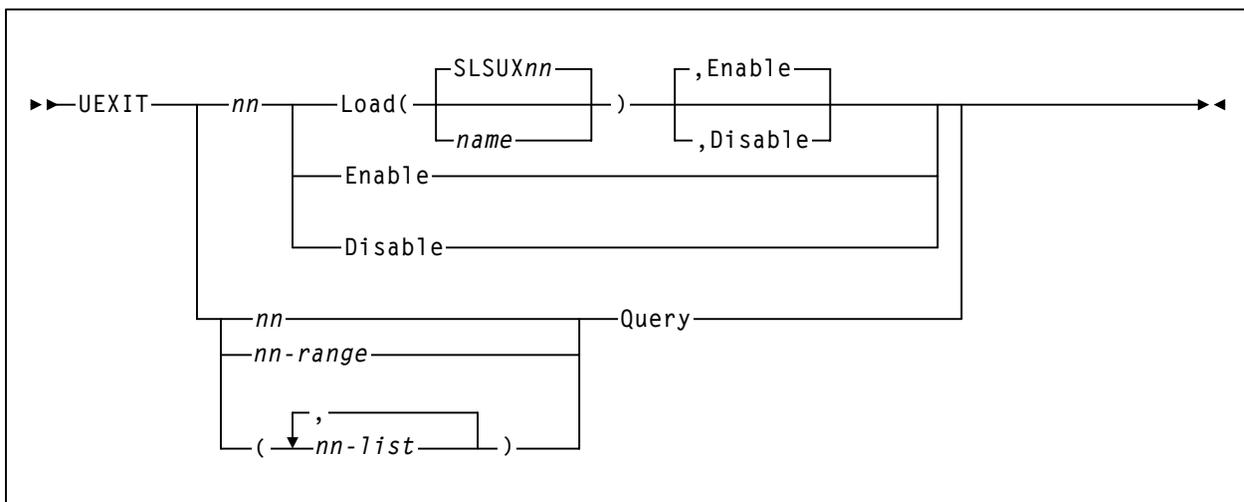
This command provides a way for you to define how the HSC processes your user exits by allowing you to start the HSC with a user exit disabled and then enable the exit at any time the HSC is operational. If an exit does not perform as expected, make the necessary changes and load it again.



**Note:** User Exit 03 is enabled at HSC initialization. The UEXIT command cannot be used to enable, disable, or reload that exit.

The UEXIT command optionally allows you to provide unique user exit load module names and to create different versions of an exit that can be run at different times (for example, day shift versus night shift). The load modules are contained in a user-defined load module library described at HSC startup.

### Syntax



## Command Name

### UEXIT

initiates the UEXIT command and control statement.

## Parameters

### *nn*

specifies the user exit number. Refer to the *NCS User Exit Guide* for user exit numbers.

### Load

causes the specified module to be loaded into storage.

### SLSUX*nn*

specifies the default name for the user exit. If *name* is not specified, then the default name is used when the HSC loads the module into storage.

### *name*

specifies the name of the module to be used for this exit. This is the entry point name which is used to link-edit the load module.

### Enable

indicates that upon completion of the command the specified exit is considered as being active. Enable is the default.

### Disable

indicates that upon completion of the command the specified exit is considered as being inactive.

### Enable

specifies that the most current module for the specified user exit (*nn*) is to be enabled. This parameter may also be specified with the Load parameter.

### Disable

specifies that the most current module for the specified user exit (*nn*) is to be disabled. This parameter may also be specified with the Load parameter.

### *nn* or *nn-range* or *nn-list*

can be used with the Query parameter to specify a single user exit, a range of exits, or a list of exits.

When specifying a range of user exit numbers, the beginning number must be separated from the ending number by a hyphen.

**Example:** (04-09)

In a list of user exits, the user exit numbers must be separated by commas and the list must be enclosed in parentheses.

**Example:** (01,04,10)

### Query

requests the status of all the currently loaded versions of the specified user exit number(s). A display of user exit status may be specified for a single user exit, a range of exits, or a list of exits.

### Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the UEXIT command and control statement.

#### ***Load User Exit 03 - Enabled***

```
UEXIT 03 LOAD
```

#### ***Load User Exit 06 - Disabled***

```
UEXIT 06 LOAD(SLSUX12),DISABLE
```

#### ***Display Status of All Currently Loaded Versions of User Exit 05***

```
UEXIT 05 Q
```

#### ***Display Status for a List of User Exits***

```
UEXIT (03,05,06,14) Q
```

#### ***Display Status for a Range of User Exits***

```
UEXIT 14-15 Q
```

In a JES3 environment, if you are not certain of where HSC user exits are invoked (Global, Local, or both), always issue the UEXIT command on all systems with the JESPLEX.

## VARY Station Command

The Vary command places the specified ACS(s) or stations online, offline, or standby to the HSC from which the command is issued.

In an ACS, a connection between the host CPU and an LMU is referred to as a “station.” Each station appears to the host CPU as a 3278-2 device and is physically connected to a port on a supported 3174, 3274 or compatible terminal controller. Each LMU can contain a maximum of 16 stations. Depending on the number of host CPUs connected to the ACS, each host CPU can have either one or several stations to each LMU.

The online state causes the host software to allocate and use the connection (terminal controller ports) of the specified ACS(s) or station(s) for sending work to the LMU. When an ACS is varied online, any offline stations are varied online, and connection definitions are automatically refreshed. Then, if the user executes the SET SLISTATN utility and cycles the HSC, the new configuration takes effect.

The standby state means that the ACS(s) or station(s) is available only for limited communication with the standby LMU and will not be used for robotics, cartridge movement, or library status requests.

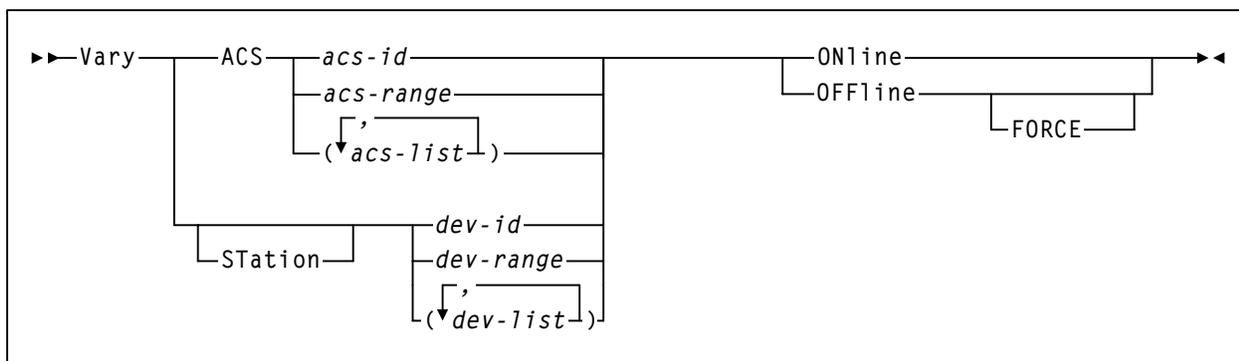
The offline state causes the host software to stop using and then to deallocate the device connection for the specified ACS(s) or station(s). When an ACS is varied offline, the HSC purges all outstanding requests.

The Vary command has an optional parameter to force the offline state immediately. When the last station between the host and the ACS is forced offline, all outstanding requests are purged. The ACS-to-HSC is now in disconnected mode.



**Note:** To get a station online or offline to MVS, issue the MVS VARY *device* ONLINE/OFFLINE command.

### Syntax



## Command Name

### Vary

initiates the Vary command.

## Parameters

### ACS

specifies the ACS to be made online, offline, or standby to this host.

#### *acs-id* or *acs-range* or *acs-list*

identifies one or more ACSs to be varied. Each *acs-list* element can be either a single ACSid or an ACSid range. Ranges are separated by a dash. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

### STation

optionally, specifies the stations to be made online, offline, or standby to this host.

#### *dev-id* or *dev-range* or *dev-list*

identifies the stations to an LMU to be varied. Each *dev-list* element can be either a single device number or a range of device numbers. Ranges are separated by a dash. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

Each device number identifies a device attached to the host issuing the command. Allowable values are 000-FFF.

### ONline

specifies that the stations are to be made online or standby to this host.

### OFFline

specifies that the stations are to be made offline to this host.

### FORCE

optionally, indicates that the stations are to be made offline immediately. The FORCE option can be specified when the HSC is at the full service level or is past the base service level going to the full service level.

This parameter applies only to the OFFline operand.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the Vary command.

### ***Vary Station 028, 029, 030, and 032 Online***

```
VARY STATION (028-030,032) ONLINE
```

### ***Vary Station 028 Offline Immediately***

```
V 028 OFFLINE FORCE
```

### ***Vary ACSs 01 through 03 Online***

```
V ACS 01-03 ON
```

## VIEW Command

If video monitors are attached to the LSM, the View command enables the operator to visually inspect internal components of the LSM, using the robot's cameras.



### Notes:

- **The View command is not supported for the SL3000 or SL8500 libraries, they do not contain lights or cameras.**
- The View command requires exclusive use of the robot. This command impacts library performance because the robot is not available for other work while it is viewing a component.
- An SMF record is written each time the View command is issued (if subtype 8 is specified in PARMLIB) to document robot activity.

The following components can be viewed using this command:

- CAP cells
- cartridge storage and diagnostic cells
- drives
- playground cells
- pass-thru port (PTP) cells.



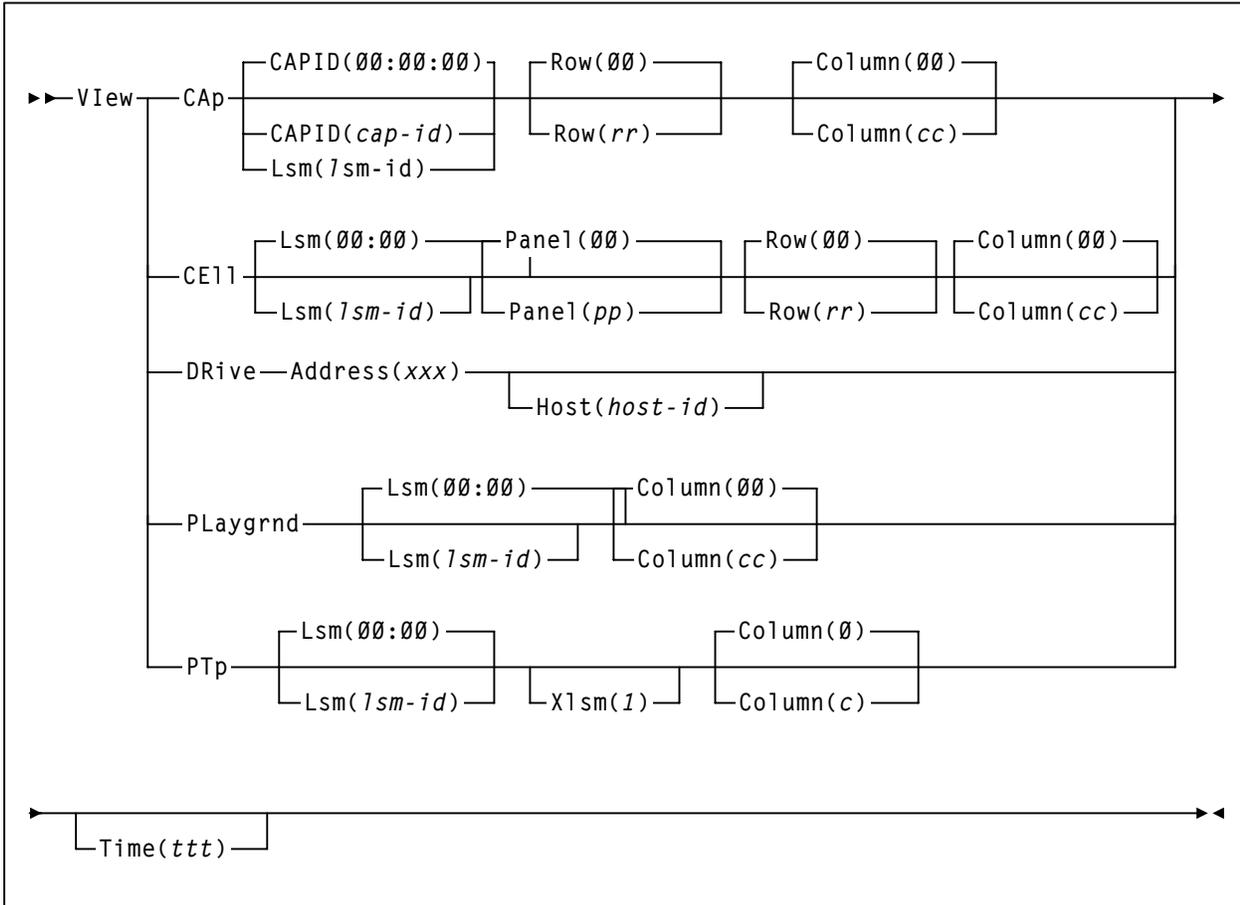
**Note:** StorageTek does not provide video monitors that can be attached to an LSM. Each LSM is equipped with ports which allow third-party video monitors to be connected to the robot's vision system.

An HSC message is displayed on the system console when the robot is in position to view the specified component. This notifies the operator that the camera is ready, and provides the following information about the component being viewed:

- ACSid
- LSM number
- camera number
- number of seconds the camera is to remain focused
- component name
- component location.

The message remains highlighted on the console until either the time interval expires, or the operator responds to the message. The operator is not required to respond to the message, but by doing so, can cancel the View command and resume normal operations.

## Syntax



### Command Name

#### View

initiates the View command.

### Parameters

#### CAP

indicates that a camera is to focus on a cell location in a CAP. If you do not specify the CAPID or Lsm parameter, the command defaults to CAPid 00:00:00. If you do not specify the Row and Column parameters, the command defaults to row 0, column 0.

#### CAPID

identifies one CAP in an LSM that contains multiple CAPs.

#### cap-id

specifies the CAP that you want to view. The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is one of the following:

**00**

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, standard 21-cell CAP or the right-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For 9740 LSMs, fixed rack 14-cell or 10-cell removable magazine CAP

**01**

For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, left-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP

**02**

priority CAP (PCAP) for a 4410 or 9310 LSM enhanced CAP.

Refer to “How to Specify a CAPid” on page 24 for a complete explanation of CAPid formats.

**Lsm**

identifies an LSM that contains a single CAP.

***lsm-id***

specifies the single CAP that you want to view. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

**Row**

identifies a row number in a CAP. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to row 0.

***rr***

specifies the row number. Allowable values for *rr* are decimal and are specific to the CAP type. Rows are numbered starting at the top of the CAP as follows:

- 0-2 for a standard CAP
- 0-39 for an enhanced CAP (for both magazine-style CAPs)
- 0-19 for a WolfCreek CAP (20-cell magazine-style CAP)
- 0-29 for a WolfCreek optional CAP (30-cell CAP)
- 0-13 for a 9740 TimberWolf CAP (0-9 for the removable magazine)
- 0 for a PCAP.

**Column**

identifies the column number within a CAP. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to column 0.

***cc***

specifies the column number. Allowable values for *cc* are decimal and are specific to the CAP type. Columns are numbered starting at the left of the CAP row as follows:

- 0-6 for a standard CAP
- 0 for magazine-style CAPs and PCAPs
- 3 for 9740 fixed or removable magazine CAP.

**Cell**

indicates that a camera is to focus on a cartridge storage or diagnostic cell in an LSM panel. If you do not specify the *Lsm*, *Panel*, *Row*, and *Column* parameters, the command defaults to LSM 00:00, panel 0, row 0, column 0.

**Lsm**

identifies an LSM. If you do not specify this parameter, the command defaults to LSMid 00:00.

***lsm-id***

specifies the LSMid. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

**Panel**

designates the LSM panel number containing the cartridge storage or diagnostic cell that the camera is to view. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to panel 0.

***pp***

specifies the panel number. Allowable values for *pp* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type:

- 0-19 for LSM Models 4410 and 9310 PowderHorn
- 0-2 for WolfCreek LSM Model 9360-050
- 0-3 for WolfCreek LSM Model 9360-075
- 0-4 for WolfCreek LSM Model 9360-100
- 0-3 for TimberWolf LSM Model 9740.

**Row**

identifies a row number in an LSM panel. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to row 0.

***rr***

specifies the row number. Allowable values for *rr* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type. Rows are numbered starting at the top of the panel as follows:

- 0-14 for outer wall panels (Models 4410 and 9310)
- 0-5 and 8-14 for inner wall panels (Models 4410 and 9310)
- 0-41 for WolfCreek panels (all models)
- For TimberWolf (Model 9740), 0-41 on panels 0, 2, and 3; 36-41 on panel 1.

**Notes:**

- Column 3 on panel 2 allows row entries only on rows 28-41.
- The cells on panel 3 are optional.

**Column**

identifies the column number within a panel. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to column 0.

***cc***

specifies the column number. Allowable values for *cc* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type. Columns are numbered starting at the left of the panel as follows:

- 0-23 for outer wall panels (Models 4410 and 9310)
- 0-19 for inner wall panels (Models 4410 and 9310)
- 0-5 for WolfCreek panels (all models).
- For TimberWolf (Model 9740), 0-3 for panels 0, 2, and 3 (if the optional cells are present); 0-2 for panel 1.

**DRive**

indicates that a camera is to focus on a cartridge drive. You **must** designate the Address parameter to identify the drive. The Host parameter enables you to view a drive defined to another host.

**Address**

specifies the address of a cartridge drive. The Address parameter defines the operating system address of the transport you want to inspect.

*xxx*

is the hexadecimal address of the transport. The HSC verifies that the specified address matches the LIBGEN-defined address for the given host.

**Host**

gives meaning to the Address parameter when the drive being inspected is not defined in the LIBGEN for the host from which the VIEw command is being entered.

If you do not specify the Host parameter, the HSC checks the LIBGEN-defined drive list for the host from which you entered the VIEw command. If the address is found in the drive list, the command is executed.

*host-id*

identifies the host where the transport is defined.

**PLaygrnd**

indicates that a camera is to focus on a playground cell. If the Lsm and Column parameters are not specified, the command defaults to the relative location of the cell in the playground in LSM 00:00.

**Note:** The playground is a reserved area of cells where the robot deposits cartridges that it finds in its hands during LSM initialization. Normal LSM initialization recovery processing moves cartridges from the playground cells to either their home cells or their intended destinations, but under abnormal circumstances cartridges may be left in playground cells. Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide for the location of the playground in the LSM.

**Lsm**

identifies an LSM. If you do not specify this parameter, the command defaults to LSMid 00:00.

*lsm-id*

specifies the LSMid. The format of an LSMid is AA:LL, where AA is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and LL is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

**Column**

identifies the relative location of the cell in the playground for a panel. If you do not specify this parameter, the command defaults to the relative location of the cell in the playground.

***cc***

specifies the relative location of the cell in the playground. Allowable values for *cc* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type. (Some LSMs have multiple playground cells and some have only one.)

**PTp**

indicates that a camera is to focus on a pass-thru port (PTP) cell. You can designate a particular PTP using the *Lsm* and *Xlsm* parameters, a particular cell using the *Column* parameter, and specify the viewing time using the *Time* parameter.

**Lsm**

identifies an LSM. If you do not specify this parameter, the command defaults to *LSMId 00:00*.

***lsm-id***

specifies the *LSMId*. The format of an *LSMId* is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the *ACSid* (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

**Xlsm**

identifies the PTP to be inspected by defining the LSM that shares the PTP.

Each PTP is identified by the two LSMs it services. The *Lsm* parameter identifies which robot is used to view the PTP, and the *Xlsm* parameter identifies the LSM that shares the PTP. This distinction is necessary whenever an LSM contains more than one PTP.

If *Xlsm* is not specified for an LSM containing two or more PTPs, the HSC examines the *LIBGEN* and selects the first PTP defined there for *Lsm(lsm-id)*.

***ll***

specifies the LSM number of the adjacent LSM. Values for *ll* are hexadecimal in the range from 00-17. (The ACS is identified in the *Lsm* parameter.)

## Column

identifies the column number within a panel. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to column 0.

*c*

specifies the column number. Allowable values for *c* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type:

- 0-3 for LSM Models 4410, 9310, and 9740
- 0 or 1 for WolfCreek LSMs (all models).

**Note:** When the PTP is being shared by two different LSM types, the upper limit of the column value is determined by the LSM with the smaller PTP capacity.

## Time

defines the number of seconds you want the camera to remain focused on the specified element.

*ttt*

is the number of seconds. Values for *ttt* are decimal. The minimum time is 5 seconds and the maximum is 120 seconds. (Leading zeroes are not required.)

If Time is not specified, or if the specified *ttt* value is not within the allowable range, Time defaults to the value established by the OPTion Viewtime=*nnn* command. If OPTion Viewtime has not been entered, then Time defaults to ten seconds.



**Note:** Excessive use of long viewing time intervals may have a negative impact on performance. The robot is not available to perform other tasks while it is viewing a component.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the VView command.

### ***View CAP Cell - LSM 00:00, Row 00, Column 00, for 5 Seconds***

```
VIEW CAP TIME(5)
```

### ***View CAP Cell - LSM 00:01, Row 00, Column 05, for 5 Seconds***

```
VI CA L(00:01) C(05) T(5)
```

### ***View a Drive Defined To This Host***

```
VI DR A(411)
```

### ***View a Drive Defined to JES2 Host HSC1***

```
VI DR A(413) H(HSC1)
```

### ***From LSM 00:01, View Column 00 of the PTP That Connects to LSM 00:02***

```
VI PT L(00:01) X(02)
```

### ***From LSM 00:00, View Column 01 of the PTP That Connects to LSM 00:02***

```
VI PT X(02) C(01)
```

## WARN Command

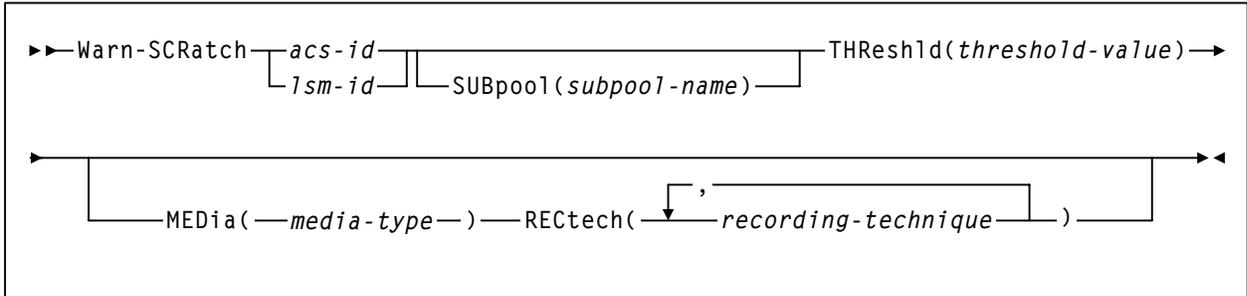
The Warn command is used to establish the scratch warning threshold values. Setting a threshold value causes a warning message to be issued when the number of scratches falls below the specified threshold. The following list shows how the Warn command allows you to specify parameters that can narrow the scope of the threshold values you set:

- If SUBpool, MEDia, and RECtech are not supplied, the threshold value applies to scratch volumes for the specified ACS or LSM.
- If SUBpool is supplied, but MEDia and RECtech are not, the threshold value applies to scratch volumes for the specified subpool and ACS or LSM.
- If MEDia and RECtech are supplied, but SUBpool is not, the threshold value applies to scratch volumes for the specified media type, recording technique, and ACS or LSM.
- If SUBpool, MEDia, and RECtech are supplied, the threshold value applies to scratch volumes for the specified subpool, media type, and recording technique in the ACS or LSM.



**Note:** Use the Display THReshld command to display the current Warn threshold values (refer to “Display THReshld” on page 125 for details on command syntax and parameters).

## Syntax



### Command Name

#### Warn

initiates the Warn command.

### Parameters

#### SCRatch

indicates that scratch threshold values are to be set.

#### *acs-id*

specifies the ACS on which to alter threshold values. The ACSid is a hexadecimal value from 00-FF.

#### *lsm-id*

specifies the LSM on which to alter threshold values. The LSMid is comprised of the ACSid and the LSM number. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (hexadecimal 00-FF) and *LL* is the LSM number (hexadecimal 00-17).

#### SUBpool

indicates that you want to designate a subpool. This parameter is optional.

#### *subpool-name*

is the name of the subpool.

**Note:** Scratch subpool names are specified with the SCRPOOL control statement. Refer to “Scratch Subpool Control Statement” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for information on the SCRPOOL control statement.

## **THReshd**

indicates that you want to alter the threshold value.

### ***threshold-value***

specifies the minimum number of scratch volumes that are allowed before the HSC issues a warning message. Allowable threshold values are decimal in the range from 0 through 99,999.

The warning interval values are preset at five minutes.



**Note:** When the number of scratch volumes in an ACS or LSM drops below the threshold value, the system issues a warning message.

## **MEDia**

optionally, specifies the media type for the threshold. When MEDia is specified, RECtech must also be specified.



### **Notes:**

- **The SL8500 library supports the T9840A, T9840B, T9840C, T9840D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- **The SL3000 library supports the T9840C, T9840D, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- LTO and SDLT transports are not supported in an MVS environment. These transports are recognized by the HSC but are accessible only to open systems clients using LibraryStation.

### ***media-type***

identifies the media type. Valid media types are:

#### **LONGitud**

indicates any Standard or ECART cartridge.

#### **Standard**

indicates a standard length, 3480 cartridge. It can be read on any longitudinal drives (4480, 4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Data can be written in 36-track mode on a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE transport but cannot be read on an 18-track (4480) drive. Synonyms for this type of cartridge include:

- CST
- MEDIA1
- STD
- 1
- 3480

**ECART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge. It can be used only on a 36-track drive (4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Synonyms include:

- E
- ECCST
- ETAPE
- Long
- MEDIA2
- 3490E

**ZCART**

indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge that provides greater storage capacity than an ECART. It can be used only on a 9490EE drive.

ZCART can be abbreviated as Z.

**DD3**

indicates any DD3A, DD3B, or DD3C (HELical) cartridge. HELical is a synonym for DD3.

**DD3A, DD3B, DD3C**

indicates a helical cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (A, B, or C). DD3A, DD3B, or DD3C can be abbreviated to A, B, or C, respectively.

Types of helical cartridges, along with their associated media capacities, are:

- A — 10GB
- B — 25GB
- C — 50GB.

Data capacity differences between DD3A, DD3B, and DD3C cartridges are related to the length of the tape in the cartridge, not to the recording density of the data.

**STK1**

indicates any T9840 cartridge.

**STK1R**

indicates a T9840 cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (R). STK1R can be abbreviated to R.

T9840 cartridge media capacities are 20GB (T9840A and T9840B), 40GB (T9840C), or 75GB(T9840D).

**STK2**

indicates any T9940 cartridge.

**STK2P**

indicates a T9940 data cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (P). STK2P can be abbreviated to P.

T9940 cartridge media capacities are 60GB (T9940A) or 200GB (T9940B).

**LTO-10G**

indicates an LTO 10GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-35G**

indicates an LTO 35GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-50G**

indicates an LTO 50GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-100G**

indicates an LTO 100GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-200G**

indicates an LTO 200GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400G**

indicates an LTO 400GB capacity cartridge.

**LTO-400W**

indicates an LTO Generation 3 WORM cartridge.

**SDLT**

indicates an SDLT 160GB cartridge.

**SDLT-2**

indicates an SDLT 125GB cartridge.

**SDLT-S1**

indicates an SDLT Generation S1 cartridge.

**SDLT-S2**

indicates an SDLT Generation S2 cartridge.

**SDLT-S3**

indicates an SDLT Generation S3 cartridge.

**SDLT-S4**

indicates an SDLT Generation S4 cartridge.

**SDLT-4**

indicates an SDLT Generation 4 cartridge.

**T10000T1 or T1**

indicates a full-capacity 500GB T10000A or ITB T10000B cartridge. T10000T1 can be abbreviated as **T1**.

### **T1000TS or TS**

indicates a smaller-capacity 120GB T10000A or 240GB T10000B cartridge. T10000TS can be abbreviated as **TS**.

### **RECtech**

optionally, specifies the recording technique for the threshold. RECtech indicates the method used to record data tracks on the tape surface. When RECtech is specified, MEDia must also be specified.

You can enter a list of recording techniques, but they must be separated by commas.



### **Notes:**

- A list specifies a generic pool from which a selection is made. There is no implied priority.
- If neither MEDia nor RECtech is specified, the threshold value applies to the accumulated total of scratch cartridges.
- **The SL8500 library supports the T9840A, T9840B, T9840C, T9840D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**
- **The SL3000 library supports the T9840C, T9840D, LTO, SDLT, T10000A, and T10000B media types and recording techniques.**

### *recording-technique*

identifies the recording technique. Valid recording techniques are:

#### **LONGItud**

indicates any device that uses longitudinal recording.

#### **18track**

indicates a 4480 transport.

#### **36track**

indicates a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE transport (any device that records in 36-track mode).

#### **36Atrack**

indicates a 4490 (Silverton) transport.

#### **36Btrack**

indicates a 9490 (Timberline) transport.

#### **36Ctrack**

indicates a 9490EE transport.

#### **HELical**

indicates a device using helical recording.

**DD3**

indicates a device using helical recording.

**STK1R**

indicates any 9840 transport.

**STK1R34**

indicates any 3490E-image 9840 transport.

**STK1R35**

indicates any 3590-image 9840 transport.

**STK1RA**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RA34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RA35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840A transport.

**STK1RB**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RB34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RB35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB4**

indicates a 3490E-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RAB5**

indicates a 3590E-image T9840A or T9840B transport.

**STK1RC**

indicates a 3490E or 3590-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RC34**

indicates a 3490-image T9840C transport.

**STK1RC35**

indicates a 3590-image T9840C transport.

**STK2P**

indicates any 9940 transport.

**STK2P34**

indicates any 3490E-image 9940 transport.

**STK2P35**

indicates any 3590-image 9940 transport.

**STK2PA**

indicates a T9940A transport.

**STK2PA34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940A transport.

**STK2PA35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940A transport.

**STK2PB**

indicates a T9940B transport.

**STK2PB34**

indicates a 3490E-image T9940B transport.

**STK2PB35**

indicates a 3590-image T9940B transport.

**T1A**

indicates any T10000 transport.

**T1AN**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000 transport.

**T1A34**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000 transport.

**T1A35**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000 transport.

**T1AE**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000 transport.

**T1AE34**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000 transport.

**T1AE35**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000 transport.

**T1B**

indicates any T10000B transport.

**T1BN**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1B34**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000B transport.

**T1B35**

indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE34**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000B transport.

**T1BE35**

indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000B transport.



**Note:** If neither MEDia nor RECTech is specified, the threshold value applies to the accumulated total of scratch cartridges.

**Examples**

The following examples illustrate the use of the Warn command.

***Set the Threshold Value at 2000 for ACS 00***

```
WARN SCRATCH 00 THRESHLD(2000)
```

***Set the Threshold Value at 1000 for LSM 00:01***

```
W SCR 00:01 THR(1000)
```

***Set the Threshold Value for Subpool SCRATCH001 at 400 in LSM 00:01***

```
W SCR 00:01 SUBPOOL(SCRATCH001) THR(400)
```

***Set the Threshold Value for Subpool SCRATCH002 at 3210 in ACS 00***

```
W SCR 00 SUB(SCRATCH002) THR(3210)
```

***Set the Threshold Value at 50 for 9490 ECARTs for ACS 00***

```
W SCR 00 MEDIA(ECART) RECTECH(36BTRACK) THR(50)
```

***Set the Threshold Value at 6 for 10GB Helical Carts for LSM 00:02***

```
W SCR 00:02 MED(DD3A) REC(DD3) THR(6)
```

## Library Utilities Overview

Utilities are programs that help manage library resources. This section presents brief descriptions of the functions performed by library utilities. See “Overview of Library Utilities” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for a complete description of each utility.

### Activities Report Utility

This utility provides a statistical report on library resource loading by volume groups (for example, scratch compared to nonscratch, pass-thru activity, mounts, dismounts, entered, and ejected). This report provides necessary information to monitor library resources and usage.

### Audit Utility

This utility performs a physical inventory of library volumes in specified locations, such as,

- the entire library
- an ACS
- one or more specified LSMs within an ACS
- one or more panels within an LSM
- one or more rows within a panel
- one or more columns (cells) within a row.

Optional parameters allow you to

- update the library control data set to reflect cartridges observed
- produce a discrepancy list and do not update the control data set.

### Backup Utility

This utility produces a backup of the library control data set. If journaling is enabled, all journals are reset when the backup is complete.

### Database Decompile Utility

This utility provides a way to create a complete LIBGEN database from an existing control data set.

### Directory Rebuild Utility

This utility provides a means to rebuild the database directory as well as reconstructing database areas unique to this HSC release.

## **Eject Cartridge Utility**

This utility ejects cartridges from the library in a batch mode. The control statement accepts a list of one or more specific VOLSERS, or a count of scratch volumes from a specified scratch subpool, and allows you to specify one or more CAPs. The robot retrieves the indicated cartridges and places them in the designated CAPs. Ejected cartridges are deleted from the control data set.

## **Initialize Cartridge Utility**

This utility permits you to batch enter cartridges into the library through the CAP, and invokes a user-specified program to write a magnetic label on each tape. The robot accepts cartridges placed into the CAP and reads the Tri-Optic labels, and the HSC passes the VOLSERS to the user-specified program. The magnetically labeled cartridges can be ejected from the library or placed into cell locations.

If the cartridges are stored in the library, the control data set is updated with the VOLSER and locations information. The control data set can mark each cartridge as either scratch or nonscratch.

## **Journal Offload Utility**

This utility allows you to off-load one or both journals on a given host without backing up the control data set. The journals are backed up and reset.

## **Mergecdds Utility**

This utility allows users to integrate volume information from one CDS to another. Users can enter specific ACSs or LSMs to merge information from or to.

## **Move Utility**

This utility allows you to request the HSC to move a single volume, a range of volumes, or a list of volumes to other locations within an ACS.

## **Performance Log Reblocker Utility**

This utility prepares the generated performance log (SMF data) for use by the Activities Report utility.

## **Reconfig Utility**

This utility creates a new control data set when the library hardware configuration changes. Cartridge location information is retained from the original control data set.

## **Restore Utility**

This utility re-creates the library control data set from a previous backup copy and, if desired, applies all journals since the last backup, if journaling is enabled.

## Scratch Conversion Utilities

These utilities generate scratch transactions from tape management system reports or data sets, in a format that can be input to the scratch update utility. An optional parameter provides a means to scratch the selected VOLSERS in the control data set, and bypass the Scratch Update utility.

## Scratch Redistribution Utility

This utility balances the number of scratch cartridges among selected LSMs connected by pass-thru ports. It does this by moving scratch tapes from LSMs with higher concentrations to those with lower concentrations, until the number of scratch volumes in each LSM is within a range specified by the utility.

## Scratch Update Utilities

These utilities provide three basic functions:

- Scratch utility — allows you to scratch a volume, a range of volumes, or a list of volumes.
- Unscratch utility — allows you to unscratch a volume, a range of volumes, or a list of volumes. The entire scratch list in the control data set can be deleted by using this utility.
- Replace utility — allows you to add a volume, a range of volumes, or a list of volumes to the scratch list in the control data set. The additions are made after an initial clearing of the scratch list.

## Set Utility

This utility allows a system programmer to change certain library configuration information without performing a reconfiguration on the library. It performs operations directly on the control data set and does not require the HSC to be active.

## Unselect Utility

This utility allows you to unselect a volume that has been left in a selected state by the HSC. Unselect is used only when the HSC has erroneously left a volume in a selected state.

## Volume Report Utility

This utility produces a listing of all volumes in one or more LSMs. Volume Report can be run as a stand-alone utility. The report can be sorted according to volume serial number, location, date/time inserted, date/time selected, or select count. The following information is provided by the report:

- volume serial number
- location of volume
- errant volume status
- volume scratch status
- volume selected status
- volume mount status
- volume label status
- date/time that volume was inserted into the library
- date/time that volume was last selected
- number of times volume was selected
- CDS data
- summary.

The utility provides an option to produce an output flat file of volume and/or other CDS data that can be used by another program.



## **Chapter 3. Operating an Automated Cartridge System**

---

### **Overview**

This chapter describes the procedures for operating an Automated Cartridge System. The following topics are discussed:

- LSM automatic mode
- LSM manual mode
- LSM mixed (automatic and manual) mode
- returning the LSM to automatic mode
- LMU operation.

## LSM Automatic Mode

When an LSM is online, it is in automatic mode, which means that the robot is fully operational and is able to perform all cartridge handling activities. In this mode, no operator intervention is required for mounting, dismounting, swapping, or inter-LSM cartridge movement. However, operators must occasionally monitor console messages and respond accordingly to make sure that the library continues efficient operation.

Automatic mode is the normal operating mode of an LSM. For information on how to operate in manual mode, see “LSM Manual Mode” on page 267.

The most common functions that an operator must perform when an LSM is in automatic mode are:

- entering cartridges into the LSM through the CAP
- ejecting cartridges from the LSM through the CAP
- entering a cartridge when the eject routine is in progress
- visually inspecting an LSM component.

The procedures you must follow to enter and eject cartridges depend on the CAP hardware and software installed in your library, and the CAP mode setting. Make sure you are familiar with the CAP displays and indicators and understand CAP functions before attempting the procedures described in this chapter.

Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator’s guide for instructions on how to open, close, and insert cartridges into the various CAPs, and for descriptions of CAP indicators and operator panels.

## CAP Display Panels

Display panels describe the state of each CAP and the operation (if any) in progress. Displays are similar between different CAPs, but there are some differences that you must be aware of. See the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator’s guide for CAP information.

## CAP Modes

The HSC CAPPref command allows you to set the CAP mode to either manual or automatic. (Refer to “CAP Preference (CAPPref) Command and Control Statement” on page 42 for details on command syntax and parameters.)

- an automatic mode CAP (referred to as an *auto-mode* CAP) allows you to enter cartridges into an LSM without using HSC commands or utilities. Any CAP can be placed in automatic mode, which unlocks the CAP makes it available for entering cartridges.
- a manual mode CAP is normally locked and can only be used by issuing HSC commands or utilities.

## Entering Cartridges Into an LSM

Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide for procedures detailing how to enter cartridges into the LSM through the CAP and how to place cartridges in CAPs.

In auto-mode CAPs, no HSC commands or utilities need be entered. In a manual CAP, users must specify the following operator command prior to opening the CAP:

```
ENTER cap-id
```

Refer to "ENTER Command" on page 162 for more information.



**Note:** To discontinue this operation, issue the DRAIn operator command (refer to "DRAIN CAP Command" on page 142).

## Ejecting Cartridges From the LSM

An operator can eject cartridges from an LSM using either the EJECT command or EJECT utility. Procedures vary according to the type of CAP being used: standard, enhanced, or PCAP. Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide for more information.

- The EJECT command allows you to specify one or more CAPs and eject up to 9999 cartridges. Refer to "EJECT Command" on page 146 for details on command syntax and parameters.
- The EJECT utility allows you to specify one or more CAPs and eject any number of cartridges. Refer to the *HSC System Programmer's Guide* for details on the EJECT utility.

For an eject operation, you must issue the EJECT command or EJECT utility prior to opening the CAP:

```
EJECT (vol-list) (cap-list)
```

or

```
EJECT VOLser(vol-list) CAP(cap-list)
```



**Notes:**

- The eject operation terminates automatically when all specified cartridges have been processed.
- If you want to terminate an eject operation before the eject completes, enter the DRAIn command (refer to "DRAIN CAP Command" on page 142). The disposition of volumes associated with drained CAPs is determined by the OPTion Repath command setting. Refer to "OPTION Command and Control Statement" on page 202.

## Entering a Cartridge During an Eject Routine

There may be times when all CAPs are allocated for eject operations. Users can schedule an enter on an allocated CAP using the SENter command:

```
SENter cap-id
```

The command must be issued from the host that has the CAP allocated for ejects. Refer to “SENTER Command” on page 214.

## Visually Inspecting an LSM Component

### Using the Vlew Command

If video monitors are attached to the LSM, you can visually inspect internal components, without physically entering the LSM, using the Vlew command. The command directs the robot to position one of its cameras at a selected component for a specified period of time.



**Note:** The Vlew command is not supported for the SL3000 or SL8500 libraries, which does not contain lights or cameras.

Refer to “VIEW Command” on page 239 for syntax and parameter information.



**Caution:** The Vlew command requires dedicated use of the robot while a component is being inspected. The robot is not available for other work during this time.

### Opening an LSM in Automatic Mode

Refer to the procedure described in the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator’s guide.



**Warning:** Read the entire procedure before you attempt to enter the LSM.

## LSM Manual Mode

If an LSM cannot operate in automatic mode, the robot does not mount and dismount cartridges automatically. The operator must enter the LSM and mount and dismount cartridges manually.



### Caution:

- **StorageTek strongly recommends that you do not place SL3000 or SL8500 libraries in manual mode.** To use manual mode, all LSMs in the SL3000 and the SL8500 must be offline, and that means all CAPs and drives are unavailable for automated operations.

Additionally, SL3000 and SL8500 libraries have been designed for high cartridge density, so there is limited room for manually mounting and dismounting cartridges.

Refer to the “Precautions” topic in the *SL3000 Modular Library System User’s Guide* for safety requirements and physical restrictions if you decide that you must enter the library.

Refer to the “Precautions” topic in the *SL8500 Modular Library System User’s Guide* for safety requirements and physical restrictions if you decide that you must enter the library.

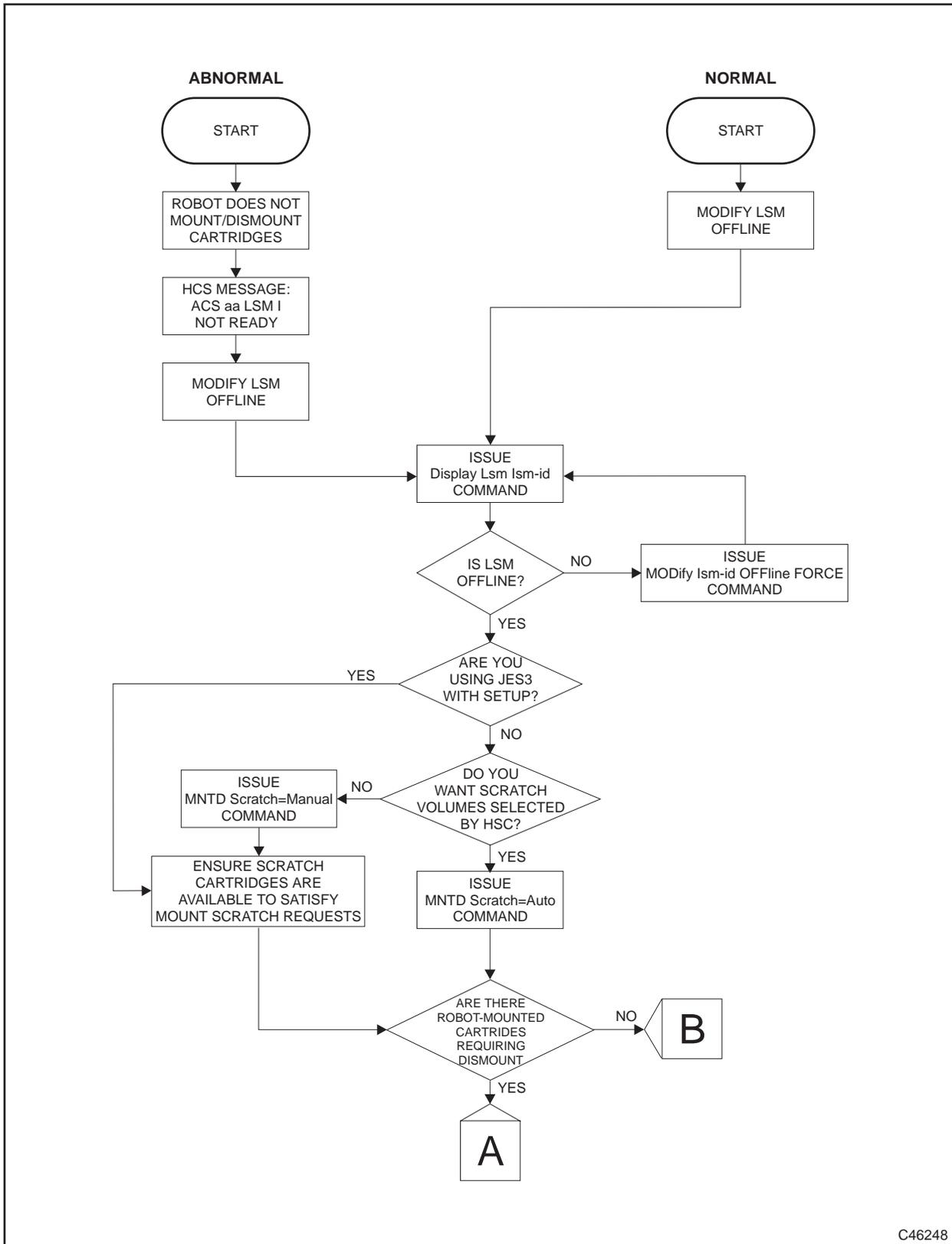
- **Do not** run the Vary command from the SLConsole (SLC) when the HSC is active. Varying LSMs offline through the SLC places the affected LSMs in a NOT READY state, which can lead to disrupted library operations. Instead, when you want to modify an LSM OFFLINE, run the MODify command.

It is not always necessary to modify the LSM offline and place it in manual mode just to open the LSM access door for a quick inspection of a drive or other component. See “Visually Inspecting an LSM Component” on page 266.

This section describes the following procedures for operating an LSM in manual mode:

- determining that the LSM is not in automatic mode
- placing the LSM in manual mode
- setting manual mode attributes
- resetting the transport display
- locating a cartridge in the LSM
- operating in manual mode with HSC at base service level
- how to handle manual mount requests
- how to handle manual dismount requests.

Figure 4 on page 268, Figure 5 on page 269, and Figure 6 on page 270 provide a flow chart for manual mode operations. All diagrammed steps are described in the pages that follow.



C46248

Figure 4. Manual Mode Flow Chart - Entering Manual Mode

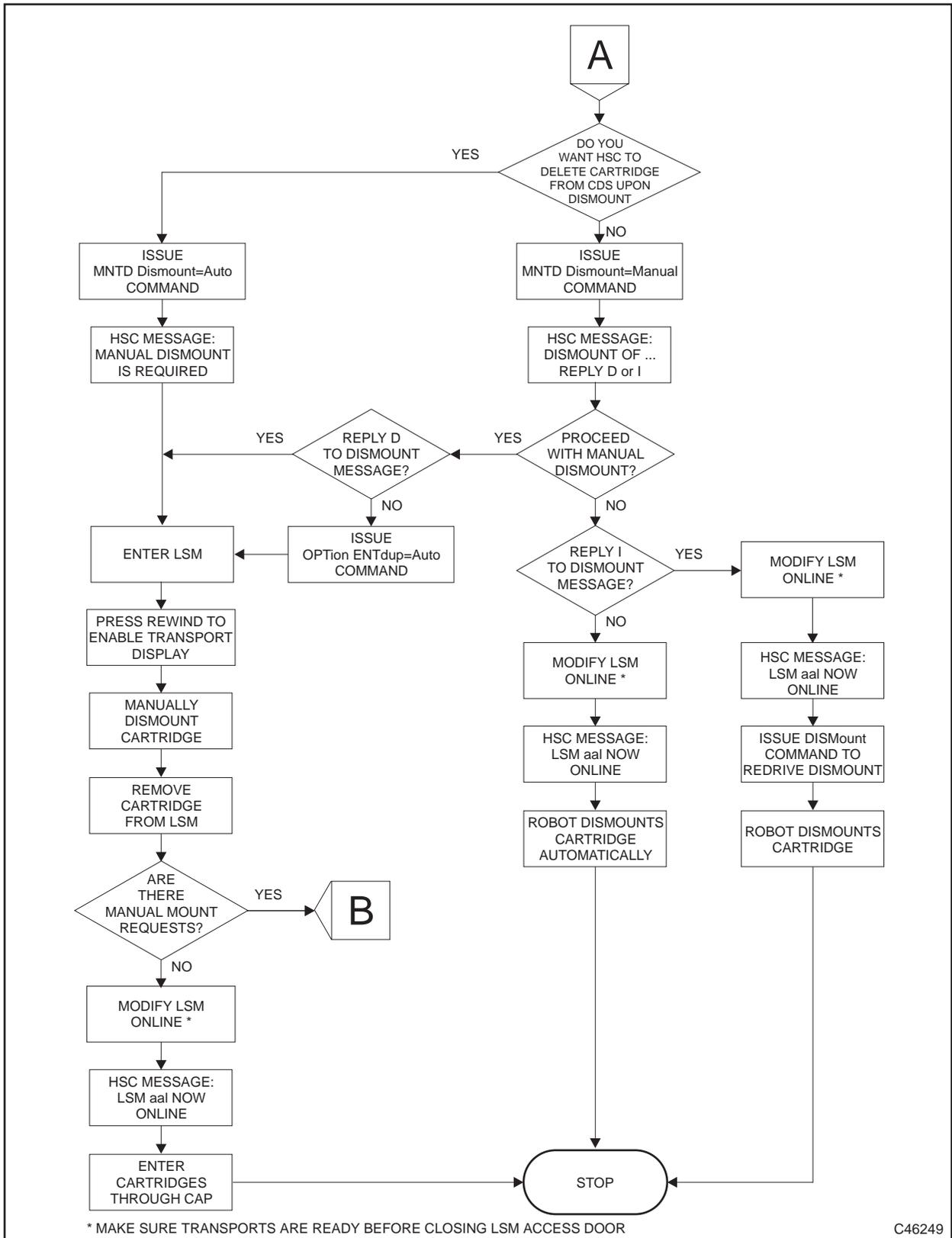


Figure 5. Manual Mode Flow Chart - Manual Dismount After Automatic Mount

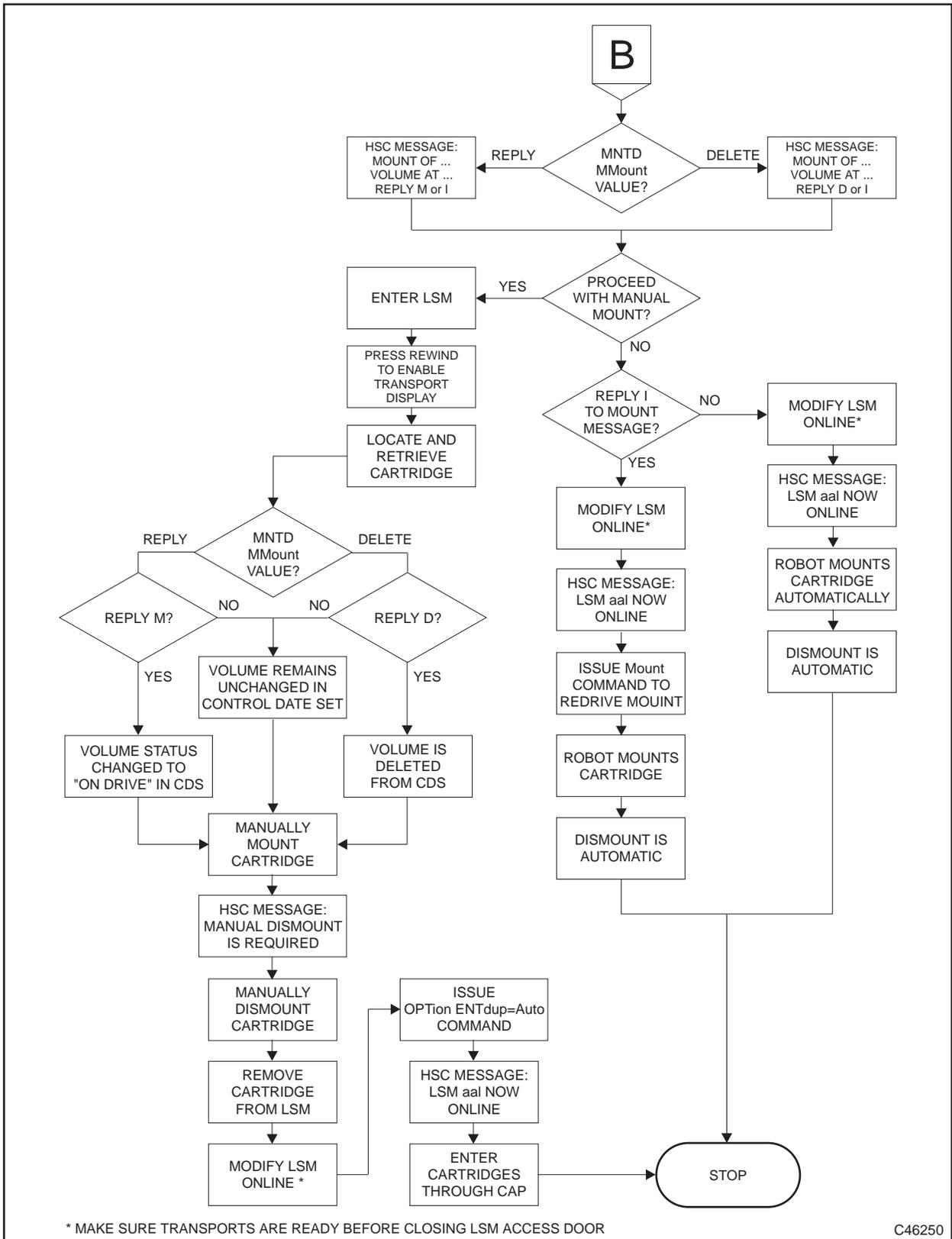


Figure 6. Manual Mode Flow Chart - Manual Mount/Dismount

## Determining That the LSM is Not in Automatic Mode

There is no one definite indication that there is a need to operate in manual mode; experience best dictates when to act. However, there are signs that indicate when an LSM is not functioning in automatic mode:

- The LSM access door is open.
- The robot does not automatically mount and dismount cartridges.
- The HSC issues a console message informing the operator that an LSM is “not ready,” indicating a problem has been detected in the LSM. The message identifies the LSM and provides a reason code for the failure. Refer to the *HSC Messages and Codes Guide* for an explanation of the reason code.

### Display LSM Status

If you suspect that the LSM is not functioning in automatic mode, issue the following command at the console to display the status of the LSM:

```
Display Lsm lsm-id
```

The status display indicates “not ready” if the LSM is not functioning in automatic mode. Refer to “Display LSM” on page 100.

### Dual LMU Environment

ACS requests cannot effectively be automated if all stations are offline to the LMU, or if all online station paths are inoperative. In a dual LMU environment, if all online station paths to the master LMU are inoperative, use the HSC SWITCH command to move the workload to the standby LMU (refer to “SWITCH Command” on page 221 for details on command syntax and parameters).

### SL8500 Redundant Electronics Environment

Library requests cannot be automated if all network connections paths are offline to the Library Controller (LC) or if all network connection paths are inoperative. In a Redundant Electronics environment, if all network connection paths to the active LC are inoperative, use the HSC SWITCH command (see page 221) to move the workload to the standby LC.

## Placing the LSM in Manual Mode

Place the LSM in manual mode by issuing the following command at the console:

```
MODify LSM lsm-id OFFline
```

The LSM remains in manual mode until the LSM is modified online. Refer to the “MODIFY Command” on page 177.



**Caution: StorageTek strongly recommends that you do not place SL3000 or SL8500 libraries in manual mode.** To use manual mode, all LSMs in the SL3000 and SL8500 must be offline, and that means all CAPs and drives are unavailable for automated operations. Additionally, SL3000 and SL8500 libraries have been designed for high cartridge density, so there is limited room for manually mounting and dismounting cartridges.

Refer to the “Precautions” topic in the *SL3000 Modular Library System User’s Guide* for safety requirements and physical restrictions if you decide that you must enter the library.

Refer to the “Precautions” topic in the *SL8500 Modular Library System User’s Guide* for safety requirements and physical restrictions if you decide that you must enter the library.

### Verify the LSM is Offline

You can verify that the LSM is offline by issuing the following command:

```
Display Lsm lsm-id
```

The status display indicates “OFFLINE” if the MODIFY command was successful.



**Note:** Placing the LSM offline does not cause the cartridge drives in the affected LSM to become offline.

## Setting Manual Mode Attributes

To reduce the amount of operator intervention required, you may want to change the normal HSC processing for certain manual mode functions, depending on how long you expect the LSM to be offline. The following manual mode attributes can be controlled using the HSC MNTD commands:

- manual mode dismount processing for robot-mounted cartridges
- message processing for a manual mode mount
- selection of scratch volumes during manual mode
- using the deferred mount option in manual mode.

Refer to “MNTD (Mount/Dismount Options) Command and Control Statement” on page 169 for details on command syntax and parameters.



### Notes:

- The MNTD commands can be issued at any time during either automatic mode or manual mode, but the Dismount, MMount, and Scratch parameters only take effect during manual mode.
- Each option remains in effect until it is changed by another MNTD command.

## Manual Mode Dismount Processing for Robot-Mounted Cartridges

Placing an LSM in manual mode does not cause the cartridge drives in the affected LSM to become offline. Jobs that are running when an LSM is modified offline continue without interruption. As the jobs complete, manual dismount requests are issued for cartridges that were mounted by the robot before the LSM was modified offline.

Normal HSC manual mode processing deletes a volume from the control data set when the dismount message is displayed. The HSC considers the dismount complete; it cannot be displayed as an outstanding request. This type of processing assumes the operator manually dismounts the cartridge and removes it from the LSM. Cartridges that are removed must be reentered after the LSM is modified online.

If an LSM is only going to be in manual mode for a short time, the operator can take control of these dismount requests by issuing the following command:

```
MNTD Dismount(Manual)
```

This directs the HSC to prompt for an operator decision whenever a dismount is requested for a robot-mounted cartridge. The following choices are available to the operator:

- manually dismount the cartridge and reply “D” to the dismount message. The cartridge is deleted from the control data set and must be removed from the LSM.
- reply “I” to the message to ignore the dismount. The dismount can be re-driven after the LSM is modified online by issuing the HSC DISMount command.
- make no response to the dismount message, which leaves the dismount request outstanding. The HSC automatically re-drives the dismount request when the LSM is modified online.

Use the Display MNTD command to display the current Dismount setting. Refer to “Display MNTD” on page 104 for details on command syntax and parameters.

### **Message Processing for a Manual Mode Mount**

Normal manual mode processing requires the operator to respond to a highlighted manual mount message. If the operator responds “D” to the message and manually mounts the cartridge, the volume is deleted from the control data set.

In an MVS environment, if the operator mounts the cartridge without responding to the message, and the volume is recognized as mounted by the HSC, then the volume is deleted from the control data set. If a dismount message occurs then the manual mount message is DOMed.

You can change HSC manual mode mount processing to retain the volume information in the CDS until a dismount is requested by issuing the following command:

```
MNTD MMount(Reply)
```

This directs the HSC to prompt for an operator decision whenever a manual mount is requested. The following choices are available to the operator:

- reply “M” to the mount message and manually mount the cartridge. The cartridge is retained in the control data set and its status is changed to “on drive.”
- reply “I” to the message to ignore the mount. The mount can be re-driven after the LSM is modified online by issuing the HSC Mount command.
- make no response to the mount message, which leaves the mount request outstanding. The HSC automatically re-drives the mount request when the LSM is modified online.

In an MVS environment, if the operator mounts the cartridge without responding to the message, and the volume is recognized as mounted by the HSC, then the volume status is changed in the control data set to “on drive.” If a dismount message occurs, then the manual mount message is DOMed.

Use the Display MNTD command to display the current MMount setting. Refer to “Display MNTD” on page 104 for details on command syntax and parameters.

## Selection of Scratch Volumes During Manual Mode

In both JES2 and JES3 environments, normal manual mode processing requires the operator to select a scratch volume to satisfy a mount scratch request. This may require you to obtain a volume report or issue several Display commands to locate scratch cartridges in the LSM.

In JES2 or JES3 without SETUP, you can direct the HSC to select scratch volumes for you by issuing the following command:

```
MNTD Scratch(Auto)
```

The volume must still be mounted manually, but now the HSC selects the volume and issues a message which provides the VOLSER and cell location of the cartridge.

Use the Display MNTD command to display the current Scratch setting (refer to “Display MNTD” on page 104 for details on the Display command).



### Notes:

- If scratch processing is set to Auto but there are no scratch volumes contained in the LSM, you must select a scratch volume from outside the manual mode LSM.
- Refer to “WARN Command” on page 248 for information on how to make sure that adequate scratch volumes are maintained in LSMs.

## Using the Deferred Mount Option in Manual Mode

It may be helpful to enable the HSC deferred mount option to reduce the number of manual mounts/dismounts that are required to process a job. This can increase operator productivity during manual mode operations by eliminating needless mounts.

Refer to “Using The Deferred Mount Option” on page 301 for the procedure to enable the deferred mount option.

## Resetting the Transport Display

At the beginning of manual mode operation each transport is in a Hold Off Load condition. In this condition, the message display panel above the transport is blank and the transport does not load if a cartridge is mounted. **This condition must be cleared before mounting cartridges manually.**

Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator’s guide for instructions on reactivating the transport display and clearing the Hold Off Load condition.

## Locating a Cartridge in the LSM

The cartridge VOLSER and cell location are provided in a console message.

### Cartridge Location in the Console Message

The HSC manual mount message provides the VOLSER and cell location of the cartridge, and the address of the transport allocated for the mount. Before entering the LSM, write down the VOLSER, cell location, and transport address.

The format of the cell location is:

*AA:LL:PP:RR:CC*

where:

***AA:LL***

is a hexadecimal number designating an LSM.

***PP***

is a decimal number designating an LSM panel.

***RR***

is a decimal number designating a row in the panel.

***CC***

is a decimal number designating a column in the row.

An example of the location displayed is:

```
... Manual volume at 00:00:13:01:19; ...
```

In the example the cartridge is located in LSM 00:00, panel 13, row 01, column 19.

Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide for information on how panels, rows, and columns are numbered.

### Cartridge Location on the Message Display Panel

Once the operator has replied to the manual mount message, inside a manual mode LSM, the transport display panel alternately displays the VOLSER and cell location of the requested cartridge. The VOLSER appears as seven characters: the six-character volume serial number prefixed with an "M" indicating the transport is awaiting the mount.

The cell location appears in the following format:

	L	L	P	P	R	R	C	C	
--	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

where:

***LL***

designates an LSM.

**PP**  
designates an LSM panel.

**RR**  
designates a row in the panel.

**CC**  
designates a column in the row.

An example of the location displayed is:

	0	1	0	7	1	1	1	5	
--	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

In the example, the cartridge is located in LSM 01, panel 07, row 11, column 15.

### How to Handle Manual Mount Requests

Whenever a mount is requested for a volume residing in a manual mode LSM, the HSC immediately informs the operator that a manual mount is needed by issuing one or more messages to the console. Each message contains text, such as:

```
... Manual volume at ...
```

or

```
... manual mount is required ...
```

or

```
... Intervention required;...
```

indicating that the cartridge must be mounted manually.

A highlighted message provides the cartridge VOLSER and cell location, and prompts the operator for a response. The choice presented to the operator depends on whether MNTD MMount is set to Delete or Reply (refer to “Message Processing for a Manual Mode Mount” on page 274).

- MNTD MMount(Delete) generates a manual mount message which prompts the operator to respond “D” or “I.”
- MNTD MMount(Reply) generates a manual mount message which prompts the operator to respond “M” or “I.”

The operator can also choose to not respond to the message. The operator response (or nonresponse) determines how the HSC processes the dismount.

## Manually Mounting a Cartridge

To proceed with the manual mount, use the procedure that fits your environment.

### Manual Mount Processing With MNTD MMount

When a manual mount message is issued and MNTD MMount(Delete) is in effect, the operator can either respond “D” (delete), “M” (reply), or make no reply to the message.

When the manual mount message is displayed on the console, refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator’s guide to see the procedure for mounting a cartridge.



**Note:** For PGMI users, the volume information is returned before the cartridge is deleted from the control data set.

### Not Performing the Manual Mount

To choose not to perform the manual mount, the operator can either reply “I” or make no reply to the manual mount message.

### Ignoring a Manual Mount Request

To ignore the mount, respond “I” to the mount message. The HSC releases the mount request and the cartridge remains in the control data set.

After the LSM is modified online, the mount can be re-driven by issuing the HSC Mount command. The HSC does not automatically reprocess a mount request that has been ignored.

### Not Responding to a Manual Mount Request

If plans are to place the LSM in automatic mode (modify online), the operator can choose to not respond to the manual mount message. The HSC queues the mount and waits for a response.

When the LSM is placed in automatic mode, the HSC automatically re-drives the mount request.

### How Manual Mounts Affect the Control Data Set

The operator’s response to the manual mount message determines how the control data set is affected.

- A response of “D” (delete) logically ejects the volume from the control data set. Logical ejection is done to maintain the integrity of the control data set.
- A response of “M” (reply) allows the operator to manually mount the cartridge. The cartridge is retained in the control data set and its status is changed to “on drive.”
- A response of “I” leaves the cartridge in the control data set.
- No response to the message leaves the cartridge in the control data set.

## How to Handle Manual Dismount Requests

The following situations can occur when an LSM is in manual mode that may require operator intervention to manually dismount a cartridge:

- a dismount request for volume that was mounted by the robot before the LSM was placed in manual mode
- a dismount request for a volume that was manually mounted by the operator and MNTD MMount is set to Reply.
- a dismount request for a volume that was manually mounted by the operator and MNTD MMount is set to Delete.

The first two situations are handled identically.

### Manual Dismounts After Robot Mount or With MNTD MMount(Reply)

The MNTD Dismount command controls HSC dismount processing for cartridges that were either:

- mounted by the robot, or
- mounted by the operator with MNTD MMount set to Reply.

Refer to “Manual Mode Dismount Processing for Robot-Mounted Cartridges” on page 273 for further information on using the MNTD command. Refer to “MNTD (Mount/Dismount Options) Command and Control Statement” on page 169 for details on command syntax and parameters.

### MNTD Dismount(Auto)

If MNTD Dismount is set to Auto (the default), the HSC displays a manual dismount message that identifies the cartridge VOLSER and the transport address. The HSC immediately deletes the cartridge from the control data set. The operator must manually dismount the cartridge and remove it from the LSM.

### MNTD Dismount(Manual)

If MNTD Dismount is set to Manual, the HSC displays a manual dismount message that identifies the cartridge VOLSER and the transport address, and prompts the operator to respond “D” (delete) or “I” (ignore).

Reply “D” to proceed with the manual dismount. Immediately enter the LSM, dismount the cartridge, and remove it from the LSM. The HSC deletes the cartridge from the control data set.

Reply “I” to ignore the dismount. The HSC releases the dismount request and the cartridge remains in the control data set. After the LSM is modified online, the dismount can be re-driven using the HSC DISMount command.

Do not reply to the message if you plan to modify the LSM online. The volume is dismounted automatically when the LSM is returned to automatic mode.

## **Manual Dismounts After Manual Mount With MNTD MMount(Delete)**

After the system has finished processing a manually mounted cartridge, the HSC issues a dismount message identifying the transport address and the VOLSER of the cartridge to be dismounted. The message does not require an operator response.

Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide for a description of how to dismount and store the cartridge.

## **How Manual Dismounts Affect the Control Data Set**

### **Manual Dismount After Robot Mount With MNTD Dismount(Auto)**

The HSC deletes the cartridge from the control data set.

### **Manual Dismount After Robot Mount With MNTD Dismount(Manual)**

Manual dismounts of cartridges that were mounted by the robot cause the HSC to display a message on the console which prompts the operator to respond either "D" (delete) or "I" (ignore).

- A response of "D" deletes the cartridge from the control data set.
- A response of "I" leaves the cartridge in the control data set.
- No response to the message leaves the cartridge in the control data set.

### **Manual Dismount After Manual Mount With MNTD MMount(Delete)**

The operator's response to the manual mount message determines how manual dismounts of manually mounted cartridges affect the control data set.

- If the operator replied "D" to the manual mount message, the cartridge was logically ejected from the control data set at mount time.
- If the operator made no reply to the message, the cartridge remains in the control data set.

## **Operating in Manual Mode With HSC at Base Service Level**

Manual mount messages are not displayed when the HSC is functioning at the base service level. For this reason, manual mode operations are not recommended. If you must operate in manual mode with the HSC at base service level, refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide for information.

## LSM Mixed (Automatic and Manual) Mode

If you are working in an automated LSM environment in which one or more of the LSMs are offline, you may need to remove a cartridge from a manual LSM and enter it into an automatic LSM, or to eject a cartridge from an automatic LSM and mount it on a drive that is attached to a manual LSM. When two automatic LSMs are separated by an offline LSM (in a linear configuration), you may also have to handle a mount between the two automatic LSMs manually.



**Note:** The SL3000 and SL8500 libraries do not support manual mode.

The procedures that you follow sometimes depend upon whether MNTD MMount is set to Delete or Reply; however, this setting does not always matter.

This section describes how to handle mount requests in a mixed automatic and manual mode LSM environment.

- mounting a cartridge from a manual LSM to an automatic LSM
- mounting a cartridge from an automatic LSM to a manual LSM
- mounting a cartridge from one automatic LSM to another.

### Mounting a Cartridge from a Manual LSM to an Automatic LSM

To proceed with the mount, use the procedure below that fits your environment. For this scenario, the MNTD MMount setting *does* matter.

#### Manual Mount Processing with MNTD MMount(Delete)

When a cartridge that resides in a manual LSM needs to be mounted on a drive that is attached to an automatic LSM, the HSC issues a manual mount message identifying the cartridge VOLSER, the address of the drive on which it is to be mounted, and the VOLSER's location in the manual mode LSM.

When the manual mount message is displayed on the console, do the following:

1. Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide to see how to locate, remove, and enter the cartridge into the automatic LSM



**Note:** You must respond "D" to the manual mount message to delete the cartridge from the control data set.

2. Issue the Mount command.

## **Manual Mount Processing with MNTD MMount(Reply)**

When the HSC issues a manual mount message for a cartridge that resides in a manual LSM and MNTD MMount(Reply) is in effect, a response of “M” ultimately causes the mount to fail.

When the manual mount message is displayed on the console, do the following:

1. Reply “I” to the mount message.
2. Change the MNTD MMount setting to Delete.
3. Issue the Mount command, then follow the instructions provided in “Manual Mount Processing with MNTD MMount(Delete)” on page 281.
4. If desired, change the MNTD MMount setting back to Reply.

## **Mounting a Cartridge from an Automatic LSM to a Manual LSM**

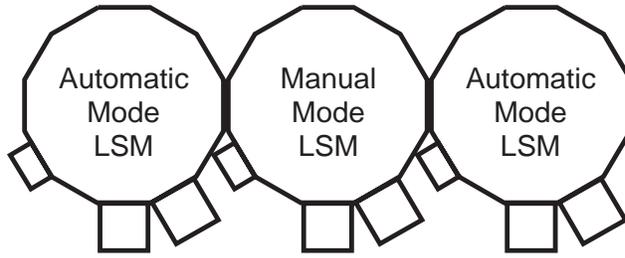
When a cartridge that resides in an automatic LSM needs to be mounted on a drive that is attached to a manual LSM, the HSC issues a manual mount message identifying the cartridge VOLSER and the address of the drive on which it is to be mounted.

When the manual mount message is displayed on the console, do the following:

1. Write down the VOLSER and the drive address.
2. Issue the Eject command to eject the cartridge from the automatic LSM.
3. Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator’s guide for instructions on how to remove the cartridge from the CAP, enter the LSM, and insert the cartridge into the transport.

## **Mounting a Cartridge from One Automatic LSM to Another**

This section refers to a linear LSM configuration in which two automatic LSMs are separated by an offline LSM as illustrated in Figure 7. When a cartridge that resides in one of the automatic LSMs needs to be mounted on a drive that is attached to the other automatic LSM, the HSC issues a manual mount message identifying the cartridge VOLSER and the address of the drive on which it is to be mounted.



C46247

**Figure 7. Two Automatic LSMs Separated by an Offline LSM**

When the manual mount message is displayed on the console, do the following:

1. Write down the VOLSER and the drive address.
2. Issue the Eject command to eject the cartridge from the first automatic LSM, and remove it from the CAP. For instructions on ejecting cartridges, refer to "Ejecting Cartridges From the LSM" on page 265.
3. Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide to see how to remove a cartridge and enter it into another automatic LSM.
4. Issue the Mount command.

## Returning the LSM to Automatic Mode

This section describes how to return the LSM to automatic mode. The following topics are discussed:

- making the transports ready
- exiting the LSM
- placing the LSM in automatic mode
- how to handle outstanding requests for manual mounts
- how to handle outstanding dismounts
- entering cartridges that were logically ejected during manual mode.



**Note:** The SL3000 and SL8500 libraries operate in automatic mode and do not support manual mode.

### Making the Transports Ready

All the transports must be in a READY condition before you close the LSM access door and place the LSM in automatic mode. Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide for instructions.

### Exiting the LSM

Follow the procedures described in the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide.

### Placing the LSM in Automatic Mode

Place the LSM in automatic mode by issuing the following command at the console:

```
MODify LSM lsm-id ONline
```

The HSC issues the message:

```
... LSM AA:LL now ONLINE
```

### How to Handle Outstanding Requests for Manual Mounts

There may be outstanding manual mounts if you replied "I" to the HSC manual mount message, or made no response to the message and did not mount the cartridge. In both cases, the mounts can be automated after modifying the LSM online.

- If you replied "I" to the manual mount message, you can re-drive the mount after the LSM is placed in automatic mode by issuing the HSC Mount command. Refer to "MOUNT Command" on page 187 for details on command syntax and parameters.
- If you have not responded to the manual mount message, the mount is performed automatically after the LSM is placed in automatic mode.

## Manual Mounts Requiring Automated Dismounts

Dismount requests for manually mounted volumes may be received before and after the LSM is placed in automatic mode. If manually mounted volumes are deleted from the control data set at mount time, the HSC requires operator assistance to semi-automate the dismounts.

### Manual Dismount Requested Before the LSM is Online

You can ignore a manual dismount request and modify the LSM online, leaving the cartridge mounted on the transport. When the LSM is in automatic mode, the dismount can be semi-automated in one of two ways.

- You can initiate the dismount by doing the following:

1. Issue the HSC command:

```
DISMount ,devaddr
```

Do not specify a VOLSER. Refer to “DISMOUNT Command” on page 61 for details on using the DISMount command.

2. Reply “E” to the HSC message

```
... Dismount of...; reply I, U,VOLSER, R, or E
```

The cartridge is dismounted and ejected from the LSM.

- You can wait for the next mount request for the transport containing the volume to be dismounted. When the robot discovers the volume mounted in the transport, the HSC issues the message:

```
... Dismount of...; reply I, U,VOLSER, R, or E
```

Reply “E” to dismount the volume and eject it from the LSM.

### Dismount Requested After the LSM is Online

Dismounts requested after the LSM is online cause the HSC to issue the message:

```
... Dismount of...; reply I, U,VOLSER, R, or E
```

Reply “E” to dismount the volume and eject it from the LSM.

### Entering Cartridges That Were Logically Ejected During Manual Mode

After modifying the LSM online, the cartridges that were removed from the LSM during manual mode operations can be reentered through the CAP, as described in “Entering Cartridges Into an LSM” on page 265.



**Note:** Refer to “Entering Duplicate And Unreadable VOLSERS” on page 317 for instructions on entering duplicate cartridges.

## LMU Operation

The LMU responds to mount and dismount requests from the host through the HSC and passes each request to the appropriate LSM, which performs the physical action requested. The following procedures are described in this section:

- displaying LMU status
- operating an LMU - dual LMU configuration.



### Notes:

- When you IPL an LMU, error messages appearing before the message:  
  
... ACS AA LSM LL ready; ...  
  
can be ignored. Do not ignore error messages that are displayed after the message.
- Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide for a description of the LMU control panel and information on how to power on/off and IPL an LMU in both stand-alone LMU and dual LMU configurations.

## Displaying LMU Status

To determine the status of the LMU, issue the following command:

```
Display Acs acs-id
```

The command response lists the following:

- current status of the ACS
- current status of the dual LMU (if configured) including:
  - master LMU
  - standby LMU
- online, offline or standby status of each dual LMU station
- HSC/LMU compatibility levels.



**Note:** Refer to “Display Acs” on page 66 for details on command syntax and parameters.

## Operating an LMU - Dual LMU Configuration

### Dual LMU Operational Overview

Dual LMU configurations provide a backup LMU which can take over if the active (master) LMU fails. (Refer to “Dual LMU” on page 5 for a description of the dual LMU option.) Both LMUs are capable of being the master but only one can be the master at a given moment. Each LMU regularly checks the status of the other LMU over the LAN. The HSC directs all I/O to the master LMU.

When an LMU is powered on in a dual LMU environment, it places itself in a standby status and then checks for an active master LMU. If an active master LMU exists, the second LMU remains available as the standby LMU. If an active master LMU does not exist, the first LMU to be fully initialized becomes the master LMU.

If both LMUs power on successfully, the following HSC message is displayed:

```
... ACS AA: Dual LMU is configured; Master is y, Standby is ready
```

where y is the configured LMU identifier; “A” or “B.”



**Note:** If a series of highlighted messages is displayed, alternately indicating first one LMU then the other is master, refer to “Dual LMU Recovery” on page 325 for recovery procedures.

### LMU Switch Overview

The master LMU functionality can be switched in the following ways:

- an automatic switch due to a self-detected failure or power supply problem in the master LMU
- an operator initiated switch (using the SWitch command) after all online stations become incapable of communication
- an operator initiated switch (using the SWitch command) while online stations remain capable of communication with the master LMU
- the IPL switch on the master LMU is pressed.
- the master LMU is powered off.

## Consequences of an LMU Switch

When an LMU switch occurs, a series of console messages track the changing status of the master and standby LMUs. Critical status changes appear as highlighted messages which remain on the screen until the condition is corrected or the message is superseded.

The following message is displayed when status changes and the standby LMU is ready:

```
... ACS AA: Dual LMU is configured; Master is y, Standby is ready
```

The following message is displayed if there is a status change and an LMU error occurs:

```
... ACS AA: Dual LMU Is Not configured; Master Is y, Standby is not ready
```

The following message is displayed if there is a status change and the standby LMU is not ready:

```
... ACS AA: Dual LMU Is configured; Master Is y, Standby is not ready
```

In the messages above, *y* is the configured LMU identifier, “A” or “B.”



**Note:** If a series of highlighted messages is displayed, alternately indicating first one LMU, then the other is master, refer to “Dual LMU Recovery” on page 325 for recovery procedures.

When an LMU switch occurs, the HSC interrogates the LMUs to determine the current status of each station. The status of each station is maintained as online, offline, standby, pending online, pending offline, or pending force offline. Use the Display Acs command to determine the status of each station, as well as the status of each LMU. Refer to “Display Acs” on page 66 for details on command syntax and parameters.



**Note:** Auto-mode CAPs are locked during an LMU switch until the LSM completes initialization.

## Automatic LMU Switch

LMU  $\mu$ -software detects, reports, and reacts to LMU failures as necessary to keep the ACS operational. You have no control over the timing of an automatic LMU switch; therefore, some work may be in process within the LMU. When the standby LMU takes over as master, it notifies the HSC of its status and sends the LMU Ready signal. The HSC reads the recovery information provided by the new master LMU concerning in transit cartridges within the various LSMs in the ACS.

The HSC then:

- modifies, or marks “completed,” the queued requests, reflecting the current locations of in-transit cartridges
- sends all incomplete requests to the new master LMU
- marks cartridges as errant when requests cannot be completed successfully.



**Note:** Enter and eject operations may have to be restarted after an LMU switch.

## Operator Initiated LMU Switch

Before you initiate an LMU switch while some stations are communicating, determine if the need to switch LMUs is immediate, or if processing can be completed prior to making the switch. If the need to switch LMUs is not critical, wait until the LSMs are relatively idle.

Initiate an LMU switch by issuing the following command:

```
Switch Acs acs-id
```

Refer to “SWITCH Command” on page 221 for details on command syntax and parameters.

The command is routed through the standby LMU to the disconnected master LMU, causing it to IPL. The following sequence of events occurs:

1. The HSC issues the message  

```
... ACS AA: Switch initiated, expect notification in 20 seconds
```
2. The standby LMU becomes the master LMU (“MASTER” indicator illuminates).
3. Online LSMs perform quick-init.
4. As each LSM becomes ready, the HSC issues the message  

```
... ACS AA LSM LL Ready; Temp Outage Queue Will Be Re-Driven
```
5. If the old master LMU completes IPL successfully, it becomes the standby LMU.

If the SWitch command is issued while processing is active, cartridges may be in-transit in various LSMs. Recovery procedures occur automatically as described in “Automatic LMU Switch” on page 288. Upon receiving the LMU Ready signal, the HSC waits for the LSMs to complete a quick-init and then re-drives the requests building up on the Temp Outage Queue.

## SL8500 LC Operation

The Library Controller (LC) responds to mount and dismount requests from the host through the HSC and passes each request to the appropriate LSM, to perform the physical action requested.

The following procedures are described in this section:

- “Displaying ACS Status” on page 290
- “Operating an LC - Redundant LC Configuration” on page 291



### Notes:

- When you reboot an LC, error messages appearing before the message:  

```
... ACS AA LSM LL ready; ...
```

can be ignored. Do not ignore error messages that are displayed after the message.
- Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide for a description of the library control panel and information on how to power on/off and boot a Library Controller in both stand-alone LC and redundant LC configurations.

## Displaying ACS Status

To determine the status of the LC, issue the following command:

```
Display Acs acsid
```

The command response lists the following:

- Current status of the ACS
- Current status of the Redundant LC (if configured) including:
  - HSC/LC compatibility levels
  - Active LCs
  - Standby LCs
  - Online, offline or standby status of each LC

## Operating an LC - Redundant LC Configuration

### Redundant LC Operational Overview

Redundant Electronics configurations provide a backup LC which can take over if the active LC fails. (Refer to “Dual Library Controller Configuration” on page 6 for a description of the dual LC option.) Both LCs are capable of being the active but only one can be the active at any given moment. Each LC regularly checks the status of the other LC over the LAN. HSC directs all I/O to the active LC.

When an LC is powered on in a dual LC configuration, it places itself in a standby status and checks for an active LC. If an active LC exists, the second LC remains ready as the standby. If an active LC does not exist, the first LC to be fully initialized assumes the active role.

If both LCs power on successfully, the following HSC message is displayed:

```
... ACS AA: RE LIBID C1 is configured; Active is y, Standby is ready
```

where y is the configured LC identifier; “A” or “B.”

### LC Switch Overview

The active LC functionality can be switched in the following ways:

- An automatic switch from a self-detected failure or power supply problem in the active LC.
- An operator initiated switch (using the SWitch command) after all online stations become incapable of communication.
- An operator initiated switch (using the SWitch command) while online stations remain capable of communication with the active LC.
- When the reboot switch on the active LC is pressed.
- When the active LC is powered off.

## Consequences of an LC Switch

When a LC switch occurs, a series of console messages track the changing status of the active and standby LCs. Critical status changes appear as highlighted messages which remain on the screen until the condition is corrected or the message is superseded.

The following message is displayed when status changes and the standby LC is ready:

```
... ACS AA: RE LIBID C1 is configured; Active is y, Standby is ready
```

The following message is displayed if there is a status change and a LC error occurs:

```
... ACS AA: RE LIBID C1 Is Not configured; Active Is y, Standby is not ready
```

The following message is displayed if there is a status change and the standby LC is not ready:

```
... ACS AA: RE LIBID C1 Is configured; Active Is y, Standby is not ready
```

In the messages above, y is the configured LC identifier, "A" or "B."

When a LC switch occurs, the HSC interrogates each LC to determine the current status. The status of each station is maintained as online, offline, standby, pending online, pending offline, or pending force offline. Use the Display Acs *acsid* command (see page 66) to determine the status of each station and LC.



**Note:** Auto-mode CAPs are locked during a LC switch until the LSM completes initialization.

## Automatic LC Switch

LC microcode detects, reports, and reacts to LC failures as necessary to keep the ACS operational. **This happens automatically so some work may be in process within the LC.** When the standby LC assumes the active role, it notifies the HSC of its changed status and sends the LC Ready signal. HSC reads the recovery information provided by the new active LC concerning in transit cartridges within the various LSMs in the ACS. The HSC then:

- modifies, or marks “completed,” the queued requests, reflecting the current locations of in-transit cartridges.
- sends all incomplete requests to the active LC.
- marks cartridges as errant when requests cannot be completed successfully.



**Note:** Enter and eject operations may have to be restarted after a LC switch.

## Operator Initiated LC Switch

Before initiating a LC switch if some network connections are communicating, determine if the need to switch LCs is immediate, or if processing can be completed prior to initiating the switch. If the need to switch LCs is not critical, wait until the LSMs are relatively idle.

Initiate an LC switch for a Library ID by issuing the following command:

```
Switch Acs acsid LIB libid
```

The command is routed through the standby LC to the disconnected LC, causing it to reboot. The following sequence of events occurs:

1. HSC issues the message  

```
... ACS AA: Switch initiated, expect notification in 20 seconds
```
2. The standby LC assumes the active LC role (“ACTIVE” indicator illuminates).
3. Online LSMs perform quick-init.
4. As each LSM becomes ready, the HSC issues the message:  

```
... ACS AA LSM LL Ready; Temp Outage Queue Will Be ReDriven
```
5. If the former active LC completes reboot successfully, it assumes the standby LC role.

If the SWitch command is issued while processing is active, cartridges may be in-transit in various LSMs. Recovery procedures occur automatically as described in “Automatic LC Switch” on page 293. Upon receiving the LC Ready signal, HSC waits for the LSMs to complete a quick-init and then re-drives the requests through processing the Temp Outage Queue.

## CAP Manual Recovery

When the LC Switch occurs and certain CAP functions are processing requests (enter/eject), manual intervention for recovery is required after the switch has completed. Below are various CAP scenarios with an appropriate procedure to resolve for each.

### A Switch Occurs When an Enter Function is Active

When a switch occurs and an enter function is active, after the switch completes, two possible events can occur simultaneously or individually:

- A cartridge is selected by HSC/ELS, but not moved to an LSM home cell when the switch occurred. After the switch completes, the cartridge is selected and cannot be moved to an LSM cell.
- The cartridges in the CAP to be moved to the LSM receives message SLS0699I - 03/01 error from the library during a move. The library reserves the CAP because there are carts in the CAP after the switch completes. The library retains ownership of the CAP until the cartridges are removed. This is normal behavior of the SL8500 library.

Procedure to resolve:

- Use the procedure in the *SL8500 Operator's Guide* to manually remove the cartridges from the CAP with the SLC.
- Issue a Display Cap *aa:ll:cc* command for the specific cap affected.
- If the CAP is offline, issue the Modify CAP *aa:ll:cc,online* command.
- Issue the ENter *aa:ll:cc* command to restart the enter function for the CAP
- If CAP is automatic, issue:

```
CAPP x aa:ll:cc MANua1
CAPP x aa:ll:cc AUTO
```

to reset it to auto mode.

- Insert the balance of the cartridges removed from the previous Enter into the CAP.
- If an SLS0251E message that states that volser is a duplicate, run the Unselect utility (refer to the *HSC System Programmer's Guide*) to unselect the volser. Afterwards, the volser may be entered into the LSM.

When you enter the volser, message SLS0694D is displayed to ask you what you want to do with the duplicate, you should respond "logically delete."

## A Switch Occurs When an Eject Function is Active

When a switch occurs and an eject function is active, after the switch completes, the cartridges in the LSM to be moved to the CAP receive an SLS0699I message - 03/01 error from the library for the move operation. The library reserves the CAP because there are carts in the CAP after the switch completes. The library retains ownership of the CAP until the cartridges are removed. This is normal behavior of the SL8500 library.

Procedure to resolve:

- Use the procedure in the *SL8500 Operator's Guide* to manually remove the cartridges from the CAP with the SLC.
- Issue a Display Cap *aa:ll:cc* command for the specific cap affected
- If the CAP is offline, issue the Modify CAP,online command
- Re-issue the EJECT *vol-list* or *vol-range aa:ll:cc* command or restart the EJECT utility to eject the balance of the cartridges.
- If the CAP was automatic prior to the eject function, issue the CAPP *x aa:ll:cc* manual and then re-issue is as CAPP *x aa:ll:cc* auto to reset it to automode.

## A Switch Occurs When CAPs are Set to Automatic Mode

When a switch occurs and CAPs are set to automatic mode, when the switch completes, message SLS0699I may be presented with a return/reason code of 07/05 error from the library during a reserve of the CAP. This is because the CAPs have not initialized completely after the switch has completed. This is normal behavior of the SL8500 library.

Procedure to resolve:

- Wait until the message SLS0668I for the last LSM in the library switched is issued.
- Issue a CAPPref *prefvalue aa:ll:cc* MANual for each automatic CAP.

Issue a CAPPref *prefvalue aa:ll:cc* AUTO for each CAP to become automatic.

## Chapter 4. Managing Library Resources

---

### Overview

This chapter describes techniques and procedures for managing library resources. Effective resource management can improve overall library performance, eliminate labor-intensive processes, reduce the potential for human errors, and help integrate library resources with nonlibrary resources.

The following topics are discussed:

- mount processing with library and nonlibrary resources
- using the deferred mount option
- controlling pass-thru operations after dismount
- moving cartridges within the library
- monitoring move requests from the programmatic interface
- LSM scratch preferencing.

## Mount Processing With Library And Nonlibrary Resources

If the library is located in a data center that also uses nonlibrary transports and nonlibrary cartridges, the following situations can occur:

- mount request for a library cartridge on a nonlibrary transport
- mount request for a nonlibrary cartridge on a library transport.

The following sections discuss the processing options available to you and the procedures that are required.

### Mount Request for a Library Cartridge on a Nonlibrary Transport

#### Requesting StorageTek Software Assistance

If mount requests for library cartridges on nonlibrary transports are common in your environment, the HSC can assist you by confirming the LSM location of the cartridge automatically. Use the following procedure:

1. Request software assistance by issuing the SMC MOUNTDef command, VOLWATCH parameter. Refer to the *SMC Configuration and Administration Guide* for syntax information.

Each subsequent mount request of this type causes the SMC to issue the following message:

```
...Mount of HSC volser VVVVVV on non-HSC device XXXX
```



**Note:** Refer to “MNTD (Mount/Dismount Options) Command and Control Statement” on page 169 for details on command syntax and parameters.

2. If the cartridge is in an LSM, issue the command

```
EJECT volser cap-id
```

where:

*cap-id*

is the CAP for the LSM containing the cartridge.



**Note:** Refer to “EJECT Command” on page 146 for details on command syntax and parameters.

3. Retrieve the ejected cartridge and mount it on the appropriate nonlibrary transport.
4. Reenter the cartridge after dismount.

## Not Using StorageTek Software Assistance

When the SMC command MOUNTDef VOLWATCH(OFF) is set (the normal setting), the HSC does not become involved in a mount request for a library cartridge on a nonlibrary transport. The following procedure describes the operator action required for these requests:

1. Confirm that the cartridge is in the library by issuing the command

```
DISPLAY VOLSER volser
```

where:

*volser*

is the VOLSER of the cartridge.



**Note:** Refer to “Display Acs” on page 66 for details on command syntax and parameters.

2. If the cartridge is in an LSM, issue the command

```
EJECT volser cap-id
```

where:

*cap-id*

is the CAP for the LSM containing the cartridge.



**Note:** Refer to “EJECT Command” on page 146 for details on command syntax and parameters.

3. Retrieve the ejected cartridge and mount it on the appropriate nonlibrary transport.
4. Reenter the cartridge after dismount.

## Mount Request for Nonlibrary Cartridge on Library Transport

When a mount request for a nonlibrary cartridge on a library transport is received, the HSC issues the message:

```
... Mount of volser on drive XXX - Volume not in library;  
reply “I”, “R”, “T,capid” or “P,capid”
```

You have the following choices:

- respond “I” (to ignore the mount), and then either cancel the job, or enter the cartridge and use the HSC Mount command to redrive the mount request.
- respond “P” to proceed with the mount and permanently store the cartridge in the library when it is dismounted. You have the option to specify a CAPid.
- respond “T” to proceed with the mount and have the cartridge ejected automatically when it is dismounted. You have the option to specify a CAPid.

- Do not respond to the message but enter the cartridge using the HSC ENter command. The HSC recognizes the cartridge and mounts it on the appropriate transport.



**Notes:**

- If you respond either “P” or “T,” the HSC issues the message  
... Open CAPid AA:LL:CC for entering when unlocked  
to inform you when to enter the cartridge.
- Refer to “ENTER Command” on page 162 for details on command syntax and parameters.

## **Reducing Enters and Ejects With Unit Affinity Separation**

The default NCS/SMC operating mode honors all user requests for unit affinity (as specified in JCL). This may require you to enter or eject volumes to satisfy mount requests if any of the following conditions exist in your data center:

- cartridges reside both inside and outside the library
- both library and nonlibrary transports are available
- there is more than one ACS.

You can reduce the number of enters and ejects by setting the SMC ALLOCDef/ALLOCJob command SEPLvl parameter.

## Using The Deferred Mount Option

The SMC ALLOCDef DEFer parameter now controls the deferred mount option, except for SMC 6.0 clients interacting with HSC 6.1 or 6.2 servers.

## Controlling Pass-Thru Operations After Dismount

In a multiple-LSM configuration, a mount request can require one or more pass-thru operations if the specified cartridge and transport are in different LSMs. When the cartridge is dismounted, the HSC normally attempts to assign the cartridge a new cell location in the LSM where the dismount occurs. A pass-thru operation is performed after dismount only when there are no available cells in the LSM. This feature is called “floating.”

If you want the dismounted cartridge to be returned to its original home cell location, you can disable floating by issuing the following command:

```
MNTD FLOAT(OFF)
```



### Notes:

- Refer to “MNTD (Mount/Dismount Options) Command and Control Statement” on page 169 for details on command syntax and parameters.
- The command must be issued once for each host where you want floating disabled. This can be accomplished by one or more entries in the startup parameters (PARMLIB control statements). Refer to “PARMLIB Control Statements” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for more information.

## Moving Cartridges Within The Library

It may be necessary to move cartridges within a single LSM, or between two or more LSMs to accommodate hardware changes (for example, adding transports to an LSM) or to better control tape activity. Cartridge movement can be done manually by data center personnel, or it can be automated by LSM robots.

### Moving Cartridges Manually

Moving cartridges manually involves the following actions:

- modifying one or more LSMs offline. Automatic processes are stopped and mount/dismount functions must be performed manually by the operator
- locating the cartridges to be moved, and removing them from their cell locations
- moving the cartridges to the new cell locations
- modifying the LSMs online
- running the AUDIt utility on both the old cell locations and the new cell locations.

This process is time-consuming, prone to human errors, and interrupts automatic operations.

### Automating Cartridge Movement

Moving cartridges can be automated by LSM robots using either the HSC MOVE command or MOVE utility. Both the command and the utility allow you to identify the cartridges to be moved either by location (LSM, panel, row, and column), or by VOLSERS. The following conditions apply:

- The MOVE command allows you to specify up to 100 cartridges in one command, while the MOVE utility does not limit the number of cartridges you can specify.
- Both the command and the utility display cartridge movement activity on the console, but the MOVE utility also provides an output report.
- Moving cartridges to new cell locations in the same panel is prohibited.
- Cartridges can be moved **from only one LSM** at a time; although they can be moved to another panel within the same LSM, or to one or more different LSMs in the same ACS.
- Cartridge movement to a list of LSMs is done on a first-come first-serve basis. The specified cell locations in the first LSM in the list are filled, then the cells in the second LSM listed, then the cells in the third LSM, and so forth, until either all specified cartridges are moved, or all specified cell locations are full.

The procedure for automating cartridge movement is as follows:

1. Identify the cartridges to be moved (by VOLSERS or cell locations) using one of the following:
  - the HSC View command
  - a volume report
  - an audit report
  - hardware configuration records
  - a visual inspection inside the LSM.
2. Identify the destination cell locations by:
  - issuing the View command
  - performing a visual inspection inside the destination LSMs.
3. Issue the MOVE command or run the MOVE utility.
4. If hardware changes have been made, run the AUDIt utility on all changed panels.



**Notes:**

- Refer to “VIEW Command” on page 239 for details on command syntax and parameters.
- Refer to “MOVE Command” on page 194 for details on command syntax and parameters.
- Refer to “Overview of Library Utilities” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for explanations of library utilities.

## Monitoring Move Requests From The Programmatic Interface

If your data center is using the programmatic interface, you can initiate monitoring of volume move requests received from the interface by issuing the HSC MONITOR command. The monitoring information can be recorded in the hard copy log, or displayed on a designated console, or both. The following volume move requests can be monitored:

- MOUNT
- DISMOUNT
- MOVE
- EJECT.

Monitoring is terminated by issuing the STOPMN command. You can request a display of monitor status by issuing the Display MONitor command.



### Notes:

- Refer to “MONITOR Command” on page 185 for details on command syntax and parameters.
- Refer to “Stop Monitoring (STOPMN) Command” on page 219 for details on command syntax and parameters.
- Refer to “Display ALLOC” on page 70 for details on command syntax and parameters.

## LSM Scratch Preferencing

LSM scratch preferencing allows one type of LSM to be preferred over another to satisfy scratch requests. For example, LSMs with higher-performance robotics can be preferred to better absorb the scratch workload and improve library throughput.

The `LOWscr`, `LSMpref`, and `SCRtech` keyword parameters of the HSC `ALLOC` operator command are used to implement LSM scratch preferencing and to tailor its capabilities to fit your site requirements. Refer to “Allocation (`ALLOC`) Command and Control Statement” on page 37 for explanations of command syntax and parameters.



**Note:** Since 9740 LSMs can be configured only with other 9740s in an ACS, they do not participate in LSM preferencing (`LSMpref` parameter).

The SMC queries the HSC for a preferred list of LSMs for allocation. The HSC preferences LSMs according to the volume location (for specific volumes), scratch count, `LOWscr`, `LSMpref`, `SCRtech`, and scratch counts (for scratch volumes).

### How LSMs are Preferred

LSMs and their transports are ordered by descending scratch count. LSMs are also implicitly preferred using the following order of status:

1. online LSMs (automatic mode) in a connected (station online) ACS
2. online LSMs (automatic mode) in a disconnected (station offline) ACS
3. offline LSMs (manual mode) in a connected (station online) ACS
4. offline LSMs (manual mode) in a disconnected (station offline) ACS.

Within each status group, the scratch allocation enhancements support preferencing of LSMs and their transports as follows:

- Preferencing is based on LSM type and is changed using the `LSMpref` keyword.
- Preferencing is based either on descending scratch counts or on a rotation algorithm and is changed using the `SCRtech` keyword.
- Least-preferencing is based on LSMs with zero scratch counts or scratch counts below their defined scratch thresholds and is changed using the `LOWscr` keyword.

### Scratch Preferencing Operational Considerations

Using different settings of `ALLOC` operator command keywords on different hosts is not recommended. If mismatches exist, unusually fast depletion of scratch volumes from certain LSMs may result, leading to increased pass-thru activity, reduced robotics utilization, and reduced library throughput.

SMC User Exits 02 and 04 provide the capability to override `LSMpref` on a case by case basis. SMC User Exit 02 also provides the capability to override `LOWscr` on a case-by-case basis. The `SCRtech` setting can only be changed using the `ALLOC` operator command.

Using LOWscr=ANY to least-preference an LSM with a very low (but nonzero) scratch count requires using the Warn operator command to set a scratch threshold for the LSM or, if scratch subpooling is in effect, for both the subpool and the LSM. It is not necessary to use the Warn command to set a scratch threshold of zero. Refer to “WARN Command” on page 248 for explanations of syntax and parameters.

## Unexpected Results From LSM Scratch Preferencing

The following unexpected results in the operation of LSM Scratch Preferencing should **not** be considered errors:

- An LSM with the most scratches is not picked because it has no online and unallocated transports that are compatible with the scratch request.
- An unpreferenced LSM (e.g., LSMpref=9360 and LSM is not a 9360) is picked because it is the only LSM that has online and unallocated transports that are compatible with the scratch request.
- An LSM that is least-preferenced (e.g., LOWscr=ANY and scratch count is zero or below its threshold) is picked because it is the only LSM that has online and unallocated transports that are compatible with the scratch request.
- An LSM that should be picked next when SCRtech=ROTATE is in effect is not picked because it has no online and unallocated transports that are compatible with the scratch request.
- An LSM with zero scratches and online and unallocated transports that are compatible with the scratch request is picked, and a pass-thru or manual entry of a cartridge into the LSM is required as a result.

In general, a constant and predictable order of rotation is not guaranteed when SCRtech=ROTATE is in effect. The algorithm is influenced by factors such as MVS device status, distribution of different transport types, distribution of different media types, use of unit affinity, and settings of other ALLOC keywords. The rotation algorithm attempts to distribute scratch allocations across all LSMs instead of just to the LSM with the highest scratch count.

## Recommended Reading on Related Topics

Fully utilizing LSM scratch preferencing involves highly complex interactions between MVS device status, multiple device types, multiple media types, multiple LSM types, scratch counts, scratch thresholds, scratch distributions, library configuration, and MVS esoteric definitions.

**It is strongly recommended that this section on LSM Scratch Preferencing and the following documentation be reviewed and thoroughly understood before attempting to exploit this functionality.**

- “Allocation (ALLOC) Command and Control Statement” on page 37
- “Remote-linked Libraries” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide*

- “SMC Allocation in a JES2 Environment” (JES2 users only) in the *SMC Configuration and Administration Guide*
- “SMC Allocation in a JES3 Environment” (JES3 users only) in the *SMC Configuration and Administration Guide*.

## Examples of LSM Scratch Prefencing

The effects of different settings of the LSMpref, SCRtech, and LOWscr keyword parameters of the ALLOC operator command are described in the following examples.

- LSM\_PREF=NONE, SCRTECH=COUNT, LOWSCR=NONE
- LSM\_PREF=NONE, SCRTECH=COUNT, LOWSCR=ANY

- All LSMs are ordered by descending scratch count.

- All LSMs are ordered by descending scratch count.

LOWscr=ANY will defer LSMs with zero scratch counts, or scratch counts below their defined scratch thresholds, from first consideration to satisfy a scratch request. These least-preferenced LSMs are still eligible for scratch allocations in case MVS cannot allocate a transport in any other LSM.

- LSM\_PREF=NONE, SCRTECH=ROTATE, LOWSCR=NONE

- Each successive scratch request is preferenced to a different LSM to distribute the scratch workload.
- At some point, an LSM with a very low or zero scratch count can become the most preferenced LSM.

- LSM\_PREF=NONE, SCRTECH=ROTATE, LOWSCR=ANY

- Each successive scratch request is preferenced to a different LSM to distribute the scratch workload.
- Least-preferenced LSMs do not participate in the rotation algorithm.

LOWscr=ANY will defer LSMs with zero scratch counts or scratch counts below their defined scratch thresholds from first consideration to satisfy a scratch request. These least-preferenced LSMs are still eligible for scratch allocations in case MVS cannot allocate a transport in any other LSM.

- LSM\_PREF=9310, SCRTECH=COUNT, LOWSCR=NONE

- 9310 LSMs are preferenced over all other LSMs and are ordered by descending scratch count.
- All other LSMs are separately ordered by descending scratch count.
- 9310 LSMs with very low or zero scratch counts are preferenced over non-9310 LSMs with possibly higher scratch counts.



**Note:** Manual entry of cartridges may be required if all 9310 LSMs run out of scratches. To avoid this situation, use LOWscr=ANY as in the next example.

- LSMPREF=9310, SCRTECH=COUNT, LOWSCR=ANY
  - 9310 LSMs are preferenced over all other LSMs and are ordered by descending scratch count.
  - All other LSMs are separately ordered by descending scratch count.

LOWscr=ANY will defer LSMs with zero scratch counts or scratch counts below their defined scratch thresholds from first consideration to satisfy a scratch request. These least-preferenced LSMs are still eligible for scratch allocations in case MVS cannot allocate a transport in any other LSM.



**Note:** Even though 9310 LSMs are explicitly preferenced, LOWscr=ANY ignores LSM type and will least-preference any LSM with zero scratch counts or scratch counts below their defined scratch thresholds.

- LSMPREF=9310, SCRTECH=ROTATE, LOWSCR=NONE

- 9310 LSMs are preferenced over all other LSMs.
- Each successive scratch request is preferenced to a different 9310 LSM first, then all other LSMs as necessary.

In the event that all transports in all 9310 LSMs are offline, already allocated, or incompatible, each successive scratch request is preferenced to a different non-9310 LSM to distribute the scratch workload.



**Note:** Manual entry of cartridges may be required if all 9310 LSMs run out of scratches. To avoid this situation, use LOWscr=ANY as in the next example.

- LSMPREF=9310, SCRTECH=ROTATE, LOWSCR=ANY

- 9310 LSMs are preferenced over all other LSMs.
- Each successive scratch request is preferenced to a different 9310 LSM first, then all other LSMs as necessary.
- Least-preferenced LSMs do not participate in the rotation algorithm.

In the event that all transports in all 9310 LSMs are offline, already allocated, or incompatible, each successive scratch request is preferenced to a different non-9310 LSM to distribute the scratch workload.

LOWscr=ANY will defer LSMs with zero scratch counts or scratch counts below their defined scratch thresholds from first consideration to satisfy a scratch request. These least-preferenced LSMs are still eligible for scratch allocations in case MVS cannot allocate a transport in any other LSM.



**Note:** Even though 9310 LSMs are explicitly preferenced, LOWscr=ANY ignores LSM type and will least-preference any LSM with zero scratch counts or scratch counts below their defined scratch thresholds.

## Problem Determination and Reporting

For suspected allocation problems involving LSM scratch preferencing, the following information may be requested by StorageTek Systems Support Representatives to determine if a problem really exists.

- The HSC and SMC release level and whether any of the list of PTFs are applied to the HSC experiencing the suspected problem.
- The settings of all ALLOC operator command parameters in effect at the time the suspected problem occurred. (See “Display ALLOC” on page 70.)
- If applicable, the TAPEREQ and VOLATTR statements in effect at the time the suspected problem occurred. (Review the TAPEREQ and VOLATTR statements in the definition data sets loaded at that time.)
- The status (connected/disconnected) of all ACSs at the time the suspected problem occurred. (See “Display Acs” on page 66.)
- The status (online/offline) and scratch counts of all LSMs at the time the suspected problem occurred. (See “Display Status” on page 123.)
- The scratch counts for all subpools, if scratch subpooling is in use at the time the suspected problem occurred. (See “Display SCRatch” on page 95.)
- The scratch thresholds in effect at the time the suspected problem occurred. (See “Display THReshd” on page 125.)
- A description of the library configuration (i.e., LIBGEN compilation listing).
- The MVS device status of all library and nonlibrary transports at the time the suspected problem occurred, (using the MVS command `D U,,,nnn,n`).
- If SMC User Exit 02 (JES2) or User Exit 04 (JES3) is used to override the LSMpref or LOWscr settings for scratch requests, and if any other SMC or HSC user exits are in use (i.e., user exit assembly listings).
- The operating system IPL parameters in effect, (i.e., IEFSSNxx listing, IEAOPTxx SELTAPE= setting, DEVSUPxx COMPACT= setting).
- If any operating system or JES user exits are in use, (e.g., IEAVMXIT, IEFDB401, JES2 Exit 06, JES3 Exit 03, etc.).
- The type of Job Entry Subsystem (JES), and the initialization deck in effect for the system experiencing the suspected problem (i.e., JES2/JES3 Initialization deck).
- The type of operating system.
- The SMC trace of allocation.
- An Allocation Data Area Trace of the job experiencing the suspected problem (see “TRACE Command” on page 224).
- If any other software products are in use that can affect MVS device allocation (i.e., DFHSM, DFSMS, DMS/OS, DYNAMASK, FDR/ABR, MIM, POOL-DASD, etc.).

## Working With Scratch Volumes And Subpooling

Maintaining scratch lists and establishing scratch subpools are functions of a tape management system. The HSC manages library-controlled scratch cartridges, maintains its own scratch list, and supports scratch subpooling. Operator commands, control statements, utilities, and user exits allow you to control library scratch resources.

The following lists provide a summary of HSC scratch functions, and point you to detailed information on specific topics:

- Operator commands
  - **ALLOC LSMpref** — specifies the scratch preferencing technique for libraries with mixed LSM types. (Refer to “Allocation (ALLOC) Command and Control Statement” on page 37.)
  - **ALLOC LOWscr** — specifies the counter-preferencing technique to use when scratch counts are low or zero. (Refer to “Allocation (ALLOC) Command and Control Statement” on page 37.)
  - **ALLOC SCRtech** — specifies the scratch preferencing technique for libraries with multiple LSMs of the same type. (Refer to “Allocation (ALLOC) Command and Control Statement” on page 37.)
  - **Display SCRatch** — displays scratch count information based on subpools. (Refer to “Display Acs” on page 66.)
  - **Display THReshld** — displays threshold values set by the Warn command. (Refer to “Display THReshld” on page 125.)
  - **EJect** — ejects up to 9999 scratch cartridges from a given subpool. (Refer to “ENTER Command” on page 162.)
  - **ENter** — enters one or more volumes and places them in scratch status. (Refer to “ENTER Command” on page 162.)
  - **MNTD Scratch** — determines how a scratch volume is selected to satisfy a scratch mount request for a manual mode LSM. (Refer to “MNTD (Mount/Dismount Options) Command and Control Statement” on page 169.)
  - **MNTD SCRDISM** — specifies whether a scratch volume that is mounted in a WolfCreek LSM is to be moved to another LSM when it is dismounted. (Refer to “MNTD (Mount/Dismount Options) Command and Control Statement” on page 169.)
  - **Mount SCRATCH or PRIVAT** — mounts a scratch volume. (Refer to “MOUNT Command” on page 187.)
  - **Warn** — establishes scratch warning threshold values. (Refer to “WARN Command” on page 248.)
- PARMLIB control statements
  - **SCRPOol** — defines scratch subpool names, VOLSERS, and label types.



**Note:** Refer to the “PARMLIB Control Statements” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for explanations of PARMLIB control statements.

- Utilities
  - EJECT — ejects scratch cartridges in batch mode using one or more CAPs.
  - ENTER — enters any number of cartridges and places them in scratch status.
  - Scratch Conversion — updates the HSC scratch list from the TMS scratch list.
  - Scratch Redistribution — balances the number of scratch volumes between specified LSMs in an ACS. Provides an option to balance by subpool.
  - Scratch Update — directly updates the HSC scratch list.
  - Volume Report — provides report information on scratch volumes and scratch subpools.



**Note:** Refer to “Utility Functions” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide* for explanations of library utilities.

- User exits
  - SLSUX01 — implements scratch subpooling and allows you to specify subpool names. This user exit is controlled by the SMC.
  - SLSUX02 — influences allocation of transports to satisfy mount scratch requests in JES2, and JES3 without device setup. This user exit is controlled by the SMC.
  - SLSUX03 — defines multiple scratch subpools, or subpools of different volume label types. Also defines 13-character subpool names during HSC initialization. This user exit is controlled by the HSC.
  - SLSUX04 — influences allocation of transports to satisfy mount scratch requests in JES3 with device setup. This user exit is controlled by the SMC.



**Note:** Refer to the *NCS User Exit Guide* for explanations of user exits.

# Chapter 5. Problem Resolution and Recovery Procedures

---

## Overview

This chapter provides procedures for responding to problems involving library hardware, library software, and cartridges. Both the library hardware and the HSC have built-in recovery mechanisms which are capable of responding to most problem situations. In many cases, operator procedures involve determining what happened and verifying that automated recovery completed successfully.

The next section, “Problem Solving Strategy” on page 314, identifies the resources available for problem identification, to help you restore automated operations as quickly as possible. The remainder of the chapter discusses the following topics:

- recovering errant cartridges
- entering duplicate and unreadable VOLSERS
- how to clear RECOVERY status on a CAP
- freeing an allocated CAP
- recovering locked enhanced CAP with missing magazine
- restoring host-to-host communications services
- special conditions
- LMU switch recovery.

## Problem Solving Strategy

The basic problem solving strategy for the library subsystem can be expressed in the following steps:

1. Determine the nature of the problem using:
  - HSC messages
  - system messages
  - HSC display commands
  - MVS display commands.
2. Determine
  - volume involved
  - type of request
  - failing component
  - alternative methods available.
3. Weigh alternatives to minimize impact on production.
4. Notify **all** concerned parties of the action being taken.
5. Execute solution.

The following library-specific resources are available to help you determine the nature of a problem:

- ACS and HSC documentation
  - *Messages and Codes Manual*
  - *System Programmer's Guide*
  - *Operator's Guide*
  - *Hardware Operator's Guides*
  - locally developed procedures.
- HSC commands
  - Display
  - Vlew.
- HSC utility reports
  - Audit report
  - Volume report.



### Notes:

- Refer to Chapter 2, “Commands, Control Statements, and Utilities” on page 15 for details on HSC operator commands.
- Refer to “Utility Functions” in the *HSC System Programmer's Guide* for details on library utilities.

## Recovering Errant Cartridges

A cartridge becomes errant when the HSC is uncertain of the location of the volume in the LSM. The following conditions **may** cause a cartridge to become errant.

- An operator modifies an LSM offline using the FORCE option.
- The volume is not located in the cell location specified by the control data set.
- An unrecoverable error occurs in the LMU.
- An unrecoverable error occurs in the LSM.

Errant volume recovery is performed automatically

- any time the HSC attempts to use a cartridge that is marked as errant
- when an ACS is connected
- when an LSM is modified online
- when cross host recovery is performed.

The operator is notified by the following HSC message:

```
... Attempting to locate errant volume VVVVVV
```

If the cartridge is located by checking its original source location or its destination location, the HSC removes it from errant status.

If the cartridge cannot be located, the operator is prompted by the following message:

```
... Volume VVVVVV not found; Eject or Ignore (E|I)?
```

Respond with one of the following:

- Reply “E” if **you are certain that the cartridge is not in the library**. The cartridge is deleted (logically ejected) from the control data set.
- Reply “I” if you do not know the location of the cartridge, to leave the cartridge in errant status. An audit trail is maintained for the cartridge, which can be helpful if it becomes necessary to manually locate the cartridge.

If the cartridge is located at a later time, the HSC recognizes it as errant and removes it from errant status. The cartridge is either returned to its home cell location, or marked selected for a request.

### Using the Vlew Command to Locate an Errant Cartridge

Errant recovery may not be able to locate an errant cartridge because it is loaded on a transport. When this occurs, the HSC issues the message:

```
... Errant recovery of VVVVVV - drive XXX is  
loaded; reply Retry or Ignore (R/I)
```

Use the following procedure to determine the VOLSER of the loaded cartridge:

1. Issue the VIEw command to inspect the transport addressed in the message (refer to “VIEW Command” on page 239).



**Note:** The VIEw command is not supported by the SL3000 or SL8500 libraries.

2. If the VOLSER of the loaded cartridge matches the errant VOLSER, issue an MVS UNLOAD command for the transport.
3. Reply “R” to the message.

The cartridge is removed from errant status and made available for the next request.

## Entering Duplicate And Unreadable VOLSERS

### Entering Duplicate Volumes

When you try to enter a VOLSER that is already recorded in the control data set, the HSC attempts to locate the original cartridge by checking its home cell location or destination location. If the volume is found, the duplicate cartridge is rejected by the HSC.

If the volume is not found, the HSC response is determined by the OPTion ENTdup command setting.

- If OPTion ENTdup is set to Auto, the HSC automatically deletes the original volume from the control data set, and enters the new volume.
- If OPTion ENTdup is set to Manual, the HSC requests operator assistance by issuing the following message:

```
... ENTER of volume VVVVVV encountered missing duplicate vols;
(Logically) Delete, or Ignore (D,I)?
```

Reply “D” to delete the original volume from the control data set and enter the new volume.



**Note:** Refer to “OPTION Command and Control Statement” on page 202 for details on command syntax and parameters.

### Entering Cartridges With Missing or Unreadable Labels

Tape cartridges with unreadable labels cannot be entered into a library through a CAP. If you attempt to enter a cartridge without a label, or with a label the robot cannot read, the following HSC message is issued:

```
... UnNamed Cartridge in CAP CELL AA:LL:RR:CC;
reply 'V,vols' or 'EJECT'
```

Do one of the following:

- Reply “V,vols” to enter the cartridge by assigning it a VOLSER. The specified VOLSER is permanently assigned to the cartridge in the control data set.



**Note:** If any unlabeled cartridges or cartridges with unreadable labels are manually entered into a library, they will be ejected during an audit. StorageTek recommends that users provide an external media label for all cartridges. **An SL3000 and SL8500 libraries will not enter a non-labeled cartridge.**

- Reply “EJECT” and remove the cartridge from the CAP when the CAP is unlocked.

## How To Clear Recovery Status On A CAP

When you issue the Display Cap command and the status for a CAP is indicated as RECOVERY, use the following procedure to force CAP recovery.



**Note:** If this procedure does not clear recovery status, try “Freeing An Allocated CAP” on page 319.

1. Issue the following command:

```
ENTER cap-id
```

where:

***cap-id***

is the CAP you want to recover.

The following occurs:

- a. The LSM robot moves to the CAP and performs a CAP catalog.
  - b. If cartridges are detected in the CAP, the HSC issues a message instructing the operator to remove the cartridges.
  - c. The HSC issues the message:

```
... Open CAPid AA:LL:CC for entering when unlocked
```
  - d. The CAP ENTER indicator illuminates or Enter appears on the display panel.
2. Issue the DRAIn command against that CAP.

The CAP is locked and the status is set to INACTIVE.

## Freeing An Allocated CAP



**Caution:** Use this procedure only if the CAP is not in use. Releasing a CAP from an active command or utility may produce unpredictable results. Examples of these are:

- CAP cleanup
- errant cartridges
- cartridges still in the CAP that are unknown to the HSC.

If a host terminates without performing recovery while an active process is using a CAP, the CAP remains allocated to the host and is unavailable to all other hosts. If the HSC is brought back up on that host, it releases the CAP after initialization. Otherwise, you can free the CAP by issuing the following command from any connected host:

```
RELEASE cap-id
```

where:

***cap-id***

specifies the CAP you wish to release.



**Note:** Refer to “RELease CAP Command” on page 211 for details on command syntax and parameters.

The HSC issues a message prompting you to confirm that the CAP is to be released.

- Reply “N” to cancel the release.
- To proceed with the release:
  1. Verify that the CAP is not in use by visually inspecting the CAP, issuing the Display Cap command on other hosts, and checking with other personnel.
  2. Reply “Y” to the message.

Another message confirms the CAP is released.

## Recovering a CAP With a Missing Magazine

An error condition occurs when you close a magazine-style CAP without the bottom magazine in place, or with a missing magazine between other magazines. What happens is determined by the CAP hardware.



**Note:** The SL3000 and SL8500 CAP can accommodate missing magazines.

### Missing Magazines in an Enhanced CAP

If the bottom magazine is not in place or a magazine is missing between other magazines when you close an enhanced CAP, the display indicates an error condition and the CAP does **not** lock.

When this occurs, open the CAP and replace the missing magazines.

### Missing Magazines in a WolfCreek CAP

If the bottom magazine is not in place when you close a WolfCreek 20-cell CAP or the optional 30-cell CAP, the HSC issues the message:

```
... CAP AA:LL:CC unlocked; Magazine(s) installed improperly
```

and the CAP unlocks. EJECT or ENTER is displayed indicating that the CAP can be opened, and the rectangle indicator for the bottom magazine does not appear in the display.



**Caution:** The robot cannot detect when the middle magazine is not in place in the WolfCreek optional CAP. If only the top and bottom magazines are in place when the CAP is closed, the robot enters the cartridges in the bottom magazine, but the cartridges in the top magazine are not entered.

The WolfCreek CAPs require only the bottom magazine to be in place when the CAP is closed. For the WolfCreek optional CAP, the operator is responsible for making sure that the CAP is not closed when the middle magazine is not in place and cartridges are in the top magazine. These cartridges are not entered by the robot.

## Restoring Host-To-Host Communications Services

The COMMPATH command and control statement enables the user to define a tiered communications service between HSC hosts. With this type of service in place, the HSC automatically performs a path switch if a host receives an error trying to send a message over the current communications path. Depending on the paths defined, an automatic switch can be to an equivalent path type (from one LMU path to another), or to a lower performance method (for example, from VTAM to LMU).

The HSC notifies you when a switch occurs by issuing the following message to the console on both hosts:

```
... A communications path switched from XXXX1 to XXXX2; ...
```

where:

**XXXX1**

specifies the previous communications path.

**XXXX2**

specifies the current communications path.

The message also identifies the host that either initiated the switch or experienced the failure.

After the HSC performs a downward switch, an upward switch can only be accomplished using the COMMPATH command.



**Note:** Refer to “Communications Path (COMMPATH) Command and Control Statement” on page 54 for details on command syntax and parameters.

The following procedure describes how to initiate an upward switch:

1. Find and correct the problem which prompted the switch.
2. Return to the previous communications method by issuing the command

```
COMMPATH HOSTID(host-id) METHOD(method)
```

where:

***host-id***

specifies the host which the command affects.

***method***

specifies the method you want to be made current.

## Special Conditions

This section describes certain situations that can occur during automated operations. The following situations are addressed:

- resolving possible lost mount requests
- resolving lost mount requests due to LMU errors
- internal label does not match external label
- multiple mounts for the same volume
- unlabeled scratch cartridge
- resolving lost responses.

### Resolving Possible Lost Mount Requests

Mounts may be lost due to one of several reasons:

- If the SMC is inactive while the HSC is active, then MVS and/or TMS messages are not intercepted.
- If the HSC is inactive while the SMC is active, then MVS and/or TMS messages are intercepted but there is no Automated Library Control system to receive the mount request.
- A hardware LMU error can occur.

### Resolving Lost Mount Requests - SMC and/or HSC Inoperable

In cases where the SMC and/or HSC are inoperable, mounts for library transports are left pending until both the SMC and HSC are active. In either case, mounts for library transports can be recovered.

#### Inactive HSC Becomes Active

When an inactive HSC becomes active at the full service level and the HSC AMPND startup parameter has been specified, the SMC automatically redrives pending mounts when it reconnects to the HSC subsystem. The SMC reconnects to the HSC subsystem when it intercepts an MVS allocation or mount request.

Alternatively, the operator may issue the SMC RESYNChronize command instead of waiting for an MVS allocation or mount event. In this case, any subpool specification for the mount specified in the mount message **is honored**. Refer to the *SMC Configuration and Administration Guide* for more information.

If the SMC MOUNTDef command has not been specified, then follow the recovery procedures detailed in “Resolving Lost Mount Requests Due To LMU Errors” on page 323.

#### An Inactive SMC Becomes Active

When an inactive SMC becomes active and the SMC MOUNTDef AUTOPendmount command has been specified, the SMC automatically redrives pending mounts when it reconnects to the HSC subsystem. The SMC reconnects to the HSC subsystem when it intercepts an MVS allocation or mount request.

Alternatively, the operator may issue the SMC RESYNChronize command instead of waiting for an MVS allocation or mount event. In this case, any subpool specification for the mount specified in the mount message **is not honored**. Refer to the *SMC Configuration and Administration Guide* for more information.

If the mount message is issued before the SMC becomes active, no subpool specifications are honored in the mount message, TAPEREQ, or user exit. If the SMC MOUNTDef AUTOPendmount command has not been specified, then follow the recovery procedures detailed in “Resolving Lost Mount Requests Due To LMU Errors” on page 323.

## Resolving Lost Mount Requests Due To LMU Errors

An MVS mount request may be lost when an LMU error occurs. Refer to the *SMC Configuration Guide*, “Recovery Procedures,” for related information.

## Internal Label Does Not Match External Label

When a cartridge is mounted, MVS verifies the internal label matches the requested VOLSER. If the labels do not match, the HSC issues the message:

```
... Dismount of VVVVVV ...;
    reply Eject, Ignore, or Dismount (E/I/D)
```

Reply “E” to eject the cartridge from the LSM.

## Multiple Mounts for the Same Volume

The HSC issues the following message when it receives a request to mount a volume that is not yet dismounted:

```
... Mount of VVVVVV on drive XXX -
    Waiting for volume; reply ‘I’ to cancel wait
```

Do not reply, which causes the mount to wait. The robot dismounts the volume when it is unloaded and performs the subsequent mount.

## Unlabeled Scratch Cartridge

When the SMC sends a request to an HSC server for a scratch volume to be mounted, the HSC automatically selects and mounts the scratch volume. If the mounted scratch volume does not contain an internal label, CA-1 (TMS) issues a request for the VOLSER on the system the SMC is executing on.



**Note:** To determine the VOLSER, issue the Display DRives command to the HSC that serves the library containing the drive where the scratch volume is mounted.

## Resolving Lost Responses

Occasionally a mount request gets stuck on one of the HSC queues due to a response not being received from the LMU. When this happens the volume is left in a selected status and the operator is notified by the Overdue Response Handler (ORH).

### Overdue Response Handler

Every 30 seconds, the ORH scans all queues for each ACS to identify requests with sequence numbers whose response wait time intervals have expired. When a time interval expires, the HSC issues the message

```
... ORH interval expired: ...
```

and the ORH checks the request type code. For all request type codes other than mount, dismount, move, and swap, the ORH automatically extends the request's wait time another increment of 3, 5, 10, or 60 minutes, and issues the message:

```
... ORH interval extended: ...
```

### Operator Response Required For Mount, Dismount, Move, and Swap

For mount, dismount, move, and swap requests, the operator is prompted by the message:

```
... ORH: ABORT/EXTEND...
```

Respond with one of the following:

- **ABORT** — the task that requested the operation is notified that the request has been abnormally terminated by ORH. This removes the volume from selected status and allows the operator to issue HSC Mount or DISMount commands as necessary to keep the work moving.
- **EXTEND** — the ORH adds another ten minute increment to the request and leaves it on the same queue that it is currently on. There is no limit to the number of extensions an operator may request.

## Dual LMU Recovery

When a dual LMU is powered on, or when an LMU switch occurs, the HSC must be able to determine which LMU is the master. A series of highlighted messages appear on the operator console when both LMUs respond as master LMUs, or when both respond as standby LMUs, indicating that something is wrong. The following sections describe how to identify and recover from these situations.

### When Both LMUs Respond as Master

Highlighted messages Messages occurring in the following sequence:

```
... Master Is A, Standby is not ready
... Master Is B, Standby is not ready
... Master Is A, Standby is not ready
... Master Is B, Standby is not ready
.
.
.
```

indicate that both LMUs are responding as master LMUs. The messages remain outstanding until the condition is corrected.

In this situation, you must power off one of the LMUs and issue the command:

```
VARY dev-list OFFLINE FORCE
```

where:

*dev-list*

is a list of all stations to one of the LMUs.

This allows the remaining LMU to become the master. Restore power to the LMU that you powered off, and vary the stations online.

### When Both LMUs Respond as Standby

Highlighted messages Messages occurring in the following sequence:

```
... Master Is A, Standby is ready
... Master Is B, Standby is ready
... Master Is A, Standby is ready
... Master Is B, Standby is ready
.
.
.
```

indicate that both LMUs are responding as standby LMUs.

In this situation, you must IPL one or both of the LMUs since the HSC only sends work requests to the master LMU.



# Chapter 6. Maintaining an Automated Cartridge System

---

## Overview

StorageTek provides full support for the Automated Cartridge System hardware and software components. On-site maintenance is performed by trained Customer Services Engineers (CSEs) and Systems Support Representatives (SSRs). Remote support facilities, available by telephone, provide direct-from-the-device hardware diagnostics and access to technical specialists who can analyze problems and answer questions.

The following remote support facilities are available:

- Central Support Remote Center (CSRC), which responds to customer and CSE calls 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.
- Software Support, which responds to customer calls 24 hours a day, 7 days a week
- ServiceTek
- Customer Initiated Maintenance (CIM).

The guide *Requesting Help from Software Support* provides instructions for using StorageTek's remote support facilities.

This chapter describes automated and manual procedures for cleaning library transport tape paths. Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide for information on maintaining library hardware, and storing, handling, and maintaining cartridges.

## Transport Tape Path Cleaning

When a library transport has passed a certain amount of tape media across the read/write heads, it informs the LMU, which broadcasts a “drive needs cleaning” notification to all connected hosts. The HSC responds to this by either scheduling an automatic cleaning for the transport, or notifying the operator with a console message. Clean the transport at least once a week even without a message.



**Note:** Different types of transports require different cleaning cartridge media types. For additional detailed information about controlling automatic cleaning, refer to “Automated Tape Transport Cleaning” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide*.

### Cleaning a Tape Path - Automatic Mode

#### Automatic Cleaning Function Enabled

The HSC provides an automatic cleaning function which is enabled using the MNTD command (refer to “MNTD (Mount/Dismount Options) Command and Control Statement” on page 169 for details on command syntax and parameters). With auto-cleaning enabled, the LMU broadcast causes the HSC to schedule the mount of a cleaning cartridge for the transport. When the next mount request is received for the transport, the HSC performs a mount/dismount of a cleaning cartridge before satisfying the mount request. Console messages inform the operator of the cleaning operation.

If there are no cleaning cartridges of the correct media type in the ACS that are under the maximum cleaning limit, the operator is prompted to enter additional cleaning cartridges. If there are cleaning cartridges available in the ACS that have exceeded the maximum cleaning limit, the operator can reply to use them to satisfy the cleaning request.

Enabling the auto-cleaning function also enables the CLean command (refer to “CLEAN Command” on page 52 for details on command syntax and parameters). The operator can use this command to schedule cleaning for a transport at any time.

#### Automatic Cleaning Function Disabled

If the automatic cleaning function is disabled, the operator can use the Mount command to clean a transport (refer to “MOUNT Command” on page 187 for details on command syntax and parameters). The transport recognizes that a cleaning cartridge is mounted, runs the cleaning operation, and unloads the cartridge.

When the HSC issues the message

```
... Drive XXX has been cleaned ...
```

issue an HSC DISMount command to dismount the cartridge (refer to “DISMOUNT Command” on page 61 for details on command syntax and parameters).

## Cleaning a Tape Path - Manual Mode

When a transport requires cleaning in a manual mode LSM, the HSC issues a message providing the cell location of the cleaning cartridge and the transport address. Follow this procedure to clean the transport tape path.

1. Enter the LSM.



### Warning:

1. **Do not enter the LSM until you are familiar with the procedures described in the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide.**
  2. **StorageTek does not recommend entering an SL8500 library because you must first modify offline four LSMs and up to 64 drives.**
  3. **StorageTek does not recommend entering an SL3000 library because you must first modify offline the LSM and up to 56 drives.**
2. Mount a cleaning cartridge in the transport.
  3. Dismount the cartridge when it is unloaded.
  4. Remove the cartridge from the LSM.



**Note:** Do not reenter the cleaning cartridge through the CAP: the usage count is set to zero when it is entered.

## Cleaning Cartridges

Cleaning cartridges are identified to the HSC by a unique three-character alphabetic prefix, followed by three required numeric values, in their volser. The default is "CLN." All cartridges identified with that prefix make up pools of cleaning cartridges in each LSM. Additionally, any cartridges identified by that prefix are treated exclusively as cleaning cartridges; they cannot be scratched or initialized by HSC utilities.

When a transport requires cleaning, the HSC selects a cartridge from the pool of cleaning cartridges in the LSM that contains the transport (or from the closest LSM that has cleaning cartridges). If no cleaning cartridges exist in the ACS, the operator is prompted with the following message:

```
... No cartridges to clean
{drive XXXX|driveid AA:LL:NN} ACS AA:
Reply "I", "T,capid,volser", or "R" (Ignore, Temp Enter or Retry)
```

Enter some cleaning cartridges, and reply R to the message.



**Note:** It is recommended to have one cleaning cartridge in the ACS for each transport.



**Caution:** Do not reenter a cleaning cartridge that has been ejected from the library. All ejected cartridges are deleted from the control data set. When you enter a cleaning cartridge, the HSC considers it to be new and sets the usage counter to zero.

The number of times a cleaning cartridge can be used is globally defined by the MNTD MAXclean command. Usage limits for a specific set of cleaning cartridges can be set with the VOLATTR MAXclean control statement. For example, each time a 9840 cleaning cartridge is used, a new extent of cleaning media is used. When the cleaning media is exhausted, the 9840 cleaning cartridge is “spent.”

When a cleaning cartridge exceeds its usage limit, the MNTD EJctauto setting controls whether it is automatically ejected from the library. See “MNTD (Mount/Dismount Options) Command and Control Statement” on page 169 for details. If an over use-limit cartridge is automatically ejected, the operator is notified by the following message:

```
... Cartridge CLN $\overline{VV}$  ejected to CAP CELL AA:LL:CC:RR:CC
```

Open the specified CAP and remove the ejected cleaning cartridge and dispose of it.

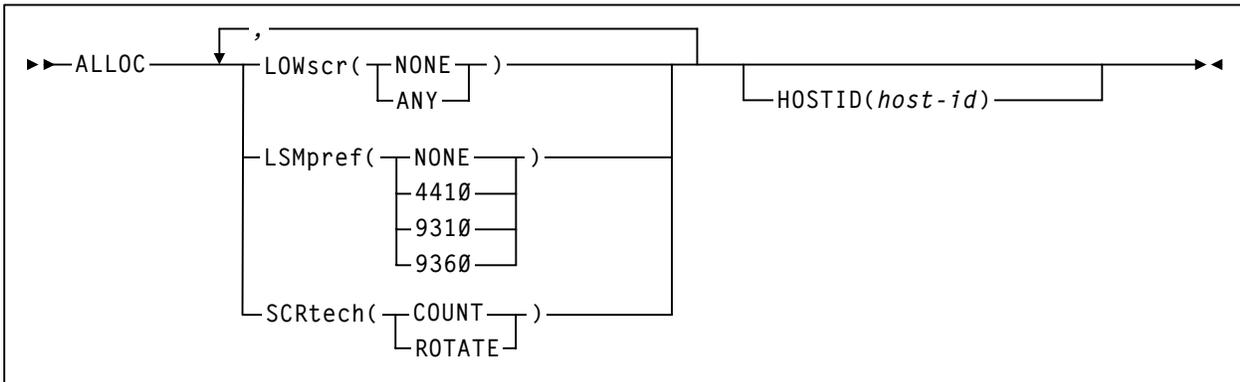
# Appendix A. Commands and Control Statements Syntax Reference

---

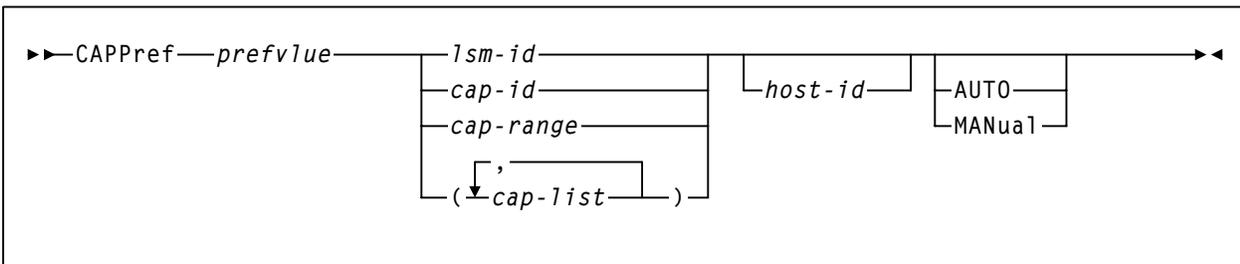
## Operator Commands

Refer to Chapter 2, “Commands, Control Statements, and Utilities” for complete explanations of command syntax and parameters.

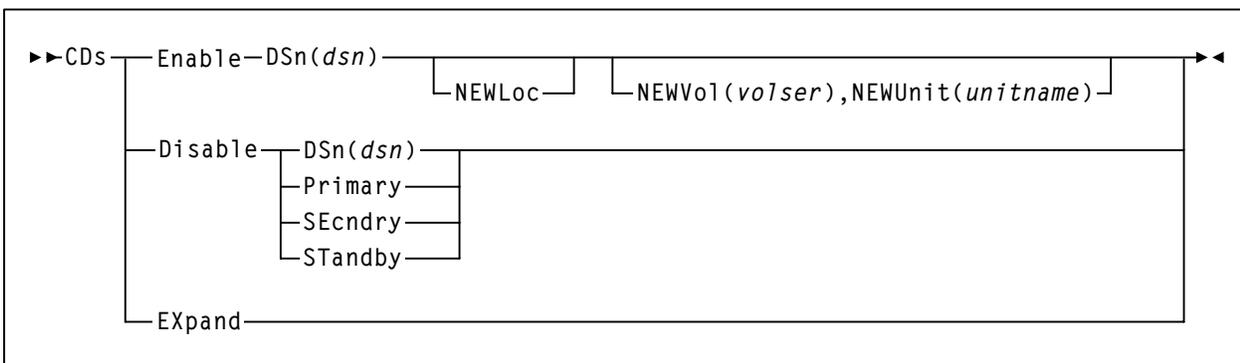
## Allocation ALLOC) command and control statement



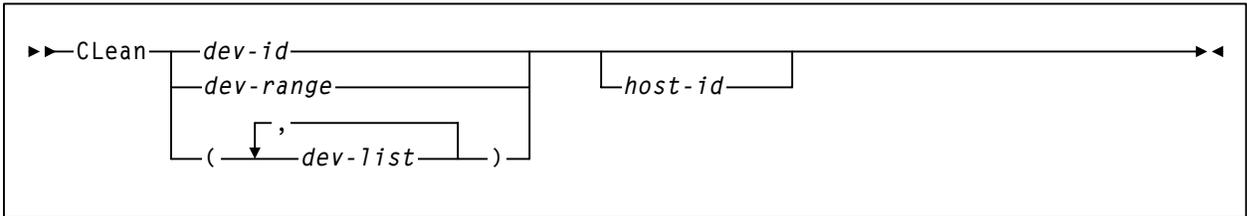
## CAP Preference (CAPPref) command and control statement



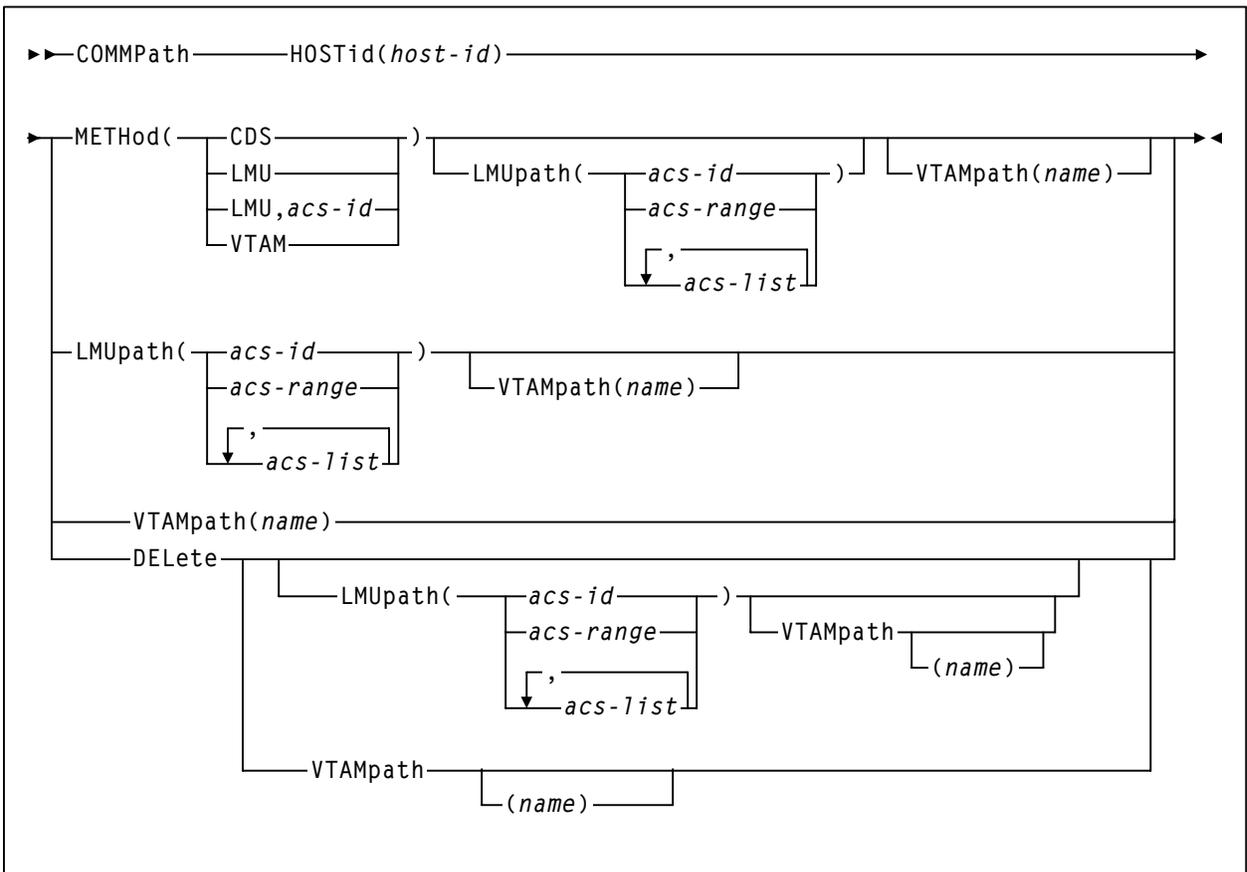
## CDs Enable/Disable command



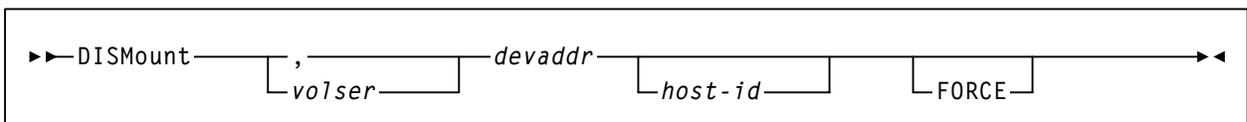
## CLean command



## Communications Path (COMMPath) command and control statement

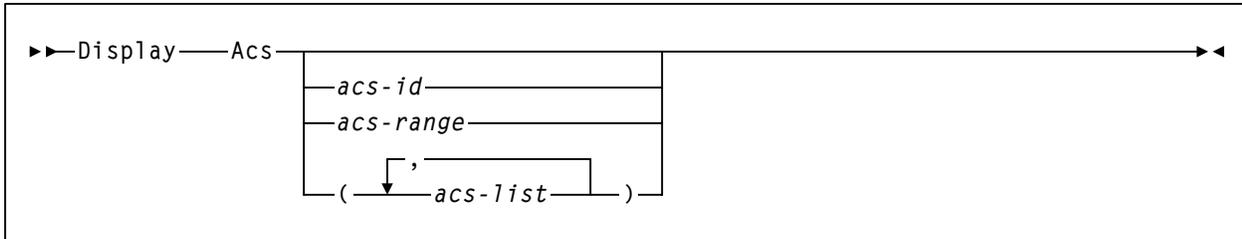


## DISMount command

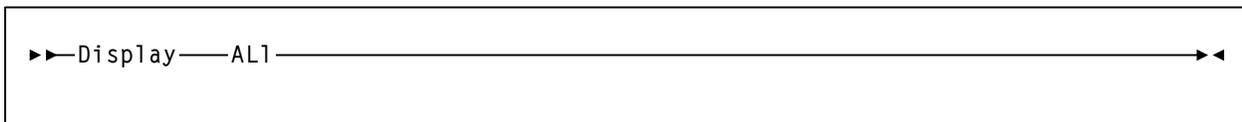


## Display command

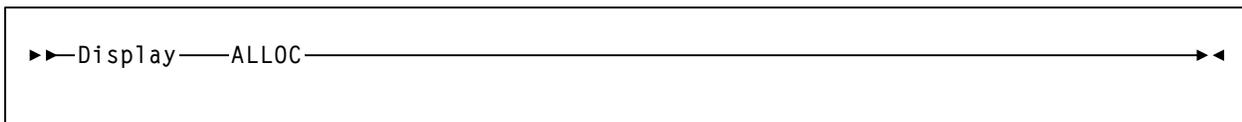
### Display Acs



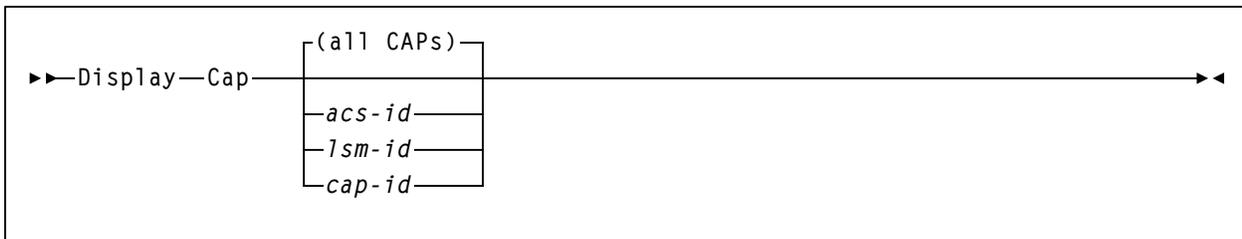
### Display ALI



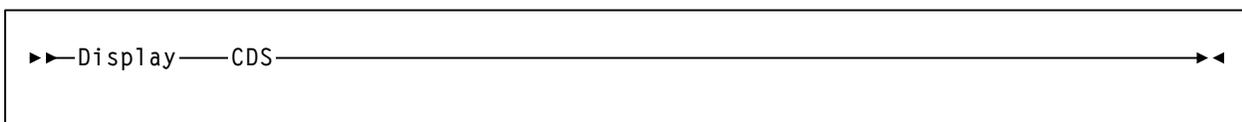
### Display ALLOC



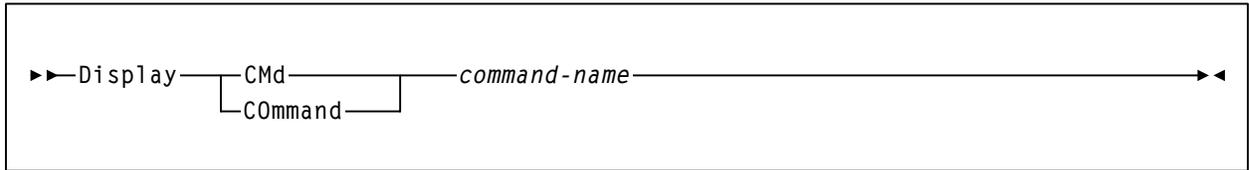
### Display Cap



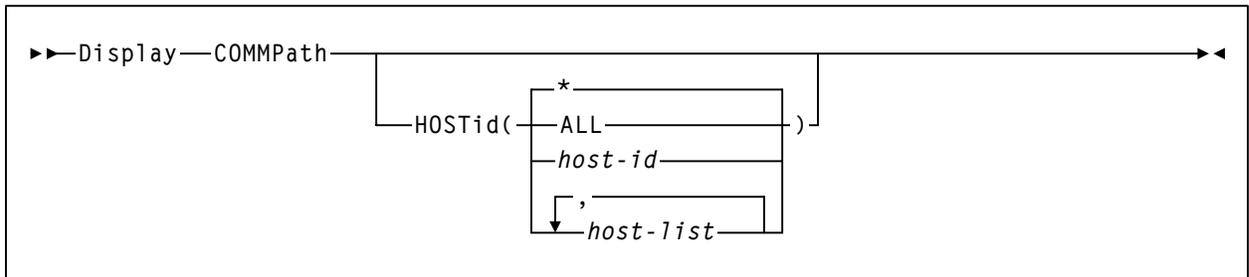
### Display CDS



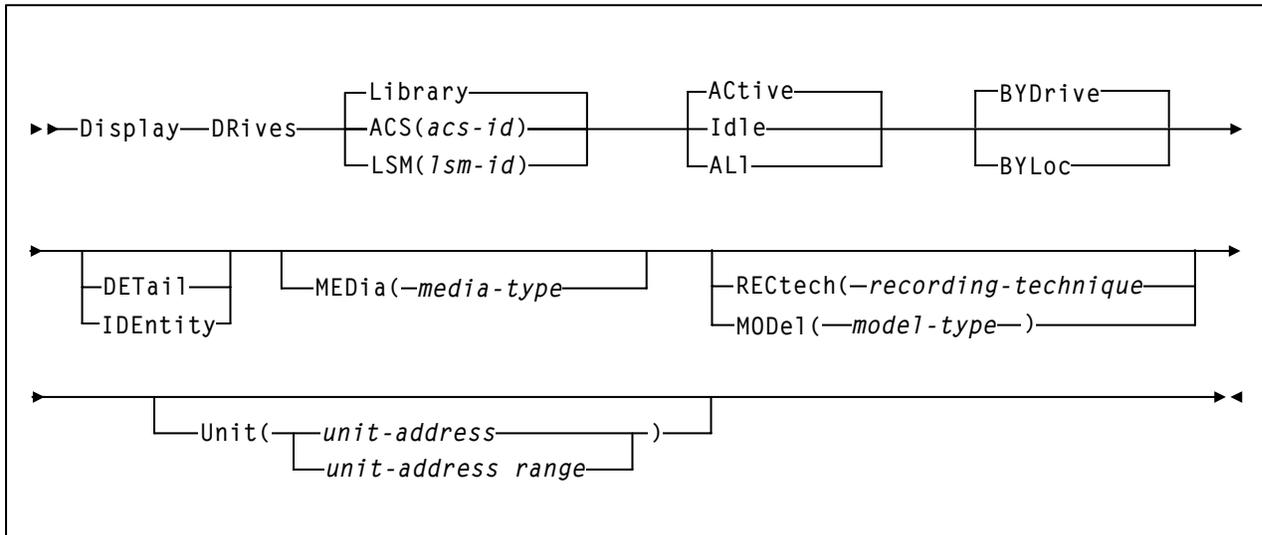
## Display Cmd



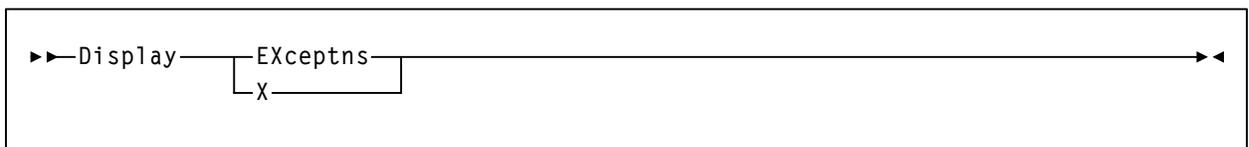
## Display COMMPath



## Display DRives



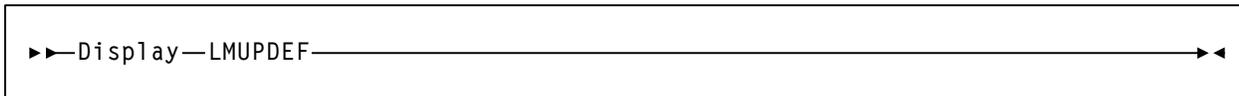
## Display Exceptions



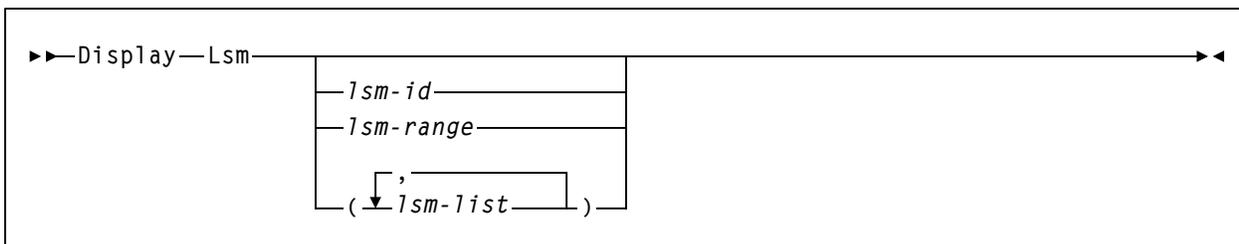
### Display LKEYDEF



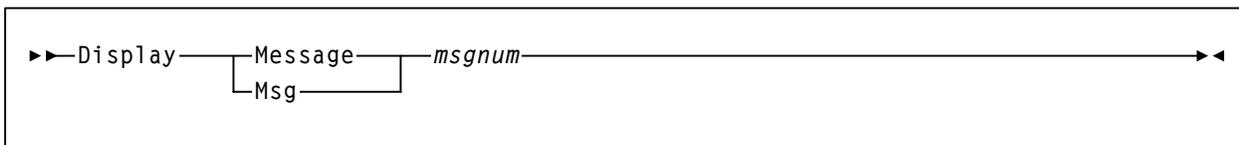
### Display LMUPDEF



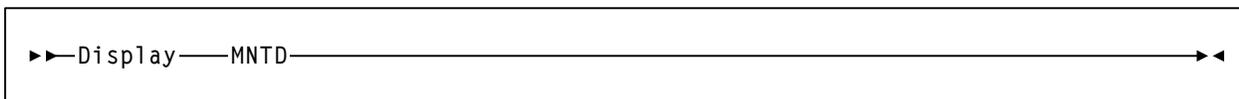
### Display LSM



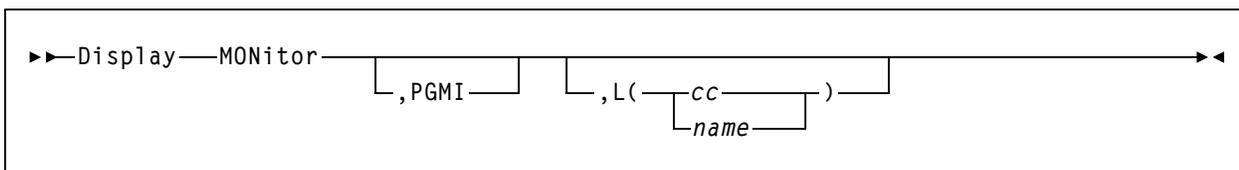
### Display Message



### Display MNTD



### Display MONitor



## Display OPTion

►► Display — OPTion ◀◀

## Display Requests

►► Display — Requests ◀◀

## Display SCRatch

►► Display — SCRatch ◀◀

┌ *acs-id* ─┐ ┌ ALL ─┐ ┌ SUBpool(*subpool-name*) ─┐ ┌ DETail ─┐

└ *lsm-id* ─┘

┌ MEDia(*media-type*) ─┐ ┌ RECtech(*recording-technique*) ─┐

## Display SCRDEF

►► Display — SCRDEF ◀◀

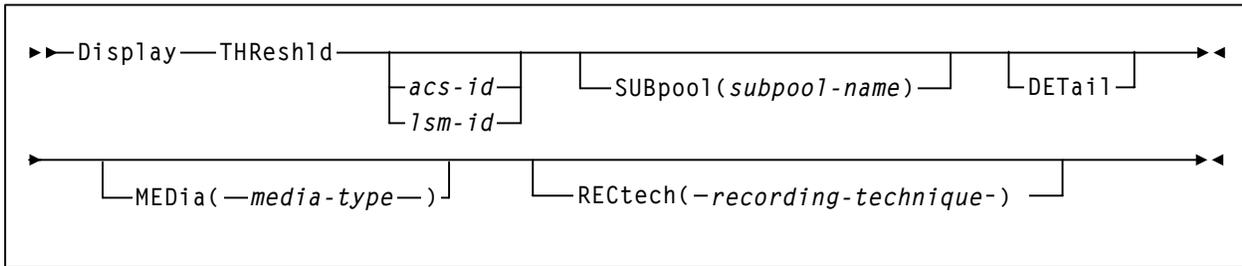
## Display SRVlev

►► Display — SRVlev ◀◀

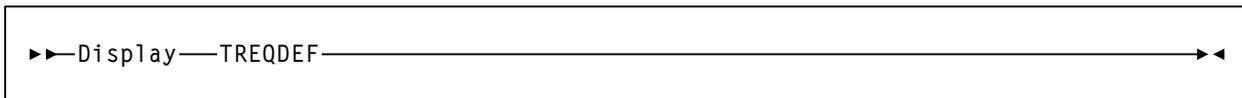
## Display Status

►► Display — Status ◀◀

## Display THReshd



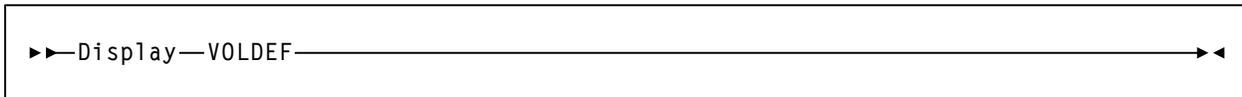
## Display TREQDEF



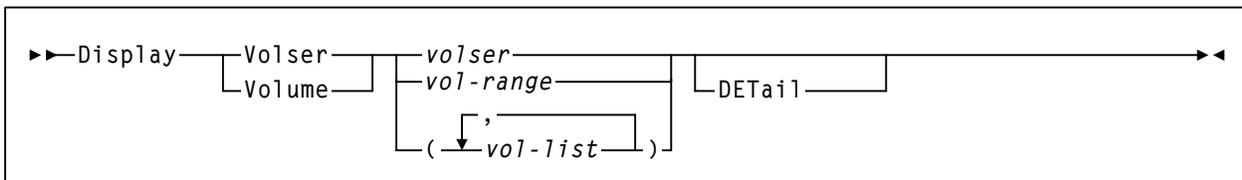
## Display UNITDEF



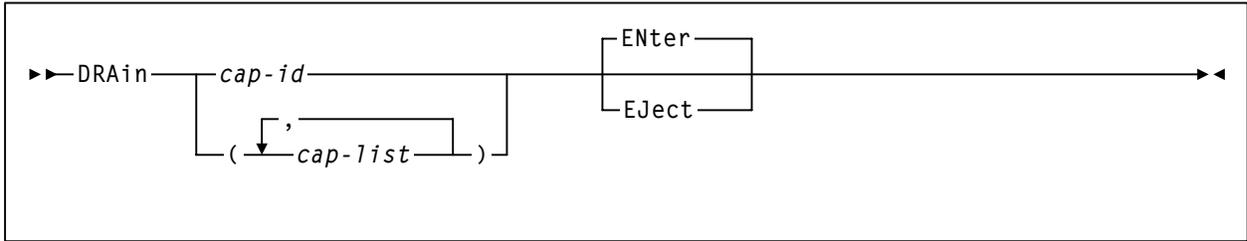
## Display VOLDEF



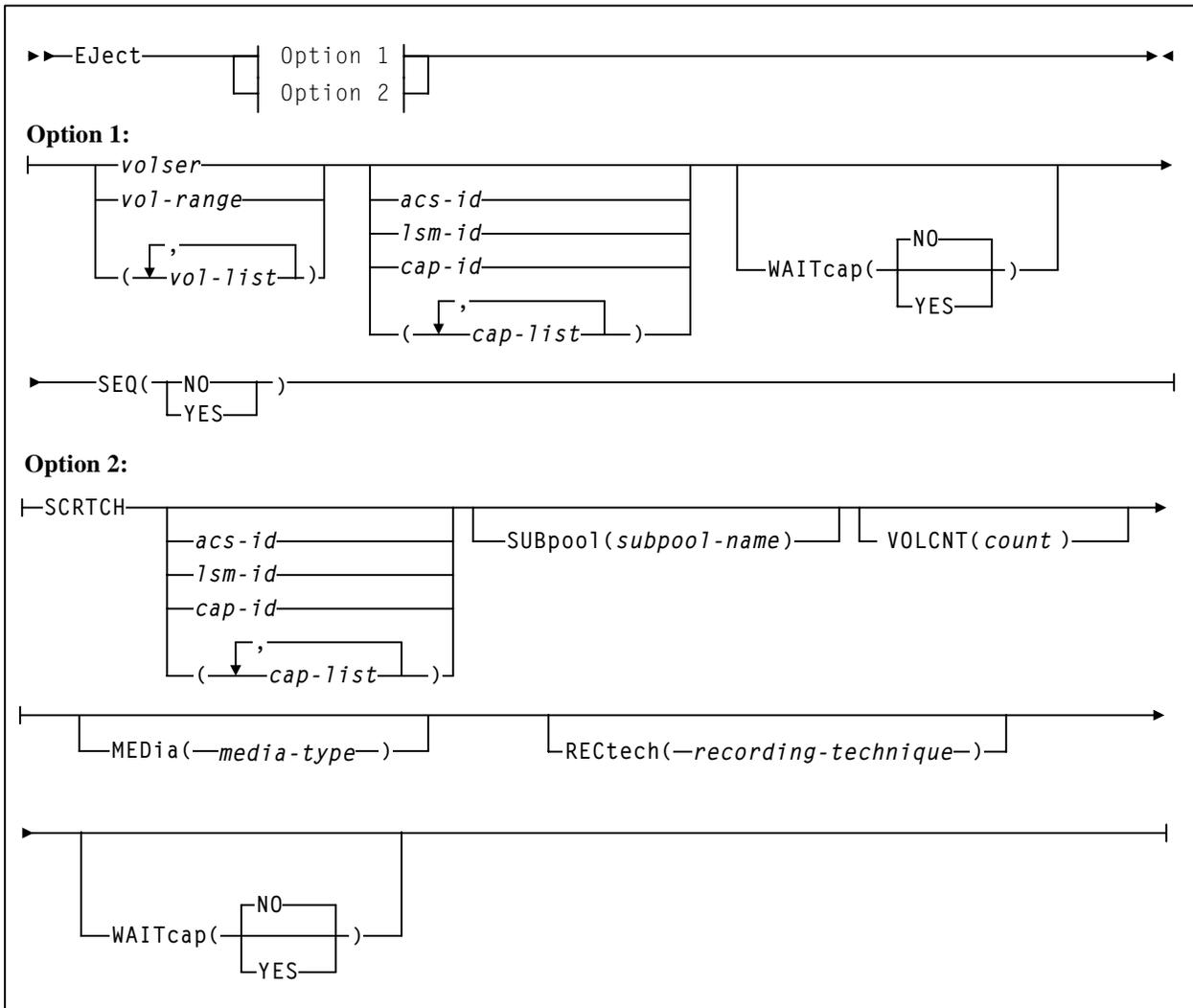
## Display Volume



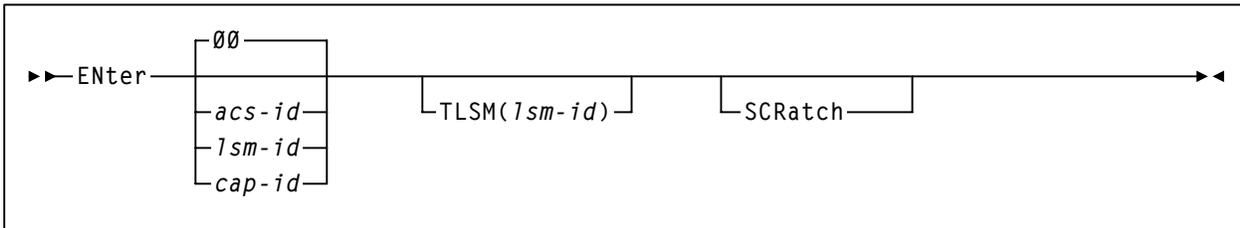
## DRAIn CAP command



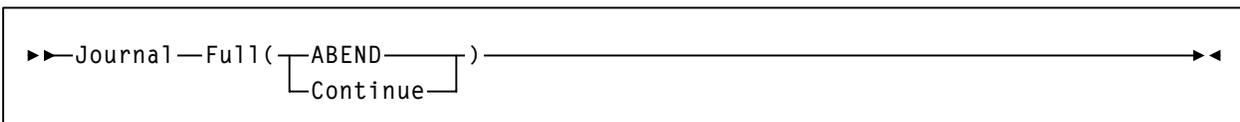
## EJect command



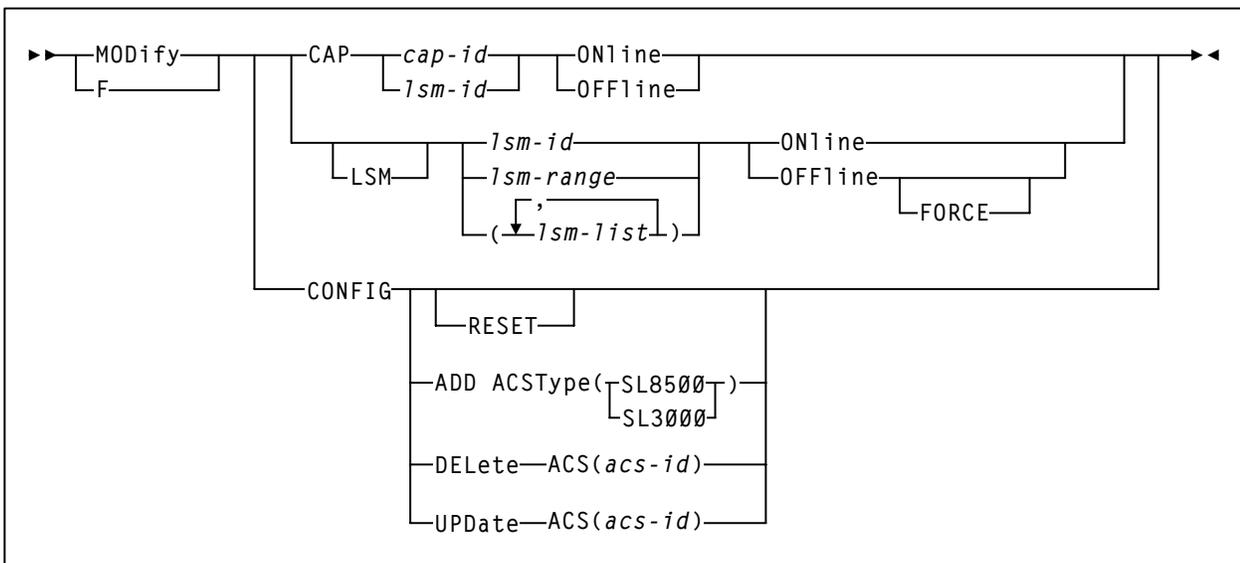
## ENter command



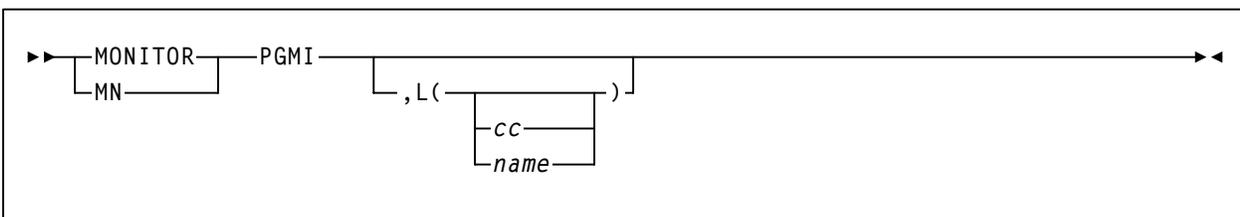
## Journal command



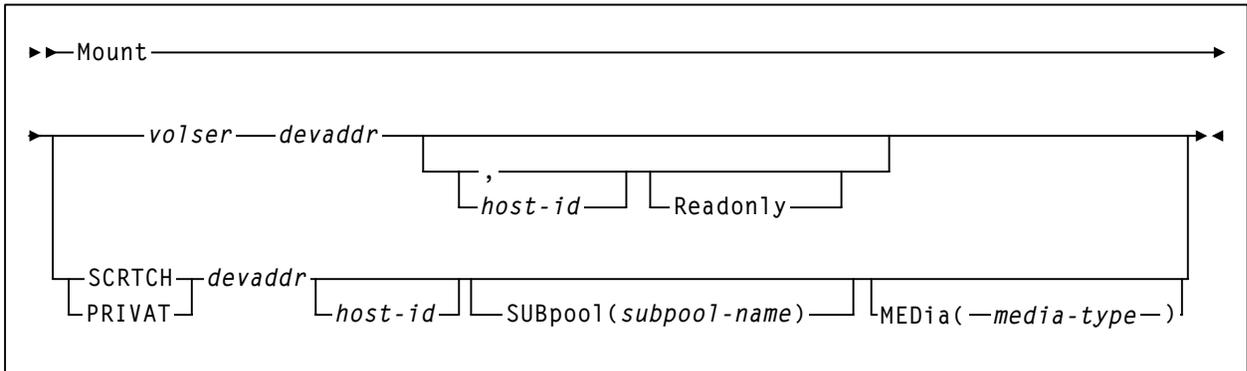
## MODify command



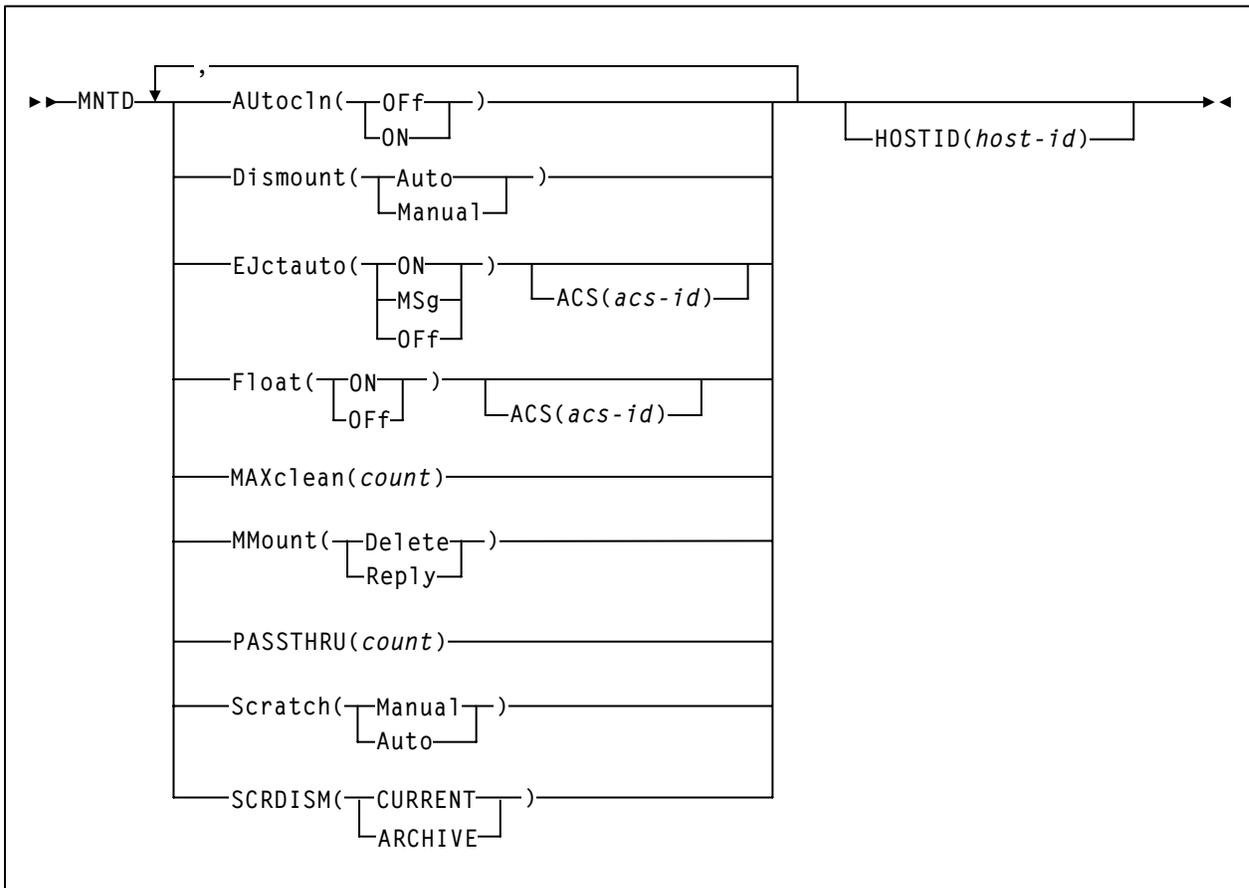
## MONITOR command



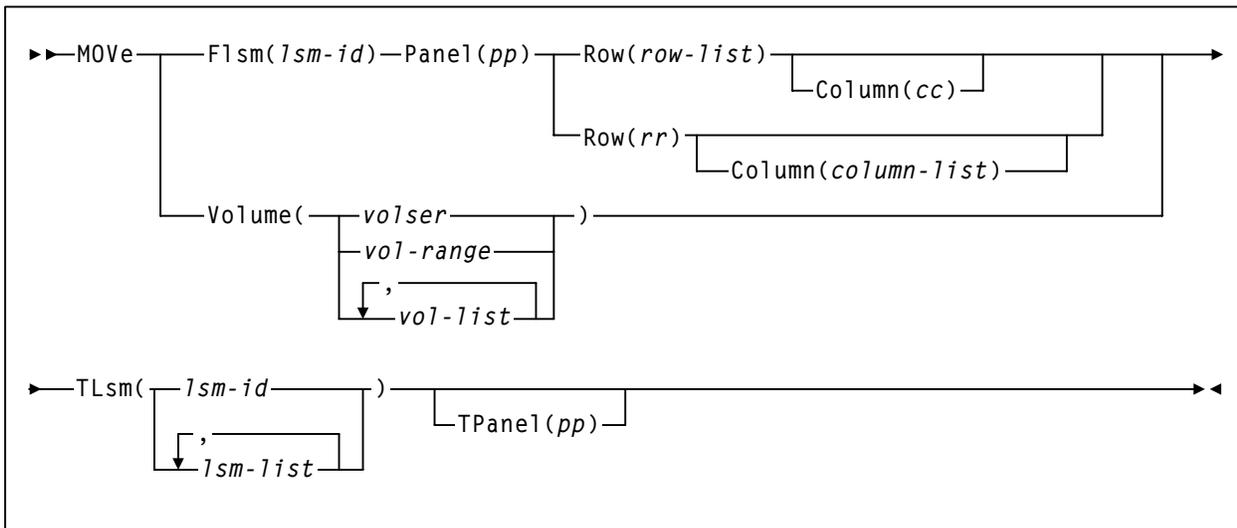
## Mount command



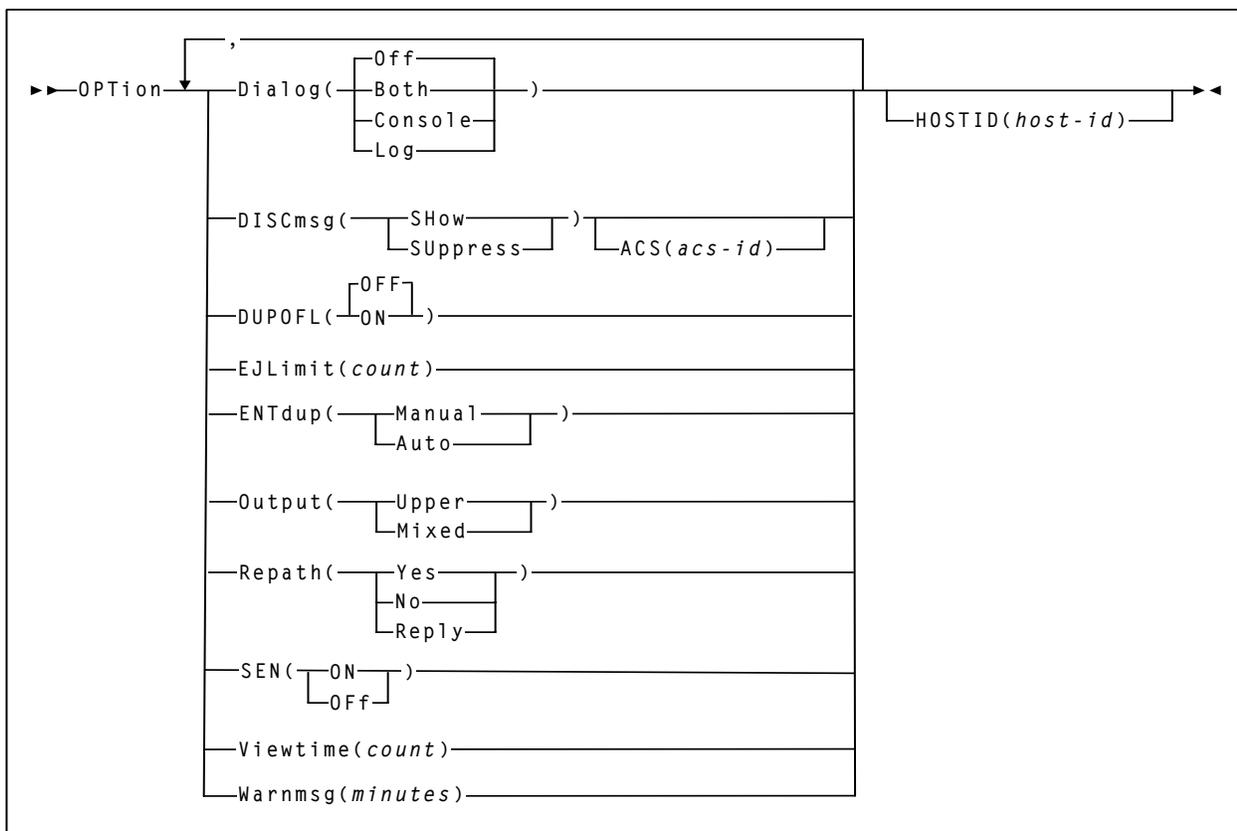
## Mount/Dismount Options (MNTD) command and control statement



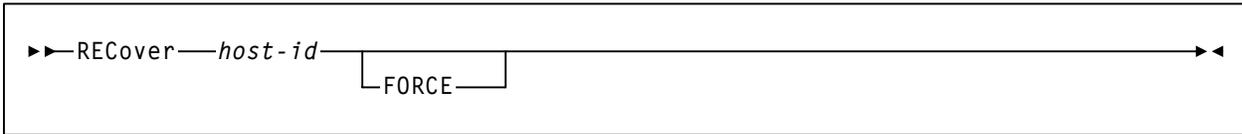
## MOVE command



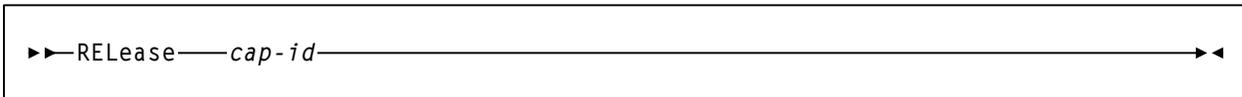
## OPTion command and control statement



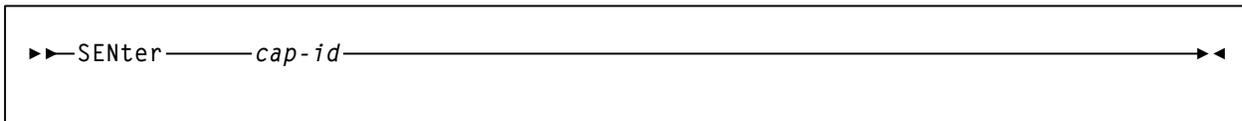
## RECover Host command



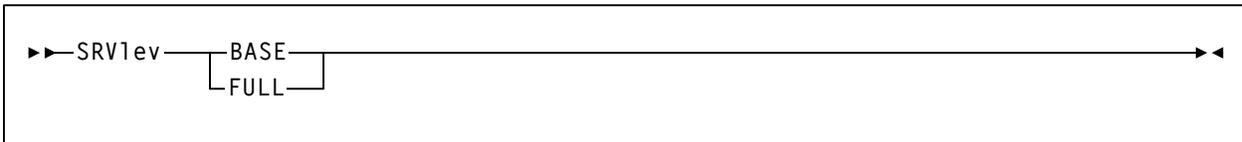
## RELease CAP command



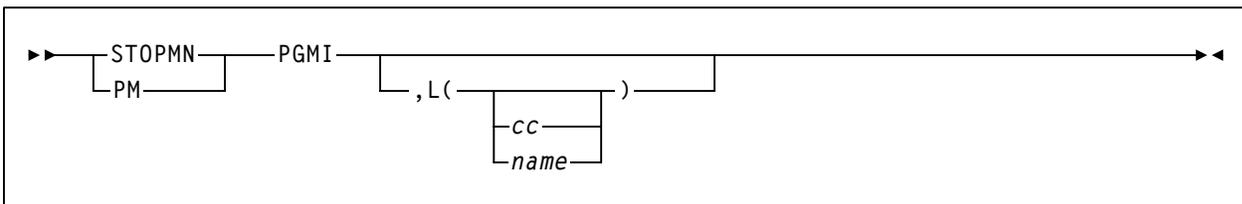
## SENter command



## SRVlev (Service Level) command

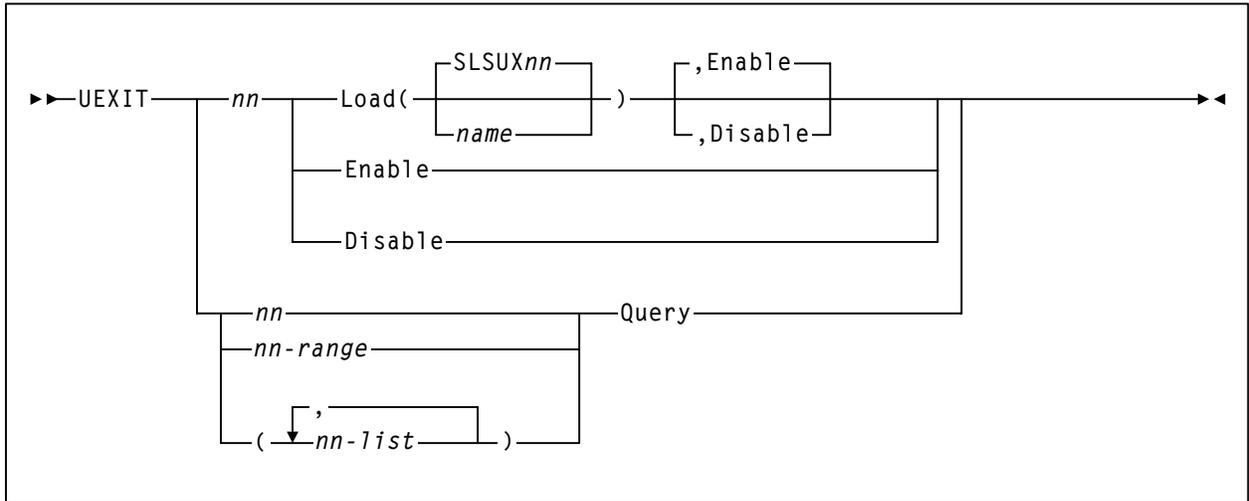


## Stop Monitoring (STOPMN) command

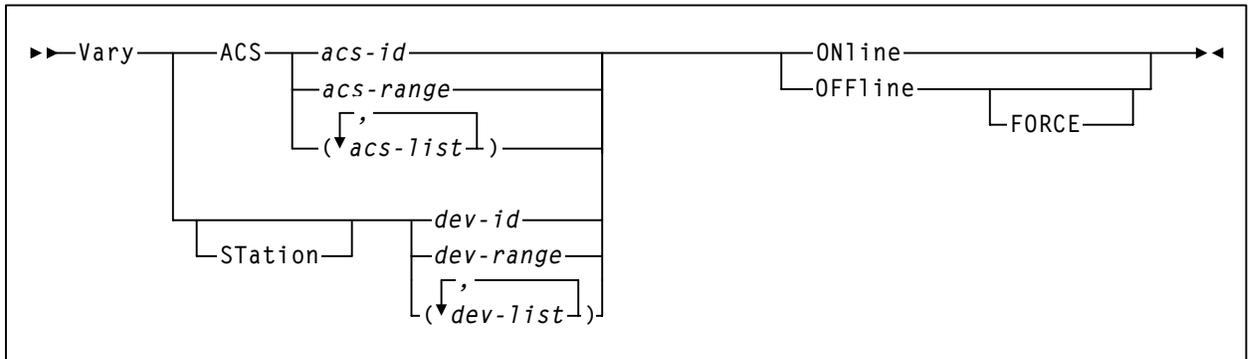




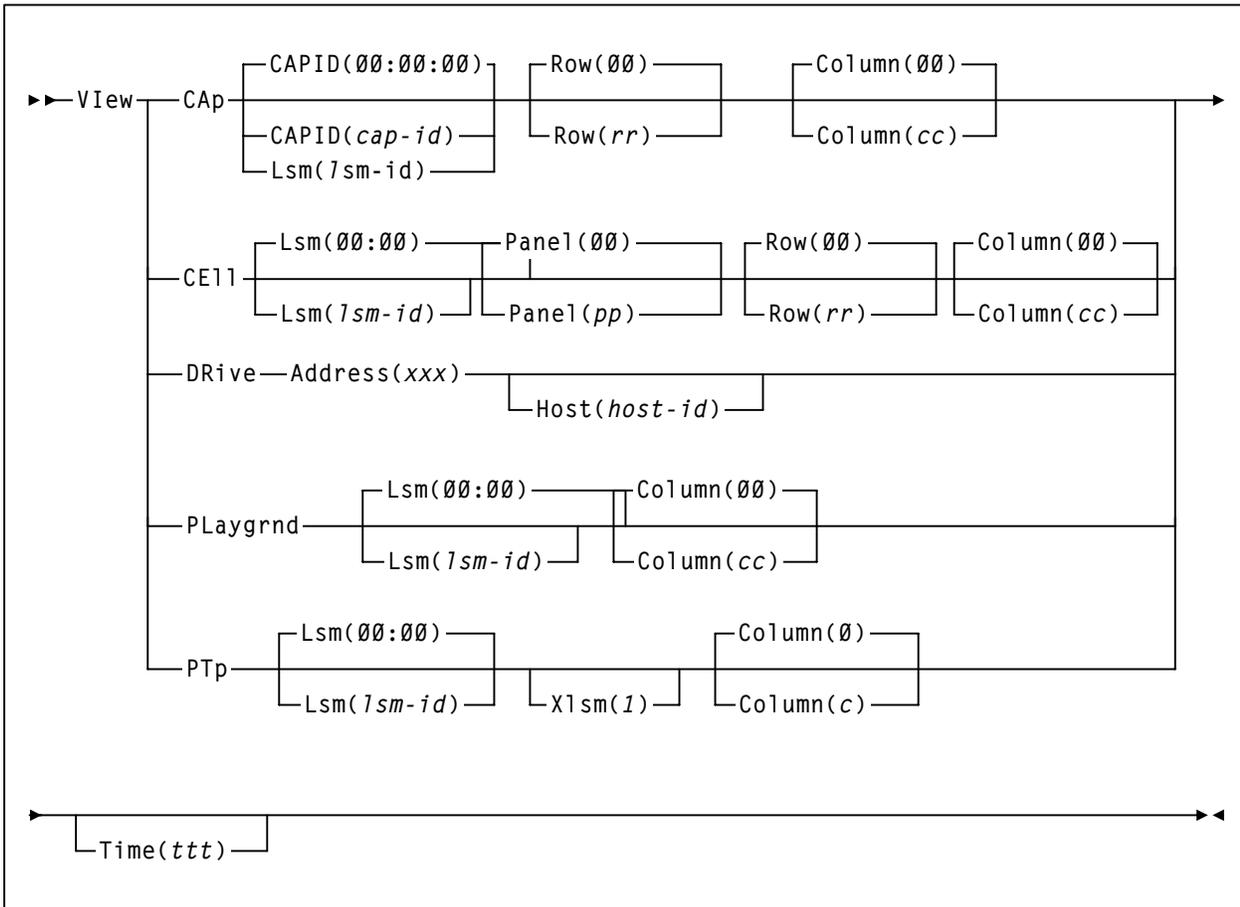
## User Exit (UEXIT) command and control statement



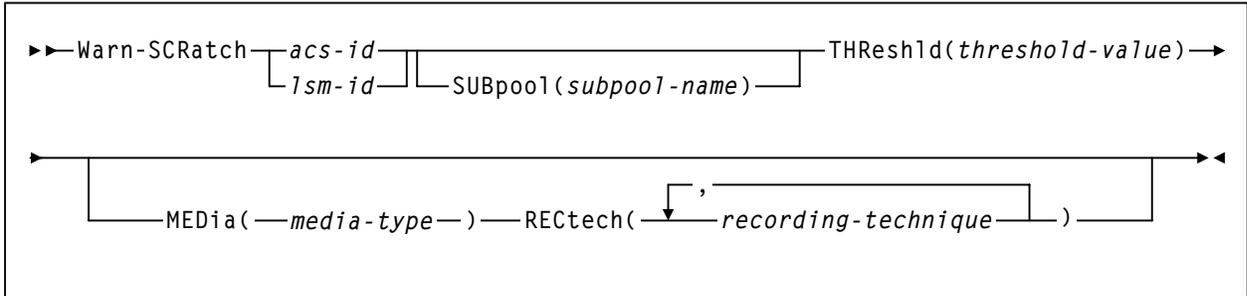
## Vary Station command



## View command



## Warn command





## Glossary

---

Terms are defined as they are used in the text. If you cannot find a term here, check the index.

### A

**AC**— Alternating current.

**access method**— A technique for moving data between processor storage and I/O devices.

**ACS**— *See* Automated Cartridge System.

**ACSid**— An ACSid (*acs-id*) is a hexadecimal value from 00 through FF that identifies the LMU. An ACSid is the result of defining the SLIALIST macro during the library generation (LIBGEN) process. The first ACS listed in this macro acquires a hexadecimal identifier of 00, the second acquires a hexadecimal identifier of 01, and so forth, until all ACSs are identified.

**allocation**— The selection of a cartridge drive, either inside the library or outside (by the SMC software for SMC allocation, or MVS for MVS allocation without the HSC).

**APF**— Authorized Program Facility.

**APPL**— VTAM APPLID definition for the HSC.

**archiving**— The storage of backup files and associated journals, usually for a given period of time.

**Automated Cartridge System (ACS)**— The library subsystem consisting of one or two LMUs, and from 1 to 16 attached LSMs.

**automated library**— *See* library.

**automatic mode**— A relationship between an LSM and all attached hosts. LSMs operating in automatic mode handle cartridges without operator

intervention. This is the normal operating mode of an LSM that has been modified online.

### B

**basic direct access method (BDAM)**— An access method used to directly retrieve or update particular blocks of a data set on a direct access device.

**basic sequential access method (BSAM)**— An access method for storing and retrieving data blocks in a continuous sequence, using either a sequential access or direct access device.

**BDAM**— *See* Basic direct access method.

**beginning-of-tape (BOT)**— The location on a tape where written data begins.

**block**— A collection of contiguous records recorded as a unit. Blocks are separated by interblock gaps, and each block may contain one or more records.

**BOT**— *See* beginning-of-tape.

**BSAM**— *See* Basic Sequential Access Method.

**buffer**— A routine or storage used to compensate for a difference in rate of data flow, or time of occurrence of events, when transferring data from one device to another.

### C

**CA-1 (TMS)**— Computer Associates Tape Management

**System**— Third-party software by Computer Associates International, Inc.

**CAP**— *See* Cartridge Access Port.

**capacity**— *See* media capacity.

**CAPid**— A CAPid uniquely defines the location of a CAP by the LSM on which it resides. A CAPid is of the form *AAL:CC* where *AA* is the ACSid, *L* is the LSM number, and *CC* is the CAP number. Some commands and utilities permit an abbreviated CAPid format of *AAL*.

**cartridge**— The plastic housing around the tape. It is approximately 4 inches (100 mm) by 5 inches (125 mm) by 1 inch (25 mm). The tape is threaded automatically when loaded in a transport. A plastic leader block is attached to the tape for automatic threading. The spine of the cartridge contains a Tri-Optic label listing the VOLSER.

**Cartridge Access Port (CAP)**— An assembly which allows an operator to enter and eject cartridges during automated operations. The CAP is located on the access door of an LSM.

*See also* standard CAP, enhanced CAP, priority CAP, WolfCreek CAP, WolfCreek optional CAP, or TimberWolf CAP.

**Cartridge Drive (CD)**— A device containing two or four cartridge transports with associated power and pneumatic supplies.

**Cartridge Scratch Loader**— An optional feature for the Cartridge Drive. It allows the automatic loading of premounted tape cartridges or the manual loading of single tape cartridges.

**cartridge system tape**— Also known as a Standard tape. The basic tape cartridge media that can be used with 4480, 4490, or 9490 Cartridge Subsystems. They are visually identified by a one-color cartridge case.

**CAW**— *See* Channel Address Word.

**CD**— *See* Cartridge Drive.

**CDRM**— Cross Domain Resource Manager definition (if not using existing CDRMs).

**CDRSC**— Cross Domain Resource definition.

**CDS**— *See* control data set.

**CE**— Channel End.

**CEL**— Customer Emulation Lab. cell. A storage slot in the LSM that is used to store a tape cartridge.

**Central Support Remote Center (CSRC)**— *See* Remote Diagnostics Center.

**CFT**— Customer Field Test.

**channel**— A device that connects the host and main storage with the input and output control units.

**Channel Address Word (CAW)**— An area in storage that specifies the location in main storage where a channel program begins.

**channel command**— A command received by a CU from a channel.

**Channel Status Word (CSW)**— An area in storage that provides information about the termination of I/O operations.

**check**— Detection of an error condition.

**CI**— Converter/Interpreter (JES3).

**connected mode**— A relationship between a host and an ACS. In this mode, the host and an ACS are capable of communicating (at least one station to this ACS is online).

**control data set (CDS)**— The data set containing all configuration and volume information used by the host software to control the functions of the automated library. Also known as a library control data set.

*See also* Primary CDS, Secondary CDS, and Standby CDS.

**control data set allocation map**— A CDS subfile that marks individual blocks as used or free.

**control data set data blocks**— CDS blocks that contain information about the library and its configuration or environment.

**control data set directory**— A part of the CDS that maps its subdivision into subfiles.

**control data set free blocks**— CDS blocks available for future subfile expansion.

**control data set pointer blocks**— CDS blocks that contain pointers to map data blocks belonging to a subfile.

**control data set recovery area**— A portion of the CDS reserved for maintaining integrity for updates that affect multiple CDS blocks.

**control data set subfile**— A portion of the CDS consisting of Data Blocks and Pointer Blocks containing related information.

**Control Unit (CU)**— (1) A microprocessor-based unit situated logically between a host channel (or channels) and from two to sixteen transports. It functions to translate channel commands into transport commands, send transport status to the channel(s), and pass data between the channel(s) and transport(s). (2) A device that controls I/O operations for one or more devices. cross-host recovery. The ability for one host to perform recovery for another host that has failed.

**CSE**— Customer Service Engineer.

**CSI**— Consolidated System Inventory.

**CSL**— *See* Cartridge Scratch Loader.

**CSRC**— Central Support Remote Center (*See* Remote Diagnostics Center)

**CST**— (1) A value that can be specified on the MEDia parameter and that includes only standard capacity cartridge tapes. (2) An alias of Standard. (3) *See* Cartridge System Tape.

**CSW**— *See* Channel Status Word.

**CU**— *See* Control Unit.

## D

**DAE**— Dump Analysis Elimination.

**DASD**— Direct access storage device.

**data**— Any representations such as characters or analog quantities to which meaning is, or might be, assigned.

**Database Heartbeat record (DHB)**— The record that contains the names of the control data sets recorded by the HSC and identifies the correct primary, secondary, and standby CDS.

**data class**— A collection of allocation and space attributes, defined by the storage administrator, that are used to create a data set.

**data compaction**— An algorithmic data-reduction technique that encodes data from the host and stores it in less space than unencoded data. The original data is recovered by an inverse process called decompression.

**data-compaction ratio**— The number of host data bytes mathematically divided by the number of encoded bytes. It is variable depending on the characteristics of the data being processed. The more random the data stream, the lower the opportunity to achieve compaction.

**Data Control Block (DCB)**— A control block used by access routines in storing and retrieving data.

**data set**— The major unit of data storage and retrieval, consisting of a collection of data in one of several prescribed arrangements and described by control information to which the system has access.

**data streaming**— A continuous stream of data being transmitted in character or binary-digit form, using a specified format.

**DC**— Direct current.

**DCB**— *See* Data Control Block.

**DD3**— A generic value that can be specified on the MEDia and RECtech parameters and includes all types of helical cartridges and recording techniques.

**DD3A, DD3B, DD3C, DD3D**— Values that can be specified on the MEDia parameter and include only the specified type of helical cartridge. Aliases are A, B, C, and D, respectively.

**DDR**— *See* Dynamic Device Reconfiguration.

**default value**— A value assumed when no value has been specified.

**demand allocation**— An MVS term meaning that a user has requested a specific unit.

**device allocation**— The HSC function of *influencing* the MVS device selection process to choose either a manual transport or a transport in a particular ACS, based on the location of the volume (specific requests) or the subpool rules in effect (scratch requests).

**device group**— A subset of the eligible devices. Device groups are defined by esoteric unit names but also may be created implicitly if common devices exist in different device groups.

**device number**— A four-digit hexadecimal number that uniquely identifies a device attached to a processor.

**device separation**— *See* drive exclusion.

**DFP**— Data Facility Product. A program that isolates applications from storage devices, storage management, and storage device hierarchy management.

**DFSMS**— Refers to an environment running MVS/ESA SP and DFSMS/MVS, DFSORT, and RACF. This environment helps automate and centralize the management of storage through a combination of hardware, software, and policies.

**DFSMS ACS routine**— A sequence of instructions for having the system assign data class, storage class, management class, and storage group for a data set.

**DHB**— *See* Database Heartbeat record.

**directed allocation**— *See* drive prioritization.

**disconnected mode**— A relationship between a host and an ACS. In this mode, the host and an ACS are not capable of communicating (there are no online stations to this ACS).

**DOMed**— Pertaining to a console message that was previously highlighted during execution, but is now at normal intensity.

**drive exclusion**— (previously referred to as *device separation*) refers to the Storage Management Component (SMC) function of excluding drives for an allocation request based on SMC exclusion criteria. *See the SMC Configuration and Administration Guide* for more information.

**drive loaded**— A condition of a transport in which a tape cartridge has been inserted in the transport, and the tape has been threaded to the beginning-of-tape position.

**drive panel**— A wall of an LSM that contains tape transports. Drive panels for 9840 transports have either 10 or 20 transports per panel; drive panels for

all other transports contain up to four transports per panel.

**drive prioritization**— (previously referred to as *directed allocation*) refers to the Storage Management Component (SMC) function of influencing selection of a particular drive based on allocation criteria, including volume location. *See the SMC Configuration and Administration Guide* for more information.

**DRIVEid**— A DRIVEid uniquely defines the location of a tape transport by its location within an LSM. A DRIVEid is of the form *AAL:PP:NN* where *AA* is the ACSid, *L* is the LSM number, *PP* is the panel where the drive is located, and *NN* is the drive number within the panel.

**DSI**— Dynamic System Interchange (JES3).

**dual LMU**— A hardware/ $\mu$ -software feature that provides a redundant LMU capability.

**dual LMU HSC**— HSC release 1.1.0 or later that automates a switch-over to the standby LMU in a dual LMU configuration.

**dump**— To write the contents of storage, or of a part of storage, usually from an internal storage to an external medium, for a specific purpose such as to allow other use of storage, as a safeguard against faults or errors, or in connection with debugging.

**Dynamic Device Reconfiguration (DDR)**— An MVS facility that allows a dismountable volume to be moved and repositioned if necessary, without abnormally terminating the job or repeating the initial program load procedure.

## E

**ECAP**— *See* enhanced CAP.

**ECART**— (1) Cartridge system tape with a length of 1100 feet that can be used with 4490 and 9490 Cartridge Drives. These tapes are visually identified by a two-tone (black and tan) colored case. (2) A value that can be specified on the MEDIA parameter and that includes only 36-track enhanced capacity cartridge system tapes. (3) *See* Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape.

**ECCST**— (1) A value that can be specified on the MEDiA parameter and that includes only enhanced capacity cartridge system tapes. (2) An alias of ECART. (3) *See* Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape.

**EDL**— *See* eligible device list.

**EDTGEN**— Eligible Device Table Generation. A process used to replace an installation-defined and named representation of the devices that are eligible for allocation.

**EETape**— *See* Extended Enhanced Tape.

**Effective Recording Density**— The number of user bytes per unit of length of the recording medium.

**eject**— The process where the LSM robot places a cartridge in a Cartridge Access Port (CAP) so the operator can remove it from the LSM.

**eligible device list**— (1) A group of transports that are available to satisfy an allocation request. (2) For JES2 and JES3, a list of devices representing the UNIT parameter specified by way of invoking JCL. The EDL can contain both library and nonlibrary transports depending on the I/O GEN.

**enable**— The modification of system, control unit, or device action through the change of a software module or a hardware switch (circuit jumper) position.

**enhanced CAP (ECAP)**— An enhanced CAP contains two forty-cell magazine-style CAPs and a one-cell priority CAP (PCAP). Each forty-cell CAP holds four removable magazines of ten cells each. An LSM access door with an enhanced CAP contains no cell locations for storing cartridges.

*See also* Cartridge Access Port, standard CAP, priority CAP, WolfCreek CAP, WolfCreek optional CAP, or TimberWolf CAP.

**Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape**— Cartridge system tape with increased capacity that can be used with 4490 and 9490 Cartridge Drives. These tapes are visually identified by a two-tone (black and tan) housing.

**EOF**— End-of-File.

**EOT**— End-of-Tape marker.

**EPO**— Emergency Power Off.

**EREP**— Environmental Recording, Editing, Printing.

**ERP**— *See* error recovery procedures.

**error recovery procedures (ERP)**— Procedures designed to help isolate and, where possible, to recover from errors in equipment.

**esoteric**— A user-defined name that groups devices into classes.

**ETAPE**— (1) A value that can be specified on the MEDiA parameter and that includes only enhanced capacity cartridge system tapes. (2) An alias of ECART. (3) *See* Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape.

**Extended Capacity Tape**— *See* Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape.

**Extended Enhanced Tape (EETape)**— A synonym for a ZCART, which is a cartridge that can only be used with a 9490EE drive. An EETape (ZCART) provides greater storage capacity than an ECART.

**ExtendedStore Library**— One or more LSMs with no Cartridge Drives (CDs) that are attached by pass-thru ports to other LSMs (with CDs) in an ACS. These LSMs provide archive storage for cartridges containing less active data sets. Cartridges can be entered and ejected directly into and out of this LSM though either a standard CAP or an enhanced CAP.

## F

**FDRPAS™**— A product from Innovation Data Processing, Inc. that allows two disk devices to be non-disruptively swapped with each other.

**FIFO**— First in, first out.

**file protected**— Pertaining to a tape volume from which data can be read only. Data cannot be written on or erased from the tape.

**format**— The arrangement or layout of data on a data medium.

**frozen panel**— A panel to which cartridges cannot be moved. This restriction includes allocating new cartridge locations on a panel as a result of:

- a MOVE command, utility, or PGMI request
- cartridge entry into the ACS
- float, scratch dismount, or scratch redistribution processing.

## G

**GB**— Gigabyte, billion ( $10^9$ ) bytes.

**GDG**— Generation Data Group. An MVS data set naming convention. Sequence numbers are appended to the basic data set name to track the generations created for that data set.

**GDG Separation**— Occurs when a Generation Data Group gets separated because the volumes of different generations reside in different locations. Usually, all generations of a GDG are mounted on a single drive to reduce the number of drives needed for a job.

**GTF**— Generalized Trace Facility. An MVS facility used to trace software functions and events.

## H

**HDA**— Head/disk assembly.

**Helical**— A generic value that can be specified on the RECTECH parameter and includes all helical transports.

**HOSTid**— A HOSTid is the host identifier specified in the HOSTID parameter of the SLILIBRY LIBGEN macro. The HOSTid is the SMF system identifier for both JES2 and JES3.

**High Watermark Setup (HWS)**— In JES3, a setting specified on the HWSNAME initialization statement that reduces the number of devices reserved for a job. JES3 accomplishes this task by assessing each jobstep to determine the maximum number of devices needed for each device type and reserving those devices.

**Host Software Component (HSC)**— That portion of the Automated Cartridge System which executes on host systems attached to an automated library. This component acts as the interface between the

operating system and the rest of the automated library.

**host system**— A data processing system that is used to prepare programs and the operating environments for use on another computer or controller.

**HSC**— *See* Host Software Component.

**HWS**— *See* High Watermark Setup.

## I

**ICRC**— *See* Improved Cartridge Recording Capability.

**ID**— Identifier or identification.

**IDAX**— Interpreter Dynamic Allocation Exit. This is a subfunction of the DFSMS/MVS subsystem request (SSREQ 55) that the MVS JCL Interpreter and dynamic allocation functions issue for calling DFSMS ACS routines for management of the data set requested.

**IDRC**— Improved Data Recording Capability.

**IML**— *See* Initial Microprogram Load.

**Improved Cartridge Recording Capability (ICRC)**— An improved data recording mode that, when enabled, can increase the effective cartridge data capacity and the effective data rate when invoked.

**index**— A function performed by the cartridge scratch loader that moves cartridges down the input or output stack one cartridge position. A scratch loader can perform multiple consecutive indexes.

**INISH deck**— A set of JES3 initialization statements.

**Initial Microprogram Load (IML)**— A process that activates a machine reset and loads system programs to prepare a computer system for operation. Processors having diagnostic programs activate these programs at IML execution. Devices running  $\mu$ -software reload the functional  $\mu$ -software usually from a floppy diskette at IML execution.

**Initial Program Load (IPL)**— A process that activates a machine reset and loads system programs to prepare a computer system for operation. Processors having diagnostic programs activate these

programs at IPL execution. Devices running  $\mu$ -software reload the functional  $\mu$ -software usually from a floppy diskette at IPL execution.

**initial value**— A value assumed until explicitly changed. It must then be explicitly specified in another command to restore the initial value. An initial value for the HSC is the value in effect when the product is installed.

**inline diagnostics**— Diagnostic routines that test subsystem components while operating on a time-sharing basis with the functional  $\mu$ -software in the subsystem component.

**input stack**— The part of the cartridge loader where cartridges are premounted.

**intervention required**— Manual action is needed.

**IPL**— *See* Initial Program Load.

**ips**— Inches per second.

**IVP**— Installation Verification Programs. A package of programs that is run by a user after the library is installed in order to verify that the library is functioning properly.

## J

**JCL**— *See* Job Control Language.

**Job Control Language**— Problem-oriented language designed to express statements in a job that are used to identify the job or describe its requirements to an operating system.

**journal**— The log associated with journaling. The log (stored in a data set) contains a record of completed work and changes to the control data set since the last backup was created.

**journaling**— A technique for recovery that involves creating a backup control data set and maintaining a log of all changes (transactions) to that data set.

**JST**— Job Summary Table (JES3).

## K

**KB**— Kilobyte, thousand ( $10^3$ ) bytes.

**keyword parameter**— In command and utility syntax, operands that include keywords and their related values (*See* positional parameter).

Values are concatenated to the keyword either by an equal sign, “KEYWORD=value,” or by parentheses, “KEYWORD(value).” Keyword parameters can be specified in any order. The HSC accepts (tolerates) multiple occurrences of a keyword. The value assigned to a keyword reflects the last occurrence of a keyword within a command.

## L

**LAN**— *See* Local Area Network.

**LCU**— *See* Library Control Unit.

**LED**— *See* Light Emitting Diode.

**LIBGEN**— The process of defining the configuration of the automated library to the host software.

**library**— An installation of one or more ACSs, attached cartridge drives, volumes placed into the ACSs, host software that controls and manages the ACSs and associated volumes, and the library control data set that describes the state of the ACSs.

**library control data set**— *See* control data set.

**Library Control Unit (LCU)**— The portion of the LSM that controls the picking, mounting, dismounting, and replacing of cartridges.

**Library Management Unit (LMU)**— The portion of the ACS that manages from one to sixteen LSMs and communicates with the host CPU.

**Library Storage Module (LSM)**— The storage area for cartridges plus the robot necessary to move the cartridges. The term LSM often means the LCU and LSM combined.

**Light Emitting Diode (LED)**— An electronic device used mainly as an indicator on status panels to show equipment on/off conditions.

**Linear Tape Open (LTO)**— A technology developed jointly by HP, IBM, and Seagate for new tape storage options. LTO technology is an open format, which means that users have multiple sources of products and media.

**LMU**— *See* Library Management Unit.

**LMUPATH**— An HSC control statement contained in the definition data set specified by the LMUPDEF command. An LMUPATH statement allows users to define network LMU attachments.

**LMUPDEF**— An HSC command used to load the definition data set that contains LMUPATH control statements.

**load point**— The beginning of the recording area on magnetic tape.

**loader**— *See* Cartridge Scratch Loader.

**Local Area Network (LAN)**— A computer network in which devices within the network can access each other for data transmission purposes. The LMU and attached LCUs are connected with a local area network.

**logical ejection**— The process of removing a volume from the control data set without physically ejecting it from its LSM location.

**Logical End Of Tape**— A point on the tape where written data normally ends.

**LONG**— (1) A value that can be specified on the MEDia parameter and that includes only enhanced capacity cartridge system tapes (not to be confused with LONGitud). (2) An alias of ECART. (3) *See* Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape.

**LONGitud**— (1) A generic value that can be specified on the RECtech parameter and includes all 18-track and 36-track devices. (2) A generic value that can be specified on the MEDia parameter and includes all standard and enhanced capacity cartridge system tapes.

**LSM**— *See* Library Storage Module.

**LSM<sub>id</sub>**— An LSM<sub>id</sub> (*lsm-id*) is a hexadecimal value that consists of the ACS<sub>id</sub> and LSM number separated by a colon (i.e., AA:LL, where AA is the ACS<sub>id</sub> and LL is the LSM<sub>id</sub>). The LSM<sub>id</sub> differentiates an LSM from every other LSM in a library.

**LSM number**— A method used to identify an LSM. An LSM number is the result of defining the SLIACS macro LSM, LSM2, LSM3, and LSM4

parameters during a LIBGEN. The first LSM listed in this parameter acquires the LSM number of 00 (hexadecimal), the second LSM listed acquires a hexadecimal number of 01, and so forth, until all LSMs are identified (maximum of 24 or hexadecimal 17).

**LTO**— *See* Linear Tape Open.

**LTO<sub>x</sub>**— A media type designating either an LTO data cartridge with a capacity between 10GB and 400GB or an LTO cleaning cartridge.

## M

**machine initiated maintenance**— *See* ServiceTek.

**magnetic recording**— A technique of storing data by selectively magnetizing portions of a magnetizable material.

**magnetic tape**— A tape with a magnetizable surface layer on which data can be stored by magnetic recording.

**magnetic tape drive**— A mechanism for moving magnetic tape and controlling its movement.

**maintenance facility**— Hardware contained in the CU and LMU that allows a CSE and the RDC to run diagnostics, retrieve status, and communicate with respective units through their control panels.

**management class**— A collection of management attributes, assigned by the storage administrator, that are used to control the allocation and use of space by a data set.

**manual mode**— A relationship between an LSM and all attached hosts. LSMs operating in manual mode have been modified offline and require human assistance to perform cartridge operations.

**master LMU**— The LMU currently controlling the functional work of the ACS in a dual LMU configuration.

**MB**— Megabyte, million (10<sup>6</sup>) bytes.

**MDS**— Main Device Scheduler (JES3).

**MEDia**— The parameter used to specify media type.

This is not to be confused with MEDIA1 or MEDIA2, which are values that can be specified on the MEDIA parameter.

**MEDIA1**— (1) A value that can be specified on the MEDIA parameter and that includes only standard capacity cartridge tapes. (2) An alias of Standard.

**MEDIA2**— (1) A value that can be specified on the MEDIA parameter and that includes only enhanced capacity cartridge system tapes. (2) An alias of ECART. (3) *See* Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape.

**media capacity**— The amount of data that can be contained on storage media and expressed in bytes of data.

**media mismatch**— A condition that occurs when the media value defined in a VOLATTR control statement does not match the media value recorded in the CDS VAR record.

**micro-software**— *See*  $\mu$ -software under Symbols.

**MIM**— Multi-Image Manager. Third-party software by Computer Associates International, Inc.

**mixed configurations**— Installations containing cartridge drives under ACS control and cartridge drives outside of library control. These configurations cause the Host Software Component to alter allocation to one or the other.

**MODEL**— The parameter used to specify model number.

**modem**— Modulator/demodulator. An electronic device that converts computer digital data to analog data for transmission over a telecommunications line (telephone line). At the receiving end, the modem performs the inverse function.

**monitor**— A device that observes, records, and verifies selected system activities to determine significant departure from expected operation.

**MSM**— Multiple Sessions Management. Third-party software by Computer Associates International, Inc.

## N

**Near Continuous Operation (NCO)** — Facilities and techniques that allow customers to make dynamic changes to the library that do not disrupt the library hardware and environment. In most cases, users can perform these procedures without requiring the HSC to be terminated and restarted.

## O

**OCR**— Optical Character Recognition.

**operating system (OS)**— Software that controls the execution of programs that facilitate overall system operation.

**output stack**— The part of the cartridge loader that receives and holds processed cartridges.

**over-limit cleaning cartridge**— A cleaning cartridge that has been used more than the value (limit) specified by either the MNTD MAXclean or VOLATTR MAXclean settings. This kind of cartridge may not be able to adequately clean a tape transport, however, it can be mounted and will attempt to execute the cleaning process. *See also* spent cleaning cartridge.

**over-use cleaning cartridge**— A cartridge that has a usage (select) count over the MAXclean value (*see* over-limit cleaning cartridge) or that has used up its cleaning surface (*see* spent cleaning cartridge).

## P

**paired-CAP mode**— The two forty-cell CAPs in an enhanced CAP function in paired-CAP mode as a single eighty-cell CAP.

**PARMLIB control statements**— Parameter library (PARMLIB) control statements allow you to statically specify various operation parameters which take effect at HSC initialization. Identifying your system requirements and then specifying the appropriate control statements permits you to customize the HSC to your data center.

**pass-thru port (PTP)**— A mechanism that allows a cartridge to be passed from one LSM to another in a multiple LSM ACS.

**PCAP**— *See* priority CAP.

**P/DAS**— Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy Dynamic Address Switching. An IBM capability to non-disruptively swap PPRC volumes.

**Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy (PPRC)**— An IBM capability to mirror disk volumes from one storage subsystem to another.

**physical end of tape**— A point on the tape beyond which the tape is not permitted to move.

**playground**— The playground is a reserved area of cells where the robot deposits cartridges that it finds in its hands during LSM initialization. Normal LSM initialization recovery processing moves cartridges from the playground cells to either their home cells or their intended destinations, but under abnormal circumstances cartridges may be left in playground cells.

**positional parameter**— In command and utility syntax, operands that are identified by their position in the command string rather than by keywords (*See* keyword parameter).

Positional parameters must be entered in the order shown in the syntax diagram.

**PowderHorn (9310) LSM**— A high-performance LSM featuring a high-speed robot. The PowderHorn has a capacity of up to approximately 6000 cartridges.

**PPRC**— *See* Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy.

**primary CDS**— The active control data set. It contains the inventory of all cartridges in the library, the library configuration, information about library hardware and resource ownership across multiple processors, and serves as a vehicle of communication between HSCs running on multiple processors.

**priority CAP (PCAP)**— A one-cell CAP that is part of an enhanced CAP. A PCAP allows a user to enter or eject a single cartridge that requires immediate action.

*See also* Cartridge Access Port, standard CAP, enhanced CAP, WolfCreek CAP, WolfCreek optional CAP, or TimberWolf CAP.

**Program Temporary Fix (PTF)**— A unit of corrective maintenance delivered to a customer to

repair a defect in a product, or a means of packaging a Small Programming Enhancement (SPE).

**Program Update Tape (PUT)**— A tape containing a collection of PTFs. PUTs are shipped to customers on a regular basis under the conditions of the customer's maintenance license.

**PTF**— *See* Program Temporary Fix.

**PTP**— *See* pass-thru port.

**PUT**— *See* Program Update Tape.

## Q

**QSAM**— *See* Queued Sequential Access Method.

**Queued Sequential Access Method (QSAM)**— An extended version of the basic sequential access method (BSAM). When this method is used, a queue is formed of input data blocks that are awaiting processing or output data blocks that have been processed and are awaiting transfer to auxiliary storage or to an output device.

## R

**RACF**— *See* Resource Access Control Facility.

**RDC**— *See* Remote Diagnostics Center.

**Recording Density**— The number of bits in a single linear track measured per unit of length of the recording medium.

**RECtech**— The parameter used to specify recording technique.

**RedWood**— (1) The program name of the StorageTek transport that supports a helical recording technique. (2) *See* SD-3.

**Remote Diagnostics Center (RDC)**— The Remote Diagnostics Center at StorageTek. RDC operators can access and test StorageTek systems and software, through telecommunications lines, from remote customer installations. Also referred to as the Central Support Remote Center (CSRC).

**Resource Access Control Facility (RACF)**— Security software controlling access to data sets.

## S

**SCP**— *See* System Control Program.

**scratch tape subpool**— A defined subset of all scratch tapes. Subpools are composed of one or more ranges of VOLSERS with similar physical characteristics (type of volume {reel or cartridge}, reel size, length, physical location, etc.). Some installations may also subdivide their scratch pools by other characteristics, such as label type (AL, SL, NSL, NL).

The purpose of subpooling is to make sure that certain data sets are built only within particular ranges of volumes (for whatever reason the user desires). If a volume which does not belong to the required subpool is mounted for a particular data set, it is dismounted and the mount reissued.

**SD-3**— The model number of the StorageTek transport that supports a helical recording technique.

**SDLT**— *See* SuperDLT.

**SDLTx**— A media type designating an SDLT data cartridge with a capacity of either 125GB or 160GB.

**secondary CDS**— The optional duplicate copy of the primary CDS.

**secondary recording**— A technique for recovery involving maintaining both a control data set and a copy (secondary) of the control data set.

**SEN** — *See* Significant Event Notification.

**SER**— Software Enhancement Request.

**ServiceTek (machine initiated maintenance)**— A unique feature of the ACS in which an expert system monitors conditions and performance of subsystems and requests operator attention before a potential problem impacts operations. Customers can set maintenance threshold levels.

**servo**— A device that uses feedback from a sensing element to control mechanical motion.

**Shared Tape Allocation Manager (STAM)**— Third-party software by Computer Associates International, Inc.

**Significant Event Notification (SEN)** — An HSC facility that allows an application to request notification of specific HSC and VTCS events.

**Silverton**— *See* 4490 Cartridge Subsystem.

**SL3000 library**— *See* Streamline (SL3000) library.

**SL8500 library**— *See* Streamline (SL8500) library.

**Small Programming Enhancement (SPE)**— A supplement to a released program that can affect several products or components.

**SMC**— Storage Management Component.

**SMF**— System Management Facility. An MVS facility used to record system actions which affect system functionality.

**SMP**— System Modification Program.

**SMP/E**— *See* System Modification Program Extended.

**SMS**— Storage Management Subsystem.

**SPE**— *See* Small Programming Enhancement.

**special use cartridge**— A generic description for a type of cartridge used on 9840 drives. These include:

- 9840 cleaning cartridge
- 9840 microcode load cartridge
- 9840 dump collection cartridge.

When an attempt is made to mount a special use cartridge, LMU error response code 1012 is generated.

The error code is defined as “load failure for special use cartridge.”

If the error code is received for a special use cleaning cartridge, it is either ejected or marked as unusable, and it is retained in the ACS (depending on the MNTD EJctauto setting). The HSC does not mount unusable cartridges.

**spent cleaning cartridge**— A cleaning cartridge that has exhausted its cleaning material and can no longer be used to clean tape transports. *See also* over-limit cleaning cartridge.

**SSD**— Solid state disk.

**STAM**— *See* Shared Tape Allocation Manager.

**Standard**— (1) A value that can be specified on the MEDia parameter and that includes only standard capacity cartridge tapes. (2) *See* Cartridge System Tape.

**standard CAP**— A standard CAP has a capacity of twenty-one cartridges (three rows of seven cells each). An LSM access door with a standard CAP contains cell locations for storing cartridges.

*See also* Cartridge Access Port, enhanced CAP, priority CAP, WolfCreek CAP, WolfCreek optional CAP, or TimberWolf CAP.

**standard (4410) LSM**— An LSM which provides a storage capacity of up to approximately 6000 cartridges.

**standby**— The status of a station that has been varied online but is connected to the standby LMU of a dual LMU ACS.

**standby CDS**— The optional data set that contains only one valid record, the Database Heartbeat (DHB). The DHB contains the names of the control data sets recorded by the HSC and is used to identify the correct primary, secondary, and standby CDS.

**standby LMU**— The redundant LMU in a dual LMU configuration that is ready to take over in case of a master LMU failure or when the operator issues the SWitch command.

**station**— A hardware path between the host computer and an LMU over which the HSC and LMU send control information.

**STD**— (1) A value that can be specified on the MEDia parameter and that includes only standard capacity cartridge tapes. (2) An alias of Standard.

**STK1**— A generic value that can be specified on the MEDia and RECtech parameters and includes all types of 9840 cartridges and recording techniques.

**STK1R**— Value that can be specified on the MEDia and RECtech parameters and includes only the specified type of 9840 cartridge or recording technique. STK1R can be abbreviated as R.

**STK1U**— Value that can be specified on the MEDia parameter and includes only the specified type of

9840 cleaning cartridge. STK1U can be abbreviated as U.

**STK2**— A generic value that can be specified on the MEDia parameter and includes all types of 9940 cartridges and recording techniques.

**STK2P**— Value that can be specified on the MEDia and RECtech parameters and includes only the specified type of 9940 cartridge or recording technique. STK2P can be abbreviated as P.

**STK2W**— Value that can be specified on the MEDia parameter and includes only the specified type of 9940 cleaning cartridge. STK2W can be abbreviated as W.

**storage class**— A named list of storage attributes that identify performance goals and availability requirements for a data set.

**storage group**— A collection of storage volumes and attributes defined by the storage administrator.

**Storage Management Component (SMC)**— Required NCS software component that performs the allocation function for NCS, replacing the functions previously performed by HSC and MVS/CSC. The SMC resides on the MVS host with HSC and/or MVS/CSC, and communicates with these products to determine policies, volume locations, and drive ownership.

**Streamline (SL3000) library**— A mid-range modular library that can store 200 to 4500 cartridges in mainframe, Windows, UNIX, and supercomputer environments. The SL3000 library contains a single LSM per ACS library. There are no pass-thru ports (PTP) to other libraries.

**StreamLine (SL8500) library**— A modular library that can scale from 1,500 to over 200,000 cartridges in mainframe, Windows, UNIX, and supercomputer environments. The SL8500 utilizes hot swap components and multiple robots.

**StreamLine CAP**— The StreamLine CAP contains 3, 13-cell removable magazines. You can also add an optional CAP that has the same configuration.

**SuperDLT**— The next generation of DLT (Digital Linear Tape) products, which remains a standard for mid-range operating systems.

**switchover**— The assumption of master LMU functionality by the standby LMU.

**SYNCSORT**— Third-party software by Syncsort, Inc.; a sort, merge, copy utility program.

**System Control Program**— The general term to describe a program which controls access to system resources, and allocates those resources among executing tasks.

**system-managed storage**— Storage that is managed by the Storage Management Subsystem, which attempts to deliver required services for availability, performance, space, and security applications.

**System Modification Program Extended**— An IBM-licensed program used to install software and software maintenance.

## T

**T10000 Tape Drive**— A cartridge tape drive that features a 500GB (T10000A) or 1TB (T10000B) cartridge capacity and data transfer rates up to 120MB/sec. In addition, the T10000 offers media reusability for at least two generations and device-based encryption.

**tape cartridge**— A container holding magnetic tape that can be processed without separating it from the container.

**tape drive**— A device that is used for moving magnetic tape and includes the mechanisms for writing and reading data to and from the tape.

**tape unit**— A device that contains tape drives and their associated power supplies and electronics.

**TAPEREQ**— An SMC control statement that is contained in the definition data set specified by the TREQDEF command. A TAPEREQ statement defines a specific tape request. It is divided into two parts, the input: job name, step name, program name, data set name, expiration date or retention period, and an indication for specific requests or nonspecific (scratch) requests; and the output: media type and recording technique capabilities.

**TDMF™**— Transparent Data Migration Facility. A product from Softek Storage Solutions Corp. that

allows two disk devices to be non-disruptively swapped with each other.

**Timberline**— *See* 9490 Cartridge Subsystem.

**Timberline EE**— *See* 9490EE Cartridge Subsystem.

**TimberWolf (9740) LSM**— A high performance LSM that provides a storage capacity of up to 494 cartridges. Up to 10 drives (STD, 4490, 9490, 9490EE, 9840, and SD-3) can be configured. TimberWolf LSMs can only attach to other TimberWolfs.

**TimberWolf CAP**— The TimberWolf CAP contains either a 10-cell removable magazine or a 14-cell permanent rack. It is not necessary to define a configuration; the HSC receives CAP information directly from the LMU.

*See also* Cartridge Access Port, standard CAP, enhanced CAP, priority CAP, WolfCreek CAP, or WolfCreek optional CAP.

**TP**— Tape-to-Print.

**transaction**— A short series of actions with the control data set. These actions are usually related to a specific function (e.g., Mount, ENter).

**transport**— An electromechanical device capable of threading tape from a cartridge, moving the tape across a read/write head, and writing data onto or reading data from the tape.

**TREQDEF**— An SMC command that is used to load the definition data set that contains TAPEREQ control statements.

**Tri-Optic label**— An external label attached to the spine of a cartridge that is both human and machine readable.

**TT**— Tape-to-Tape.

## U

**unit affinity**— A request that all cartridges be mounted on a single drive (either for read or write purposes), usually to reduce the number of drives needed for a job.

**unit parameter value**— A JCL term meaning the value of a JCL UNIT parameter. The value can be a

single address of a drive, an esoteric list, or a generic list.

**UNITATTR**— An SMC control statement that defines the transport's media type and recording technique capabilities.

**utilities**— Utility programs. The programs that allow an operator to manage the resources of the library and to monitor overall library performance.

## V

**VAR**— *See* Volume Attribute Record.

**VAT**— *See* Volume Attribute Table Entry.

**Virtual Storage Manager (VSM)**— A storage solution that virtualizes volumes and transports in a VTSS buffer in order to improve media and transport use.

**Virtual Tape Control System (VTCS)**— The primary host code for the Virtual Storage Manager (VSM) solution. This code operates in a separate address space, but communicates closely with HSC.

**Virtual Tape Storage Subsystem (VTSS)**— The DASD buffer containing virtual volumes (VTVs) and virtual drives (VTDs). The VTSS is a StorageTek RAID 6 hardware device with microcode that enables transport emulation. The RAID device can read and write "tape" data from/to disk, and can read and write the data from/to a real tape drive (RTD).

**virtual thumbwheel**— An HSC feature that allows read-only access to a volume that is not physically write-protected.

**VOLATTR**— An HSC control statement that is contained in the definition data set specified by the VOLDEF command. A VOLATTR statement defines to the HSC the media type and recording technique of the specified volumes.

**VOLDEF**— An HSC command that is used to load the definition data set that contains VOLATTR control statements.

**VOLSER**— A six-character alphanumeric label used to identify a tape volume.

**volume**— A data carrier that is mounted or dismounted as a unit. (*See* cartridge).

**Volume Attribute Record (VAR)**— An HSC internal record that contains the data base-resident information of a cartridge entered into the library.

**Volume Attribute Table Entry (VAT)**— An HSC internal table that contains entries to the intransit record token and the Volume Attribute Record (VAR). The VAT is used as the communications area for internal service calls.

## W

**WolfCreek (9360) LSM**— A smaller capacity high-performance LSM. WolfCreek LSMs are available in 500, 750, and 1000 cartridge capacities (model numbers 9360-050, 9360-075, and 9360-100, respectively). WolfCreek LSMs can be connected by pass-thru ports to 4410, 9310, or other WolfCreek LSMs.

**WolfCreek CAP**— The standard WolfCreek CAP contains a 20-cell magazine-style CAP and a priority CAP (PCAP).

*See also* Cartridge Access Port, standard CAP, enhanced CAP, priority CAP, WolfCreek optional CAP, or TimberWolf CAP.

**WolfCreek optional CAP**— The WolfCreek optional CAP contains a 30-cell magazine-style CAP which is added to the standard WolfCreek CAP.

*See also* Cartridge Access Port, standard CAP, enhanced CAP, priority CAP, WolfCreek CAP, or TimberWolf CAP.

**Write Tape Mark (WTM)**— The operation performed to record a special magnetic mark on tape. The mark identifies a specific location on the tape.

**WTM**— *See* Write Tape Mark.

**WTO**— Write-to-Operator.

**WTOR**— Write-to-Operator with reply.

## Z

**ZCART**— (1) Cartridge system tape with a length of 2200 feet that can be used only with 9490EE Cartridge Drives. (2) A value that can be specified on the MEdia parameter and that includes only 36-track 9490EE cartridge system tapes. (3) *See also* Extended Enhanced Tape.

## Symbols

**μ-software**— Microprogram. A sequence of microinstructions used to perform preplanned functions and implement machine instructions.

## Numerics

**18-track**— A recording technique that uses 18 tracks on the tape. The tape is written in only the forward motion.

**18track**— A generic value that can be specified on the RECTech parameter and includes all 18-track transports.

**3000 library**— *See* StreamLine (SL3000) library.

**3480**— (1) A value that can be specified on the MEDia parameter and that includes only standard capacity cartridge tapes. (2) An alias of Standard.

**3480X**— The 3480 upgrade that supports ICRC.

**3490**— The IBM cartridge drive that replaced the 3480X and supports ICRC but not 36-track or long tape. It is equivalent to the IBM 3480X.

**3490E**— (1) The IBM cartridge drive that replaced the 3490 and supports ICRC, 36-track, and long tape. It reads 18-track but does not write 18-track. (2) A value that can be specified on the MEDia parameter and that includes only enhanced capacity cartridge system tapes. (3) An alias of ECART.

**3590**— The IBM cartridge drive that supports 128-track recording and holds 10GB of uncompressed data. It has the same form factor as a 3490E.

**36-track**— A recording technique that uses 36 tracks on the tape. 18 tracks of data are written in the forward motion and then an additional 18 tracks in the backward motion for a total of 36.

**36track**— A generic value that can be specified on the RECTech parameter and includes all 36-track transports.

**36Atrack**— A value that can be specified on the RECTech parameter and includes only 4490 (Silverton) 36-track transports.

**36Btrack**— A value that can be specified on the RECTech parameter and includes only 9490 (Timberline) 36-track transports.

**36Ctrack**— A value that can be specified on the RECTech parameter and includes only 9490EE (Timberline EE) transports.

**4410 LSM**— *See* standard LSM.

**4480 Cartridge Subsystem**— Cartridge tape transports that provide read/write capability for 18-track recording format. The StorageTek 4480 Cartridge Subsystem is equivalent to a 3480 device.

**4490 Cartridge Subsystem**— Cartridge tape transports that provide read/write capability for 36-track recording format and extended capacity tape. 4490 transports can also read data recorded in 18-track format. The StorageTek 4490 Cartridge Subsystem is equivalent to a 3490E device.

**8500 library**— *See* StreamLine (SL8500) library.

**9310 LSM**— *See* PowderHorn LSM.

**9360 LSM**— *See* WolfCreek LSM.

**9490 Cartridge Subsystem**— Cartridge tape transports that provide read/write capability for 36-track recording format and extended capacity tape and provide improved performance over the 4490 Cartridge Subsystem. 9490 transports can also read data recorded in 18-track format. The StorageTek 9490 Cartridge Subsystem offers better performance (faster data transfer rate, faster load/unload) than a 3490E device.

**9490EE Cartridge Subsystem**— A high-performance tape transport that provides read/write capability for Extended Enhanced tape (EETape) cartridges. It is functionally equivalent to the IBM 3490E device.

**9740 LSM**— *See* TimberWolf LSM.

**9840 Cartridge Subsystem**— A high performance tape transport for enterprise and open systems environments that reads and writes 9840 cartridges. 9840s can be defined in 10-drive and 20-drive panel configurations. The 9840 can perform as a standalone subsystem with a cartridge scratch loader attached, or it can be attached to a StorageTek ACS.

**T9840B**—The StorageTek cartridge transport that reads and writes T9840B cartridges.

**T9840C**— The StorageTek cartridge transport that reads and writes T9840C cartridges.

**T9940A**— The StorageTek capacity-centric cartridge transport capable of reading and writing 60GB T9940A cartridges.

**T9940B**— The StorageTek capacity-centric cartridge transport capable of reading and writing 200GB T9940B cartridges.

# Index

---

## Numerics

- 4480 Cartridge Subsystem, defined 363
- 4490 Cartridge Subsystem, defined 363
- 9490 Cartridge Subsystem, defined 363
- 9490EE Cartridge Subsystem, defined 363
- 9840 Cartridge Subsystem, defined 363

## A

- access method, defined 349
- ACS *See* Automated Cartridge System
- acs-id 237
- acs-id parameter 163
- ACSid, defined 349
- acs-list 237
- acs-range 237
- Activities Report utility, overview 258
- ALLOC command and control statement
  - examples 40
  - overview 37
  - parameter explanations
    - HOSTID 40
    - LOWscr 38
    - LSMpref 39
    - SCRtech 40
  - service level execution 35
  - syntax 38
- allocation, defined 349
- APPLID 56, 57
- assigning a CAP preference value 42
- Audit utility, overview 258
- Automated Cartridge System (ACS)
  - balancing scratch cartridges among LSMs 260
  - cleaning a transport tape path 328
  - cleaning the transport tape path
    - automatic mode 328
    - manual mode 329
  - control path 2
  - data path 3

- displaying scratch threshold values 125
- displaying status 66
- generating a statistical report on performance 258
- library identification 23
- modifying CAPs online/offline 177
- modifying LSMs online/offline 177
- moving cartridges
  - manually 303
  - MOVE command 194
  - move utility 259
  - using the LSM robots 303
- operating modes 12
- producing a listing of volumes 261
- system components 4
- system overview 2

- Automated Cartridge System (ACS), defined 349
- automated cleaning 169
- automated features/functions, transport tape path cleaning 328
- automatic mode, overview 14

## B

- backing up the control data set 258
- Backup utility, overview 258
- balancing scratch cartridges among LSMs 260
- Base service level
  - functions 33
  - initiating with the SRVlev command 217
  - intercepted mount requests 33
  - pending mount requests 33
- BDAM, defined 349
- BSAM, defined 349

## C

- CAP *See* Cartridge Access Port
- cap-range parameter 44
- CAPid, defined 350
- cap-list parameter 44
- CAPPref command and control statement
  - examples 47

- overview 42
- parameter explanations
  - AUTO 46
  - cap-id 44
  - cap-list 44
  - cap-range 44
  - host-id 45
  - lsm-id 43
  - MANual 46
  - prefvlu 43
- service level execution 35
- syntax 43
- cartridge
  - defined 350
  - ECART, defined 352
  - over-limit cleaning cartridge, defined 357
  - over-use cleaning cartridge, defined 357
  - special use cartridge, defined 359
  - spent cleaning cartridge, defined 359
  - ZCART, defined 362
- Cartridge Access Port (CAP)
  - assigning a preference value 42
  - clearing RECOVERY status on Display Cap command 318
  - defined 350
  - displaying status of activity 63, 71
  - ejecting cartridges in batch mode 259
  - ejecting cartridges using a specified CAP 146
  - entering cartridges (ENter command) 162
  - ID (syntax identifier) 23
  - missing magazine, recovery 320
  - modifying online or offline to all hosts 177
  - standard, defined 360
  - TimberWolf, defined 361
  - WolfCreek optional, defined 362
  - WolfCreek, defined 362
- Cartridge Drive (CD), defined 350
- Cartridge Drive (CD), schedule cleaning using CLean command 52
- Cartridge Scratch Loader (CSL), defined 350
- cartridge transports
  - cleaning the tape path 328
  - dismounting cartridges 61
  - nonlibrary 298
  - schedule cleaning for 52
  - tape path
    - cleaning in automatic mode 328
    - cleaning in manual mode 328
- cartridges
  - cleaning cartridges 329
  - cleaning the transport tape path 328
  - controlling whether a scratch cartridge is automatically 174
  - dismounting 61
  - displaying location 139
  - ejecting from the LSM
    - Eject Cartridge utility 259
    - Eject command 146
  - entering into an LSM during an eject operation 214
  - entering into the LSM
    - duplicate VOLSERS 317
    - ENter command 162
    - with missing or unreadable labels 317
  - errant recovery 315
  - initializing 259
  - mounting 187
  - moving within the ACS
    - manually 303
    - MOVE command 194
    - Move utility 259
    - using the LSM robot 303
  - producing a listing of 261
  - scratch cartridges
    - Scratch Conversion utility 260
    - Scratch Redistribution utility 260
    - Scratch Update utilities 260
    - unscratching 260
  - unlabeled scratch cartridge 323
  - unselecting 260
- CD *See* Cartridge Drive
- CDs command
  - examples 51
  - overview 48
  - parameter explanations
    - Disable 50
    - Enable 49
    - Expand 50
  - service level execution 35
  - syntax 49
- cell selection on dismounted cartridge after pass-thru 169
- changing configuration information without reconfiguring the library 259
- changing HSC allocation options 37
- CLean command
  - overview 52
  - parameter explanations
    - dev-id 52
    - dev-list 52
    - dev-range 52
    - host-id 52
  - service level execution 35
  - syntax 52
- cleaning cartridge, setting maximum usage 169
- cleaning cartridges 329
- cleaning the transport tape path
  - automatic mode 328
  - manual mode 329
  - scheduling the mount of a cleaning cartridge 52
- cleaning, automated 169
- commands
  - ALLOC command and control statement 37
  - CAPPref command and control statement 42
  - CDs command 48

- CLeaN command 52
  - command prefix character 16
  - COMMPaTh command and control statement 54
  - Display command 63
  - displaying syntax and usage 77
  - flow diagram syntax 18
  - how to read syntax flow diagrams 21
  - issuing with MVS MODIFY 16
  - Journal 167
  - library identification 23
  - library identifiers 30
  - listing 32
  - MN command 185
  - MNTD command and control statement 169
  - MODify command 177
  - MONITOR command 185
  - Mount command 187
  - MOVE command 194
  - OPTion command and control statement 202
  - PM command 219
  - prefix character 16
  - ranges and lists 27
  - RECover command 209
  - RELease command 211
  - SCRAtch command 213
  - SENter command 214
  - specifying a CAPid 24
  - SRVlev command 217
  - SWitch command 221
  - syntax rules 16
  - TRace command 224
  - TRACELKP 230
  - UEXIT command and control statement 231
  - UNSCRatch command 232
  - UUI support for 32
  - Vary command 236
  - View command 239
  - Warn command 248
  - COMMPaTh command and control statement
    - examples 57
    - overview 54
    - parameter explanations
      - DELeTe 57
      - HOSTid 55
      - LMUpath 56
      - METHod 55
      - VTAMpath 57
    - service level execution 35
    - syntax 55
    - usage 321
    - VTAM recommendation 54
  - communications
    - host-to-host 54
    - restoring 321
    - tracing 224
    - VTAM 56
  - configurations
    - connected mode 12
    - dual LMU 5
  - connected mode, defined 350
  - control data set
    - allocation map, defined 350
    - data blocks, defined 350
    - defined 350
    - directory, defined 350
    - pointer blocks, defined 350
    - recovery area, defined 351
    - subfile, defined 351
  - control data set (CDS)
    - Backup utility 258
    - changing configuration with Set utility 260
    - disabling 50
    - displaying status of 75
    - enabling 49
    - merging 259
    - off-loading journals 259
    - rebuilding the directory 258
    - reconfiguring 259
    - restoring from a backup 259
  - control path
    - HSC 2
    - SMC 2
  - control statements
    - ALLOC 37
    - CAPPref 42
    - COMMPaTh 54
    - flow diagram syntax 18
    - how to read syntax flow diagrams 21
    - library identification 23
    - MNTD 169
    - OPTion 202
    - overview 31
    - PARMLIB 33
    - ranges and lists 27
    - specifying a CAPid 24
    - syntax rules 16
    - UEXIT 233
  - Control Unit (CU), defined 351
  - controlling message output display, uppercase or mixed case 202
  - controlling pass-thru operations after dismount 302
  - creating a LIBGEN from the control data set 258
  - CST, defined 351
  - CU *See* Control Unit
- ## D
- data path 3
  - Database Decompile utility, overview 258
  - Database Heartbeat (DHB) record
    - defined 351
  - deferred mount option 301

- deleting volumes from the control data set 169
- device group, defined 352
- device number, defined 352
- DFP (Data Facility Product), defined 352
- DFSMS
  - ACS routine, defined 352
  - defined 352
- directed allocation, defined 352
- Directory 258
- Directory Rebuild utility, overview 258
- Disable automated cleaning 169
- disable the control data set 48
- disconnected mode 12
- disconnected mode, defined 352
- DISMount command 61
  - examples 62
  - overview 61
  - parameter explanations
    - devaddr 61
    - host-id 61
    - volser 61
  - service level execution 37
  - syntax 61
- dismount processing options 169
- dismounting a volume 61
- dismounts
  - displaying dismount options 104
  - how to control floating 302
- Display command
  - Display ACS
    - example 67
    - parameter explanations 66
    - syntax 66
  - Display AL1
    - example 68
    - parameter explanations 68
    - syntax 68
  - Display ALLOC
    - example 70
    - parameter explanations 70
    - syntax 70
  - Display Cap
    - example 72
    - parameter explanations 71
    - syntax 71
  - Display CDS
    - example 76
    - parameter explanations 75
    - syntax 75
  - Display CMd
    - example 78
    - parameter explanations 77
    - syntax 77
  - Display COMMPath
    - example 80
    - parameter explanations 79
    - syntax 79
  - Display DRives
    - examples 92
    - parameter explanations 81
    - syntax 81
  - Display Exceptions 96
    - error messages 96
    - parameter explanations 96
    - syntax 96
  - Display LKEYDEF
    - example 98
    - parameter explanations 98
    - syntax 98
  - Display LMUPDEF
    - example 99
    - parameter explanations 99
    - syntax 99
  - Display Lsm
    - examples 101
    - parameter explanations 100
    - syntax 100
  - Display Message
    - example 103
    - parameter explanations 103
    - syntax 103
  - Display MNTD
    - example 104
    - parameter explanations 104
    - syntax 104
  - Display MONitor
    - example 105
    - parameter explanations 105
    - syntax 105
  - Display OPTion
    - example 106
    - parameter explanations 106
    - syntax 106
  - Display Requests
    - example 107
    - parameter explanations 107
    - syntax 107
  - Display SCRatch
    - example 116
    - parameter explanations 108
    - syntax 108
  - Display SCRPEDEF
    - example 121
    - parameter explanations 121
    - syntax 121
  - Display SRVlev
    - example 122
    - parameter explanations 122
    - syntax 122
  - Display Status
    - example 124
    - parameter explanations 123

- syntax 123
- Display THReshld
  - examples 133
  - parameter explanations 125
  - syntax 125
- Display TREQDEF
  - example 136
  - parameter explanations 98, 136
  - syntax 98, 136
- Display UNITDEF
  - example 137
  - parameter explanations 137
  - syntax 137
- Display VOLDEF
  - example 138
  - parameter explanations 138
  - syntax 138
- Display Volume
  - example 141
  - parameter explanations 139
  - syntax 139
- overview 63
- service level execution 35

- displaying a list of monitoring consoles 105
- displaying ACS and CDS status 68
- displaying ACS status 66
- displaying an operator command syntax and usage 77
- displaying CAP activity 71
- displaying definition data sets 98, 99, 136, 137, 138
- displaying drive information 81
- displaying hardware status exceptions 96
- displaying host-to-host communications settings 79
- displaying license key definitions 98
- displaying LMUPATH definitions 99
- displaying LSM status 100
- displaying messages 103
- displaying mount options 104
- displaying pending LMU requests 107
- displaying scratch pool definitions 121
- displaying settings of HSC general options 106
- displaying status of CDS copies 75
- displaying the HSC service level 122
- displaying the status of pending requests 123
- displaying the status of the LC 290
- displaying threshold values 125
- displaying TREQDEF definitions 136
- displaying UNITDEF definitions 137
- displaying VOLDEF definitions 138
- displaying volume location 139

- DOMed, defined 352
- DRAin command
  - parameter explanations
    - cap-id 143
    - cap-list 143
    - EJect 144
    - ENter 144
  - service level execution 35
  - syntax 142
- drive exclusion, defined 352
- drive loaded, defined 352
- drive panel, defined 352
- drive prioritization, defined 352
- DRIVEid, defined 352
- dual Library Controller (LC)
  - manually switching to the standby 221
- dual LMU
  - manually switching to the standby LMU 221
  - overview 5
  - when both LMUs respond as master 325
  - when both LMUs respond as standby 325
- dual LMU, defined 352
- dump, defined 352
- duplicate VOLSERS, prompting the operator 202
- Dynamic Device Reconfiguration (DDR), defined 352
- dynamic hardware reconfiguration
  - MODify CONFIG command 177
  - starting 177

## E

- ECART
  - defined 352
- ECCST, defined 353
- Eject Cartridge utility
  - parameters
    - SEQ 151
    - WAITcap 150, 160
- Eject Cartridge utility, overview 259
- EJect command
  - examples 161
  - overview 146
  - parameter explanations
    - MEDia 153
    - RECTech 157
    - SCRtCH 151
    - SUBpool 153
    - vol-list 147
    - vol-range 147
    - VOLCNT 153
    - volser 147
  - service level execution 35

- setting maximum number of cartridges for Eject command 202
  - syntax 147
  - usage 298, 299
- eject, defined 353
- ejecting cartridges from the LSM
  - Eject Cartridge utility 259
  - Eject command 146
- ejecting cartridges in batch mode 259
- eligible device list, defined 353
- enable automated cleaning 169
- enable the control data set 48
- enable the SEN (Significant Event Notification) facility 206
- Enhanced CAP (ECAP), defined 353
- Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape (ECCST), defined 353
- ENTdup parameter 203
- ENTER 162
- ENter command
  - examples 165
  - overview 162
  - parameter explanations
    - acs-id 163
    - cap-id 163
    - lsm-id 163
    - SCRatch 165
    - TLSM 165
  - service level execution 35
- entering a cartridge during an eject operation 214
- entering cartridges into the LSM
  - duplicate and unreadable VOLSERS 317
  - ENter command 162
  - with missing or unreadable labels 317
- errant volumes 315
- esoteric, defined 353
- ETAPE, defined 353
- event notification, enabling 206
- examples
  - ALLOC command and control statement 40
  - CAPPref command and control statement 47
  - CDs command 51
  - CLean command 53
  - COMMPath command and control statement 57
  - DISMOUNT command 62
  - Display Acs command 67
  - Display AL1 command 68
  - Display ALLOC command 70
  - Display Cap command 72
  - Display CDS command 76
  - Display CMd command 78
  - Display COMMPath command 80
  - Display DRives command 92
  - Display LKEYDEF 98
  - Display LMUPDEF 99
  - Display LMUPDEF command 99
  - Display Lsm command 101
  - Display Message command 103
  - Display MNTD command 104
  - Display MONitor command 105
  - Display OPTion command 106
  - Display Requests command 107
  - Display SCRatch command 116
  - Display SCRPDEF 121
  - Display SRVlev command 122
  - Display Status command 124
  - Display THReshld command 133
  - Display TREQDEF command 136
  - Display UNITDEF command 137
  - Display VOLDEF command 138
  - Display Volume command 141
  - DRAIn command 145
  - EJect command 161
  - ENter command 165
  - Journal command 168
  - MNTD command and control statement 175
  - MODify command 184
  - MONITOR command 186
  - Mount command 192
  - MOVE command 201
  - OPTion command and control statement 207
  - RECover command 210
  - RELease command 212
  - SENter command 216
  - SRVlev command 218
  - STOPMN command 220
  - SWitch command 223
  - UEXIT command and control statement 235
  - Vary command 238
  - Vlew command 247
  - Warn command 256
- expand the control data set 48
- expanding the control data set 50
- Extended Enhanced Tape (EETape), defined 353
- ExtendedStore, Library, defined 353

## F

- F command *See* MODify command
- F command, MVS 16
- FDRPAS, defined 353
- freeing an allocated CAP 319
- freeze panel considerations
  - Display LSM command 100
  - MOVE command 194
- Full service level
  - functions 34
  - initiating with the SRVlev command 217

## G

- generating a statistical report on ACS performance 258
- Generation Data Groups (GDG) separation, defined 354

## H

- handling multiple mounts for the same volume 323

Helical, defined 354

host

- communications 54
- displaying current settings for host-to-host communications 79
- displaying status of 75
- recovering resources if host becomes inoperable 209
- restoring host-to-host communications 321
- tracing communications 224

Host Software Component (HSC)

- control path 2
- defined 354
- displaying detailed command information 63
- displaying messages 63
- host-to-host communications 54
- operator commands
  - ALLOC 37
  - CAPPref 42
  - CDs 49
  - CLean 52
  - COMMPath 54
  - DISMount 61
  - Display 63
  - DRAin 142
  - EJect 146
  - ENter 162
  - F 177
  - flow diagram syntax 18
  - how to read syntax flow diagrams 21
  - Journal 167
  - library identification 23
  - MN 185
  - MNTD 169
  - MODify 177
  - MONITOR 185
  - Mount 187
  - MOVE 194
  - OPTion 202
  - PM 219
  - ranges and lists 27
  - RECover 209
  - RELease 211
  - SCRAtch 213
  - SENter 214
  - specifying a CAPid 24
  - SRVlev 217
  - STOPMN 219
  - SWitch 221
  - syntax rules 16

- TRace 224
- TRACELKP 230
- UEXIT 233
- UNSCRatch 232
- UI support for 32
- Vary 236
- Vlew 239
- Warn 248

overview 4

restoring host-to-host communications 321

service levels

- base 33
- displaying current service level 122
- full 33
- overview 33
- SRVlev command 217

summary of scratch functions 311

varying station(s) or ACS(s) online or offline to the LMU 236

host system, defined 354

HOSTID parameter 170, 203

HOSTid, defined 354

host-to-host communications 54

how to clear CAP status of RECOVERY 318

how to read syntax flow diagrams 21

HSC *See* Host Software Component

HSC-to-ACS operating modes 12

- connected mode 12
- disconnected mode 12
- standby mode 13

## I

ID (syntax identifier) 23

identifying unlabeled scratch cartridges 323

Improved Cartridge Recording Capability (ICRC), defined 354

Index, defined 354

INISH deck, defined 354

Initial Microprogram Load (IML), defined 354

Initial Program Load (IPL), defined 354

initial value, defined 355

Initialize Cartridge utility, overview 259

initializing cartridges 259

input stack, defined 355

inspecting LSM components with robot's camera 239

Installation Verification Programs (IVP), defined 355

## J

Job Control Language (JCL)

defined 355

Journal command  
  example 168  
  overview 167  
  parameter explanations  
    ABEND 167  
    Continue 167  
    Full 167  
  service level execution 35  
  syntax 167

Journal Offload utility, overview 259

journaling, defined 355

journals

  displaying status of 75

  off-loading 259

## K

keyword parameter, defined 355

## L

labels

  entering cartridges with missing or unreadable labels 317

  external and internal labels are not consistent 323

LAN, defined 355

LC *See* Library Controller

LCU *See* Library Control Unit

LIBGEN

  creating from the control data set 258

  defined 355

library

  control path 2

  data path 3

  defined 355

  Host Software Component 4

  Library Management Unit (LMU) 4

  Library Storage Module (LSM) 9

  moving cartridges 259

  operator commands

    ALLOC 37, 38

    CAPPref 42, 43

    CDs 48

    CLEan 52

    COMMPath 54

    DISMOUNT 61

    Display 63

    DRAIn 142

    EJECT 146

    ENter 162

    F 177

  flow diagram syntax 18

  how to read syntax flow diagrams 21

  Journal 167

  library identification 23

  MN 185

MNTD 169, 170

MODify 177

MONITOR 185

Mount 187

MOVe 194

OPTion 202

PM 219

ranges and lists 27

RECover 209

RELease 211

SCRAtch 213

SENter 214

specifying a CAPid 24

SRVlev 217

STOPMN 219

SWitch 221

syntax rules 16

TRace 224

TRACELKP 230

UEXIT 233

UNSCRatch 232

UUI support for 32

Vary 236

Vlew 239

Warn 248

Storage Management Component 4

  system components 4

  system overview 2

  utilities

    Activities Report 258

    Audit 258

    Backup 258

    Database Decompile 258

    Directory Rebuild 258

    Eject Cartridge 259

    Initialize Cartridge 259

    Journal Offload 259

    Mergecds 259

    Move 259

    Performance Log Reblocker 259

    Reconfig 259

    Restore 259

    Scratch Conversion 260

    Scratch Redistribution 260

    Scratch Update 260

    Set 260

    Unselect 260

    Volume Report 261

Library Control Unit (LCU), defined 355

Library Controller (LC)

  CAP manual recovery 295

  displaying ACS status 290

  manually switching to the standby 221

  operating an LC in a redundant LC configuration 291

  operation 290

library identifier symbols 30

Library Management Unit (LMU)

- defined 355
- dual LMU configuration
  - overview 5
  - switch recovery 325
  - when both LMUs respond as master 325
  - when both LMUs respond as standby 325
- manually switching to the standby LMU 221
- overview 4
- resolving lost responses from 324
- standby, defined 360
- varying station(s) or ACS(s) online or offline 236

Library Storage Module (LSM)

- auditing 258
- automatic mode
  - cleaning a transport tape path 328
  - overview 14
- balancing scratch cartridges among 260
- defined 355
- displaying status 63
- displaying status of 100
- Eject Cartridge utility 259
- ejecting cartridges 146
- entering a cartridge during an eject operation 214
- entering cartridges (ENter command) 162
- entering cartridges with missing or unreadable labels 317
- entering duplicate VOLSERS 317
- errant volumes 315
- how to control floating in a multiple-LSM configuration 302
- inspecting components with the robot's camera 239
- LSM preferencing 306
- manual mode
  - cleaning a transport tape path 328
  - overview 14
- modifying online or offline to all hosts 177
- MOVE command 194
- moving cartridges
  - LSM scratch preferencing 306
    - examples of LSM scratch preferencing 308
    - how LSMs are preferenced 306
    - problem determination and reporting 310
    - recommended reading on related topics 307
    - scratch preferencing operational considerations 306
    - unexpected results from LSM scratch preferencing 307
  - manually 303
  - Move utility 259
  - using the robot 303
- number, defined 356
- operating modes
  - automatic mode 14
  - manual mode 14
  - overview 14
- overview 9
- passing a cartridge to another LSM 5
- producing a list of volumes 261
- PTP 9
- scratch preferencing 306
- standard (4410), defined 360
- terminate ENter command 142
- TimberWolf (9740), defined 361
- WolfCreek (9360), defined 362
- Linear Tape Open (LTO) cartridge, defined 356
- lists and ranges, VOLSER 27
- LMU *See* Library Management Unit
- LMU *See* Library Management Unit
- LMUPATH control statement
  - defined 356
- LMUPDEF command and control statement
  - defined 356
- LMUPDEF parameter (Display command) 99
- locating errant cartridges 315
- logical ejection, defined 356
- LONGItud, defined 356
- LOWscr parameter 38
- LSM *See* Library Storage Module
- LSM *See* Library Storage Module
- lsm-id parameter 142, 179
- LSMId, defined 356
- LTO cartridge, defined 356

## M

- manual mode
  - defined 356
  - overview 14
- MANual parameter (CAPPref) 43
- manually moving cartridges 303
- manually switching to the standby Library Controller (LC) 221
- manually switching to the standby LMU 221
- master LMU
  - defined 356
- MAXclean parameter 170
- media capacity, defined 357
- media mismatch, defined 357
- MEDia, defined 356
- Mergecds utility, overview 259
- messages
  - at termination, writing to the operator console and system log 202
  - controlling output display, uppercase or mixed case 202
  - displaying help information 103
  - displaying in uppercase or mixed case 205
  - displaying messages issued by the HSC 63
  - resolving lost mount requests 322
- missing CAP magazine, recovery 320
- missing or unreadable labels 317

- MMount parameter 169
  - MNTD command and control statement
    - examples 175
    - overview 169
    - parameter explanations
      - AUtocln 170
      - Dismount 171
      - EJctauto 171
      - Float 172
      - HOSTID 175
      - MAXclean 172
      - MMount 173
      - PASSTHRU 173
      - Scratch 174
      - SCRDISM 174
    - service level execution 35
    - syntax 170
    - usage-FLOAT 302
  - MODEL, defined 357
  - MODify command
    - examples 184
    - overview 177
    - parameter explanations
      - CAP 179
      - CONFIG 182
      - LSM 181
      - RESET 182
    - syntax 179
  - MODIFY command, MVS 16
  - modifying a CAP online or offline to all hosts 177
  - modifying an LSM online or offline to all hosts 177
  - MONITOR command
    - examples 186
    - overview 185
    - parameter explanations
      - L 185
      - PGMI 185
    - service level execution 35
    - syntax 185
  - monitoring move requests from the programmatic interface 305
  - monitoring programmatic interface requests 185
  - Mount command
    - examples 192
    - overview 187
    - parameter explanations
      - devaddr 188
      - host-id 188
      - MEDIA 189
      - PRIVAT 188
      - SCRATCH 188
      - SUBpool 189
      - volser 188
    - service level execution 35
  - mount processing options 169
  - mount processing with library and nonlibrary resources 298
  - mount requests intercepted during base service level operations 33
  - mounting a cartridge 187
  - mounting a library cartridge on a nonlibrary transport 298
  - mounting a nonlibrary cartridge on a library transport 299
  - mounts
    - deferring 301
    - displaying mount options 104
    - issuing a Mount command 187
    - mounting a library cartridge on a nonlibrary transport 298
    - mounting a nonlibrary cartridge on a library transport 299
    - multiple mounts for the same volume 323
    - resolving lost requests 322
  - MOVE command
    - examples 201
    - overview 194
    - parameter explanations
      - Flsm 195
      - TLsm 199
      - TPanel 200
      - Volume 199
    - service level execution 35
    - syntax 194
  - Move utility, overview 259
  - moving cartridges
    - manually 303
    - MOVE command 194
    - Move utility 259
    - using the LSM robot 303
  - MVS, using MVS MODIFY command interface for HSC
    - commands 16
- ## N
- Near Continuous Operation (NCO)
    - defined 357
    - MODify CONFIG command 177
    - starting 177
  - nonlibrary transports 298
  - null character as command prefix 16
- ## O
- off-loading journals on a host 259
  - operating modes
    - HSC-to-ACS 12
    - LSM 14
  - operator commands
    - ALLOC 37
    - CAPPref 42
    - CDs 48
    - CLea 52

- command prefix character 16
  - COMMPath 54
  - DISMount 61
  - Display 63
  - displaying syntax and usage 77
  - DRAin 142
  - Eject 146
  - ENter 162
  - F 177
  - flow diagram syntax 18
  - how to read syntax flow diagrams 21
  - issuing with MVS MODIFY 16
  - Journal 167
  - library identification 23
  - listing 32
  - MN 185
  - MNTD 169
  - MODify 177
  - MONITOR 185
  - Mount 187
  - MOVE 194
  - OPTion 202
  - PM 219
  - prefix character 16
  - ranges and lists 27
  - RECover 209
  - RELease 211
  - SCRAtch 213
  - scratch functions 311
  - SENter 214
  - specifying a CAPid 24
  - SRVlev 217
  - STOPMN 219
  - SWitch 221
  - syntax rules 16
  - TRace 224
  - TRACELKP 230
  - UEXIT 233
  - UNSCRatch 232
  - UUI support for 32
  - Vary 236
  - View 239
  - Warn 248
- OPTion command and control statement
- examples 207
  - overview 202
  - parameter explanations
    - Dialog 203
    - DISCmsg 204
    - DUPOFL 204
    - EJLimit 205
    - ENTdup 205
    - HOSTID 207
    - Output 205
    - Repath 205
    - SEN 206
    - Viewtime 206
    - Warnmsg 206
    - service level execution 35
- ORH *See* Overdue Response Handler
- Output parameter 203
- output stack, defined 357
- Overdue Response Handler (ORH)
  - operator response required for mount, dismount, move, and swap requests 324
  - overview 324
  - resolving lost LMU responses 324
- over-limit cleaning cartridge
  - defined 357
- over-use cleaning cartridge
  - defined 357
- ## P
- P/DAS, defined 358
- Paired-CAP mode, defined 357
- parameters
  - 4410 39
  - 9310 39
  - 9360 40
  - ABEND 167
  - ACS 81
  - Acs 66
  - acs-id 56, 57, 66, 108, 125, 148, 151, 163, 249
  - acs-list 57, 66
  - acs-range 57, 66
  - ACtive 81
  - Address 244
  - ALL 108
  - ALI 68, 79, 81
  - ALLOC 70
  - ANY 39
  - ARCHIVE 174
  - AUTO 46, 171, 174, 205
  - AUTO (CAPPref) 43
  - AUtocln 170
  - BASE 217
  - Both 204
  - BYDrive 82
  - BYLoc 82
  - Cap 71, 179, 240
  - CAPID 240
  - cap-id 44, 143, 148, 151, 163, 179, 211, 214, 240
  - cap-list 44, 143, 148, 151
  - cap-range 44
  - cc 105, 185, 197, 219, 242, 243, 245
  - CDS 55, 75
  - CEll 242
  - CMd 77
  - Column 197, 242, 243, 245, 246
  - COmmand 77
  - command-name 77
  - COMMPath 79

comp-list 225  
 comp-name 225  
 CONFIG 182  
 Console 204  
 Continue 167  
 COUNT 40, 173  
 CURRENT 174  
 DELete 57, 173  
 DETail 82, 109, 125, 139  
 dev-list 52, 237  
 dev-range 52, 237  
 devaddr 61, 188  
 dev-id 52, 237  
 Dialog 203  
 Disable 49, 234  
 Dismount 171  
 DRive 244  
 DRives 81  
 DSn 49, 50  
 DUPOFL 204  
 Eject 144  
 EJLimit 205  
 Enable 49, 234  
 ENTdup 205  
 ENter 144  
 EXceptns/X 96  
 Expand 50  
 Float 172  
 Flsm 195  
 FORCE 181, 209, 236  
 Full 167, 217  
 Host 244  
 host-id 40, 45, 52, 61, 79, 175, 188, 189, 207, 209  
 host-list 79  
 HOSTID 40, 55, 79, 175, 207  
 Idle 81  
 L 105, 185, 219, 245  
 Library 81  
 LMU 56  
 LMUpath 56  
 LMUPDEF 99  
 Load 234  
 Log 204  
 LOWscr 38  
 LSM 81  
 Lsm 100, 181, 241, 242, 244  
 lsm-id 43, 101, 108, 125, 148, 151, 163, 181, 199, 241,  
 242, 244, 249  
 lsm-list 101, 181, 199  
 lsm-range 101, 181  
 lsm-id 180  
 LSMpref 39  
 MANual 46, 171, 174, 205  
 MAXclean 172  
 Message 103  
 METHod 55  
 Mixed 205  
 MMount 173  
 MNTD 104  
 MODel 90  
 MONitor 105  
 Msg 103  
 msgnum 103  
 nn 234  
 nn-list 234  
 nn-range 234  
 NONE 38, 39  
 OFF 230  
 OFf 224  
 OFFline 181, 236  
 ONline 181, 236  
 OPTion 106  
 Output 205  
 Panel 195, 242  
 PASSTHRU 173  
 PGMI 105, 185, 219  
 PLaygrnd 244  
 pp 195, 200, 242  
 preflue 43  
 Primary 50  
 PRIVAT 188  
 PTP 245  
 Query 235  
 Readonly 188  
 REPATH 205  
 Reply 173, 206  
 Requests 107  
 RESET 182  
 ROTATE 40  
 Row 196, 241, 243  
 rr 196, 241, 243  
 SCRatch 108, 165, 174, 249  
 SCRDISM 174  
 SCRtch 151, 188  
 SCRtech 40  
 SEcndry 50  
 SEN 206  
 SEQ 151  
 SLSUXnn 234  
 SRVlev 122  
 STandby 50  
 Status 123  
 SUBpool 108, 125, 153, 189  
 subpool-name 108, 125, 153, 189  
 table-list 230  
 table-name 230  
 THReshld 125, 250  
 threshold-value 250  
 Time 246  
 TLsm 165  
 TLsm 199  
 TPanel 200  
 TREQDEF 136  
 ttt 246  
 Unit 92  
 UNITDEF 137  
 Upper 205  
 Viewtime 206

- vol-list 139, 199
- vol-range 139, 199
- VOLCNT 153
- VOLDEF 138
- vol-list 147, 213, 232
- vol-range 147
- volser 61, 139, 147, 188, 199
- Volume 139, 199
- VTAM 56
- VTAMpath 57
- WAITcap 150, 160
- Warnmsg 206
- Xlsm 245
- xxx 244
- PARMLIB control statements
  - overview 33
  - ranges and lists 27
  - specifying a CAPid 24
- pass-thru port (PTP)
  - controlling pass-thru operations 302
  - passing a cartridge to another LSM 4
- pass-thru port (PTP), defined 357
- Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy (PPRC), defined 358
- pending mount request during base service level operations 33
- Performance Log Reblocker utility, overview 259
- performing a physical inventory on an LSM 258
- playground, defined 358
- positional parameter, defined 358
- PowderHorn (9310) LSM, defined 358
- prefix character, operator commands 16
- preparing SMF data for use by the Activities utility 259
- primary CDS
  - defined 358
- priority CAP (PCAP), defined 358
- problem solving strategy 314
- procedures
  - ejecting cartridges from the LSM 146
  - entering cartridges (ENter command) 162
  - mounting a library cartridge on a nonlibrary transport 298
  - mounting a nonlibrary cartridge on a library transport 299
  - moving cartridges within the library 303
  - schedule cleaning for a transport 328
  - terminating an ENter command 142
  - using the deferred mount option 301
- processing volumes associated with a drained CAP 202
- producing a list of volumes 261
- programmatic interface
  - displaying status of move requests 105
  - monitoring move requests 185, 305
  - stop monitoring move requests 219

## Q

Queued Sequential Access Method (QSAM), defined 358

## R

- ranges and lists, VOLSER 27
- RE *See* Redundant Electronics
- rebuilding the database directory 258
- Reconfig utility, overview 259
- reconfiguring the control data set 259
- RECover Host command
  - examples 209
  - overview 209
  - parameter explanations
    - FORCE 209
    - host-id 209
    - syntax 209
- recovering a CAP with missing magazine 320
- recovering for a host that becomes inoperable 209
- recovery
  - clearing RECOVERY status on Display Cap command 318
  - errant cartridges 315
  - freeing an allocated CAP 319
  - LMU switch 325
  - problem solving strategy 314
  - recovering resources if host becomes inoperable 209
  - resolving lost LMU responses 324
  - restoring host-to-host communications 321
  - restoring the control data set from a backup 259
- RECOVERY status on a CAP, clearing 318
- RECTech, defined 358
- reducing errors and ejects 300
- Redundant Electronics (RE)
  - dual library controller configuration 6
  - LC operation 290
  - overview 6
- releasing an allocated CAP 211
- Remote Diagnostics Center (RDC), defined 358
- request for a library cartridge on a nonlibrary transport 298
- request for a nonlibrary cartridge on a library transport 299
- resolving external and internal label inconsistencies 323
- resolving lost mount requests 322
- resolving lost responses from the LMU 324
- Restore utility, overview 259
- restoring host-to-host communications services 321
- restoring the library control data set from a backup 259
- retaining manually mounted volumes in the CDS 169
- robot

using camera to inspect LSM components 239  
using to move cartridges 303

## S

schedule a cleaning for a drive 52

scheduling a cartridge enter for a CAP that is ejecting cartridges 214

SCRAtch 213

scratch cartridges

displaying scratch count information 108

displaying threshold values 125

Scratch Conversion utilities 260

Scratch Redistribution utility 260

Scratch Update utilities 260

setting scratch warning threshold levels 248

summary of HSC scratch functions 311

unlabeled 323

unscratching 260

SCRAtch command

example 213

overview 213

parameter explanations 213

vol-list 213

syntax 213

Scratch Conversion utility, overview 260

scratch functions, summary 311

SCRatch parameter 163, 170

Scratch Redistribution utility, overview 260

Scratch Update utilities, overview 260

scratching volumes 213

SCRDISM parameter 170

SDLT cartridge, defined 359

secondary CDS

defined 359

selection of scratch volumes in manual mode LSM 169

semi-automatic mounts for a disconnected host 187

SENter command

examples 216

overview 214

parameter explanations

cap-id 214

syntax 214

service levels, BASE and FULL 33, 217

ServiceTek, defined 359

set cleaning cartridge maximum usage 169

SET utility, overview 260

setting configuration information without reconfiguring the library 260

setting maximum number of cartridges for Eject command 202

setting scratch warning threshold levels 248

setting the duration between scratch depletion warning messages 202

setting viewing time permitted for VView command 202

Significant Event Notification (SEN)

defined 359

Significant Event Notification (SEN) facility

enabling 206

SL3000 library

media type and recording technique support 82, 86, 109, 112, 126, 129, 153, 157, 189, 250, 253

SL8500 library

LC operation 290

manual mode restriction 14

media type and recording technique support 82, 86, 109, 112, 126, 129, 153, 157, 189, 250, 253

MODify command, activating dynamic hardware reconfiguration 177

Near Continuous Operation (NCO), starting dynamic hardware reconfiguration 177

Redundant Electronics environment 271

Redundant Electronics overview 6

SMC *See* Storage Management Component

special use cartridge, defined 359

spent cleaning cartridge

defined 359

SRVlev command

example 218

overview 217

Parameter explanations

BASE 217

FULL 217

syntax 217

standard (4410) LSM, defined 360

standard CAP, defined 360

standby CDS

defined 360

standby LMU

defined 360

standby mode 13

standby, defined 360

station, defined 360

status, displaying library component 63

stop monitoring programmatic interface requests 219

STOPMN command

examples 220

overview 219

parameter explanations

L 219

PGMI 219

syntax 219

- storage
  - class, defined 360
  - group, defined 360
- Storage Management Component (SMC), control path 2
- subpool 0, description 153, 189
- SuperDLT, defined 360
- SWitch command
  - examples 223
  - overview 221
  - parameter explanations
    - AcS 222
    - LIBrary 222
  - syntax 221
- switching communications paths 54
- switching from a master Library Controller to a standby Library Controller 221
- switching from a master LMU to a standby LMU 221
- symbols,  $\mu$ -software, defined 363
- syntax
  - CAPPref command and control statement 42
  - CDs command 48
  - CLean command 52
  - COMMPath command and control statement 54
  - DISMOUNT command 61
  - Display command 63
  - DRAIn command 142
  - EJECT command 146
  - ENter command 162
  - example 22
  - F command 177
  - flow diagram syntax 18
  - how to read syntax flow diagrams 21
  - Journal command 167
  - library identification 23
  - MN command 185
  - MNTD command and control statement 169
  - MODify command 177
  - MONITOR command 185
  - MOUNT command 187
  - MOVE command 194
  - OPTion command and control statement 202
  - PM command 219
  - ranges and lists 27
  - RECOVer command 209
  - RELEASE command 211
  - rules 16
  - SENter command 214
  - specifying a CAPid 24
  - SRVlev command 217
  - STOPMN command 219
  - SWitch command 221
  - TRace command 224
  - TRACELKP 230
  - UEXIT command and control statement 233
  - Vary command 236
  - View command 240
  - Warn command 248
- syntax flow diagrams 18
- system components 4
  - HSC 4
  - LMU 4
  - LSM 9
  - SMC 4
- system overview
  - control path 2
  - data path 3
- system utilities
  - Activities Report 258
  - Audit 258
  - Backup 258
  - Database Decompile 258
  - Directory Rebuild 258
  - Eject Cartridge 259
  - Internalize Cartridge 259
  - Journal Offload 259
  - Mergecds 259
  - Move 259
  - Performance Log Reblocker 259
  - Reconfig 259
  - Restore 259
  - Scratch Conversion 260
  - scratch functions 312
  - Scratch Redistribution 260
  - Scratch Update 260
  - Set 260
  - Unselect 260
  - Volume Report 261

## T

- T10000 tape drive, defined 361
- T9840B Cartridge Subsystem, defined 364
- T9840C Cartridge Subsystem, defined 364
- T9940A Cartridge Subsystem, defined 364
- T9940B Cartridge Subsystem, defined 364
- tape cartridge subsystem, cleaning a tape path 328
- terminating an ENter command 142
- TimberWolf (9740) LSM, defined 361
- TimberWolf CAP, defined 361
- TRace command
  - examples 226
  - overview 224
  - parameter explanations
    - ALLCdata 224
    - comp-list 224
    - comp-name 224
    - OFF 224
  - syntax 224

- TRACELKP command
  - examples 231
  - overview 230
  - parameter explanations 230
  - syntax 230
- tracing host communications 224
- tracing LOOKUP events 230
- transferring cartridges from the CAP to the LSM 162
- transport, defined 361
- transports
  - nonlibrary 298
  - schedule cleaning for 52
  - tape path
    - cleaning in automatic mode 328
    - cleaning in manual mode 329
- TREQDEF parameter (Display command) 136
- Tri-Optic label, defined 361

## U

- UEXIT command and control statement
  - examples 235
  - overview 233
  - parameter explanations
    - disable 234
    - enable 234
    - Load 234
    - nn 234
    - nn-list 234
    - nn-range 234
    - query 235
  - syntax 233
- unexpected results from LSM scratch preferencing 307
- Unit affinity separation 300
- unit affinity, defined 361
- UNITDEF parameter (Display command) 137
- unlabeled scratch cartridge 323
- UNSCRatch command
  - example 232
  - overview 232
  - parameter explanations 232
  - parameters
    - vol-list 232
  - syntax 232
- unscratching volumes 232
- Unselect utility, overview 260
- unselecting a volume 260
- updating the list of scratch volumes 260
- user exits
  - enable/disable 233
  - scratch functions 312

- using the robot to move cartridges 303
- utilities
  - Activities Report 258
  - Audit 258
  - Backup 258
  - Database Decompile 258
  - Directory Rebuild 258
  - Eject Cartridge 259
  - Initialize Cartridge 259
  - Journal Offload 259
  - Mergecds 259
  - Move 259
  - overview 258
  - Performance Log Reblocker 259
  - Reconfig 259
  - Restore 259
  - Scratch Conversion 260
  - scratch functions 312
  - Scratch Redistribution 260
  - Scratch Update 260
  - Set 260
  - Unselect 260
  - Volume Report 261
- UI support for operator commands 32

## V

- Vary command
  - examples 238
  - overview 236
  - parameter explanations
    - dev-id 237
    - dev-list 237
    - dev-range 237
    - OFFline 237
    - ONline 237
  - syntax 236
- varying station(s) online or offline to the LMU 238
- View command
  - examples 247
  - overview 239
  - parameter explanations
    - CAP 240
    - CELL 242
    - DRive 244
    - PLaygrnd 244
    - PTp 245
  - syntax 240
- Virtual Storage Manager (VSM) Support 15
- Virtual Thumbwheel, defined 362
- Virtual thumbwheel, using 187
- VOLDEF parameter (Display command) 138
- VOLSER
  - defined 362

- list of, command syntax 32
- requirements 23
- specifying lists, command syntax 27
- specifying ranges, command syntax 27, 32

Volume Report utility, overview 261

volume, defined 362

volumes, displaying location and status 63

VTAM communications 56

## W

Warn command

- examples 256
- overview 248
- parameter explanations
  - acs-id 249
  - lsm-id 249
  - SCRatch 249
  - SUBpool 249
  - THReshd 250
- syntax 249

WolfCreek (9360) LSM, defined 362

WolfCreek CAP, defined 362

WolfCreek optional CAP, defined 362

working with scratch volumes and subpooling 311

writing a magnetic label on the tape 259

## Y

yntax 203

## Z

ZCART, defined 362





